



RUS
Stage 35

ex urbe

When you have read this story, answer the questions on the next page.

Mānius Acīlius Glabriō salūtem dīcit Lupō amīcō.

quid agis, mī Lupe, in vīllā tuā rūsticā? quid agit Helvidius,
filius tuus?

quotiēns dē tē tuāque villā cōgitō, tibi valdē invideō; nam in
urbe nusquam est ôtium, nusquam quiēs. ego quidem multīs
negotīis cotidiē occupatūs sum. prīmā hōrā ā clientibus meīs
salutō; inde ad basilicam ôratiōnēs habitum vel ad cūriam
ôratiōnēs auditūm contendō; aliquandō amīcōs vīsitō, vel ab eīs
vīsitor; per tōtū diem officia prīvāta vel pūblica agō. at tū
intereā in rīpā flūminis vel in umbrā arboris ôtiōs fortasse
iacēs, et dum ego strepitū urbīs vexor, tū carmine avīum
dēlectāris. sed satis querēlārum!

Imperātor Domitiānū triumphum heri dē Germānīs ēgit.
pompa, per tōtam urbēm prōgressa, ā multīs laudābātur, ā
nōnnūllīs dērīdābātur. alīi, mīrābile dictū, "spectāculūm
splendidissimum" clāmābānt. "Imperātor noster, pater vērus
patriae, gentēs barbarās iam superāvit; Germānī per viās urbīs
iam in triumphō dūcuntur!" alīi tamen "spectāculūm rīdiculūm"
susurrābant. "illī quī per viās dūcuntur haudquāquam Germānī
sunt, sed servī, ex prōvinciā Hispāniā arcessitū et vestimenta
Germāna gerentēs!"

litterae cotidiē ā Britanniā exspectantur, ubi Agricola bellum
contrā Calēdoniōs gerit. Calēdoniū crēduntur ferōcissimū
omnium Britannōrum esse, terribilēs vīsū audītūque. dē
Calēdoniā ipsā omnīnō incertus sum, mī Lupe. utrum pars est
Britanniae an īnsula sēiuncta?

ad cōnsilium Imperātōris adesse saepe iubeor. invitūs pāreō;
quotiēns enim sententiam meam ā Domitiānō rogor, difficile est
mihi respondēre; turpe vidētūr mentīrī, periculōsum vēra loquī.
nam iussū istīs tyrannī multī bonī damnatī sunt.

audīvisīne umquam poētam Valerium Mārtiālem
recitantē? ego quidem recitatiōnibus eius saepe adsum; tū sī
eum audīveris, certē dēlectāberis. versūs eius semper élēgantēs,
nōnumquam scurrīlēs sunt. eum tamen ideō reprehendō, quod
Imperātōrem nimium adulatūr.

quandō rūre discēdēs, mī Lupe? quandō iterum tē in urbe
vidēbimus? cum prīmū ad urbēm redieris, mē vīsītā, quaesō;
sī tē mox viderō, valdē dēlectābor. valē.

salūtem dīcit sends good wishes
quid agis? how are you? how are
you doing?
invideō: invidēre envy

ötium leisure
ôratiōnēs habitum
(in order) to give speeches

10 ôratiōnēs audītūm
(in order) to hear speeches
officia: officium duty
prīvāta: prīvātūs private
querēlārum: querēla complaint
triumphum ... ēgit:

15 triumphum agere
celebrate a triumph
dē Germānīs over the Germans
mīrābile dictū strange to say
patriae: patria country, homeland

20 litterae letters, correspondence
Calēdoniōs: Calēdoniū Scots

25 utrum ... est ... an? is it ... or?
sēiuncta: sēiunctus separate
cōnsilium council

30 turpe: turpis shameful
mentīrī lie, tell a lie
tyrannī: tyrannus tyrant
recitatiōnibus: recitatiō
recital, public reading

nōnumquam sometimes
35 ideō ... quod for the reason that,
because
reprehendō: reprehendere
blame, criticize

adulatūr: adulatūrī flatter
rūre: rūs country, countryside
cum prīmū as soon as
quaesō I beg, i.e. please

Questions

- Who is writing this letter? To whom is it written?
- Where is Lupus?
- nam ... quiēs** (lines 4–5). What is Glabrio complaining about here?
- In lines 6–9 (**prīmā hōrā ... pūblica agō**) Glabrio explains why he is so busy every day. Write down two of the reasons he gives.
- at tū ... dēlectāris** (lines 9–12). How does Glabrio imagine that his friend is spending his time?
- What public event has just taken place in Rome?
- What two different reactions did it get from the people (lines 14–15)?
- "illī ... haudquāquam Germānī sunt"** (lines 19–20). If they were not Germans, who did some people think they were?
- What is going on in Britain (lines 22–23)?
- What has Glabrio heard about the Scots?
- What problem does Glabrio have about the geography of Scotland (lines 25–26)?
- What order does Glabrio often receive (line 27)?
- Why does he find it difficult to give the emperor his opinion (line 29)?
- versūs eius ... adulatūr** (lines 33–35). What is Glabrio's opinion of the work of the poet Martial?
- What evidence is there in this letter to show that Glabrio and Lupus are close friends? Make two points.



dum ego strepitū urbīs vexor, tū carmine avīum dēlectāris.

vīta rūstica

C. Helvidius Lupus salūtem dīcit Aciliō Glabriōnī amīcō.
cum epistulam tuam legerem, mī Glabriō, gaudium et dolōrem
simul sēnsī. gaudiō enim afficiēbar, quod tam diū epistulam ā tē
exspectābam; dolēbam autem, quod tū tot labōribus
opprimēbāris.

in epistulā tuā dīcis tē valdē occupātum esse. ego quoque,
cum Rōmāe essem, saepe negōtiis vexābar; nunc tamen vītā
rūsticā dēlector. nam rūrī iūcundissimum est forās ūre aliquandō
per agrōs equitātum, aliquandō fundū inspectum. crās in sīlvīs
proximīs vēnābor; vīcīnī enim crēdunt aprum ingentem ibi latēre.
nōn tamen omnīnō ūtiōsus sum; nam sīcut tū ā clientibus tuīs
salūtāris atque vexāris, ita ego ā colōnīs meīs assiduē vexor.

rēctē dīcis Calēdoniōs omnīum Britannōrum ferōcissimōs
esse. amīcus meus Silānus, quī cum Agricolā in Britanniā nūper
militābat, dīcit Calēdoniōs in ultimīs partibüs Britanniae
habitāre, inter saxa et undās. quamquam Calēdoniī ferōcissimē
pugnāre solent, Silānus affīmat exercitū nostrū eōs vincere
posse. crēdit enim Rōmānōs nōn modo multō fortīrēs esse
quam Calēdoniōs, sed etiam ducem meliōrem habēre.

dē poētā Mārtiāle tēcum cōnsentīo: inest in eō multū
ingenium, multā ars. ego vērō ōlīm versibüs Ovidiī poētāe
maximē dēlectābar; nunc tamen mihi epigrammata Mārtiālis
magis placent.

in epistulā tuā Helvidium, filium meum, commemorās. quem
tamen rārissimē videō! nam in hāc vīllā trēs diēs mēcum
morātus, ad urbēm rediit; suspicor eum puellam aliquam in



sīcut tū ā clientibus tuīs
salūtāris atque vexāris, ita ego
ā colōnīs meīs assiduē vexor.

5 dolēbam: dolēre grieve, be sad

10 rūrī in the country
iūcundissimum: iūcundus
 pleasant
forās outside, outdoors
vēnābor: vēnārī hunt
vīcīnī: vīcīnus neighbor
sīcut ... ita just as ... so
15 colōnīs: colōnus tenant farmer
rēctē rightly
affīmat: affīmāre declare

20 vērō indeed
epigrammata: epigramma
 epigram

25 aliquam: aliquī some

urbe vīsitāre. quīndecim iam annōs nātus est; nihil cūrat nisi
puellās et quadrigās. difficile autem est mihi eum culpāre; nam
ego quoque, cum iuvenis essem – sed satis nūgārum!

nunc tū mihi graviter admonendus es, mī Glabriō. in epistulā
tuā dē quōdam virō potēti male scrībis, quem nōmināre nōlō.
tibi cavendum est, mī amīce! perīculōsum est dē potētibüs male
scrībere. virō potētēs celeriter īrāscuntur, lentē mollīuntur. nisi
cāveris, mī Glabriō, damnāberis atque occīdēris. sollicitus haec
scrībō; salūs enim tua mihi magnae cūrae est. valē.

30 quadrigās: quadrigā chariot
nūgārum: nūgae nonsense,
 foolish talk
admonendus es: admonēre
 warn, advise
male badly, unfavorably
nōmināre name, mention by
name

35 īrāscuntur: īrāscī become angry

A country farm

This small farm (**vīlla rūstica**) at Boscoreale, near Pompeii, was buried by Vesuvius in AD 79. It was possible for the archaeologists to trace the holes where the vines were planted and vines have now been planted there again. The wine was fermented in buried jars (below), which were then covered with lids to store it.

Farmers were recommended to have enough jars to store their wine for up to five years, so as to sell at the time when prices were highest.

The owner of this sort of farm would probably have let it out to a tenant (**colōnus**) to run.



About the language: indirect statement

1 In Unit 1, you met sentences like these:

“mercātor multam pecūniā habet.”

“The merchant has a lot of money.”

“ancillae cibum parant.”

“The slave girls are preparing the food.”

In each example, a statement is being *made*. These examples are known as **direct statements**. Notice the nouns **mercātor** and **ancillae** and the verbs **habet** and **parant**.

2 In Stage 35, you have met sentences like these:

scīmus **mercātōrem** multam pecūniā **habēre**.

We know the merchant to have a lot of money.

Or, in more natural English:

We know that the merchant has a lot of money.

crēdō ancillās cibum **parāre**.

I believe the slave girls to be preparing the food.

Or, in more natural English:

I believe that the slave girls are preparing the food.

In each of these examples, the statement is not being made, but is being *reported* or *mentioned*. These examples are known as **indirect statements**. Notice that the nouns **mercātōrem** and **ancillās** are now in the *accusative* case, and the verbs **habēre** and **parāre** are now in the *infinitive* form.

3 Compare the following examples:

direct statements

“captīvī dormiunt.”

“The prisoners are asleep.”

“Lupus in vīllā rūsticā habitat.”

“Lupus is living in his country villa.”

indirect statements

centuriō dicit **captīvōs dormīre**.

The centurion says that the prisoners are asleep.

audiō **Lupum** in vīllā rūsticā **habitāre**.

I hear that Lupus is living in his country villa.

4 Further examples of direct and indirect statements:

- a “hostēs appropinquant.”
- b nūntius dicit hostēs appropinquāre.
- c “Agricola bellum in Calēdoniā gerit.”
- d audiō Agricolam bellum in Calēdoniā gerere.
- e rhētor affīrmat filium meum diligenter labōrare.
- f domina crēdit fugītvōs in silvā latēre.
- g scīmus mīlitēs nostrōs semper fortiter pugnāre.
- h dīcisne patrōnum tuum esse virum liberālem?

Word patterns: nouns and adjectives

1 Study the form and meaning of the following nouns and adjectives:

ōtium	<i>idleness, leisure</i>	ōtiōsus	<i>idle, at leisure</i>
spatiūm	<i>space</i>	spatiōsus	<i>spacious, large</i>
fōrma	<i>beauty</i>	fōrmōsus	<i>beautiful</i>

2 Using paragraph 1 as a guide, complete the table below.

līmus	<i>mud</i>	līmōsus
herba	herbōsus	grassy
bellūm	bellicōsus	aggressive, warlike
fūrōr	<i>madness</i>	fūriōsus
damnum	damnōsus	harmful, damaging
pretium	pretiōsus
perīculūm	perīculōsus
odīum	odiōsus
iniūria	iniūriōsus

3 Match each of the following Latin adjectives with the correct English translation:

Latin: fūmōsus, iocōsus, ventōsus, perfidiōsus, annōsus

English: treacherous, smoky, fond of jokes, old, blown by the winds

4 Many Latin **-ōsus** adjectives come into English as words ending in “-ose” or “-ous.” Give an English adjective and its meaning for each of the following Latin adjectives. Use the meaning of the Latin word in your definitions.

verbōsus, studiōsus, dēliciōsus, cōpiōsus, victōriōsus



Tenants bringing gifts to the villa owner

Practicing the language

1 Complete each sentence with the most suitable verb from the box below, using the correct form of the future tense. Then translate the sentence. Do not use any verb more than once.

terrēbit	reficiet	dabit	pugnābit	dūcet
terrēbunt	reficient	dabunt	pugnābunt	dūcent

- a hī fabrī sunt perīssimī; nāvem tuam celeriter
- b crās dominus libertātem duōbus servīs
- c leōnēs, quī ferōciōrēs sunt quam cēterae bēstiae, spectātōrēs fortasse
- d sī templum visitāre vīs, hic servus tē illūc
- e frāter meus, gladiātor nōtissimus, crās in amphitheātrō

2 Turn each of the following pairs into one sentence by replacing the word in **boldface** with the correct form of the relative pronoun **qui**, **quae**, **quod**. Use paragraph 8 on page 000 to help you. Then translate the sentence.

For example: prō templō erant duo virī. virōs statim agnōvī.

This becomes: prō templō erant duo virī, **quōs** statim agnōvī.

In front of the temple were two men, whom I recognized at once.

- a in fundō nostrō sunt vīgintī servī. **servī** in agrīs cotidīe labōrant.
- b in hāc villā habitat libertus. **libertum** visitāre volō.
- c prope iānuam stābat fēmina. **fēminae** epistulam trādidī.
- d audī illam puellam! **puella** suāviter cantat.
- e in viā erant multī puerī. **puerōrum** clāmōrēs senem vexābant.
- f vīdistīne templum? **templum** nūper aedificātum est.

3 Select the participle which agrees with the noun in **boldface**. Then translate the sentence.

- a **hospitēs**, dōna pretiōsissima, ad vīllam prīcipis contendēbant.
(ferentēs, ferentia)
- b versūs **poētae**, in forō, ab omnibus audītī erant. (recitantis,
recitantium)
- c **pecūniā**, fūr in silvam cucurrit. (raptā, raptō, raptīs)
- d **sacerdōtibus**, ē templō, victimās ostendimus. (ēgressōs, ēgressīs)
- e **nāvēs**, in lītore, īspicere volēbam. (īstrūcta, īstrūctae, īstrūctās)
- f **puer**, canem, arborem quam celerrimē cōncendit. (cōspicātus, cōspicātā,
cōspicātūm)
- g **fēminae** **militēs** vīdērunt captīvum, (pulsantem, pulsātōs, pulsātūrōs)
- h **puella** nesciēbat cūr **pater** ancillam, esset. (pūnitūrus, pūnitūra, pūnitūram)

Country villas

Many wealthy Romans, like Lopus on [pages 2–5](#), owned both a town house in Rome and at least one villa in the country. There they could escape from the noise and heat of the city, especially during the unhealthy months of late summer, and relax from the pressures of private business and public duties.

Some of these country houses were fairly close to Rome; their owners could get a day's work done in the city and then travel out to their villa before nightfall. The villas were generally either on the coast, like Pliny's villa at Laurentum, or on the hills around Rome, for example at Tibur, where the Emperor Hadrian owned the most spectacular mansion of all, surrounded by specially constructed imitations of buildings that had impressed him on his travels.



An emperor's villa

Hadrian's villa near Tibur, 19 miles (30 kilometers) from Rome: a vast, sprawling complex covering 300 acres (120 hectares). The photograph of the model shows only part of it.

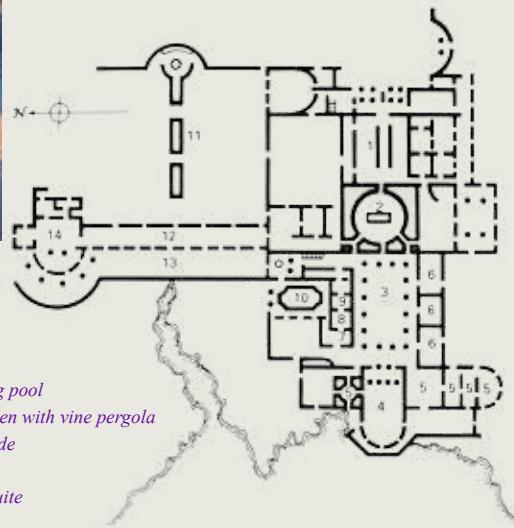
There were two theaters and three bath buildings; huge state rooms contrasted with more homely quarters for the emperor's private use. He loved to enjoy the landscape. A terrace (top, foreground) has views over a valley he called the Vale of Tempe after a famous Greek beauty spot. An outdoor dining room (below) looks over a canal which may have recalled the Canopus at Alexandria.

Other country villas were further afield. A popular area was Campania; the coastline of the bay of Naples was dotted with the villas of wealthy men, while vacation resorts such as Baiae had a reputation for fast living and immorality.

Country villas naturally varied in design, but they usually contained some or all of the following features: a series of dining and reception rooms for entertaining guests, often with extensive views of the surrounding countryside; a set of baths, heated by hypocausts, containing the full range of apodyterium, tepidarium, caldarium, and frigidarium; long colonnades where the owner and his friends might walk, or even ride, sheltered from the rain or from the direct heat of the sun; and extensive parkland, farmland, or gardens, preferably with plenty of shade and running water. In a corner of the estate there might be a small shrine, dedicated to the protecting gods.

Pliny's letters include descriptions of two of his villas. Although detailed, the descriptions are not always clear, and many scholars have tried to reconstruct the plans of the villas, without reaching agreement. An attempt at the plan of Pliny's Laurentine villa is shown below, together with a model based on the plan. Among

Pliny's villa at Laurentum



- 1 atrium
- 2 courtyard
- 3 inner courtyard
- 4 dining room
- 5 bedrooms
- 6 slaves' rooms
- 7 tepidarium
- 8 apodyterium
- 9 caldarium
- 10 heated swimming pool
- 11 ornamental garden with vine pergola
- 12 covered colonnade
- 13 terrace
- 14 Pliny's private suite

the villa's special features were the heated swimming pool (10), the big semicircular recess at the end of the chief dining room (4), designed to provide the dinner guests with an impressive panorama of the sea, and the covered colonnade (12) leading to Pliny's private suite (14). This suite was Pliny's own addition to the building, and it provided him with quiet and privacy; at the noisy mid-winter festival of the Saturnalia, for example, Pliny could retire to his suite while his slaves enjoyed themselves in the main villa, so that he did not get in the way of their celebrations and they did not disturb his peace.

Country pursuits

One of the most popular recreations for a wealthy Roman on his country estate was hunting. Hares, deer, or wild boar were tracked down and chased into nets where they could be speared to death. Long ropes, to which brightly colored feathers were attached, were slung from trees to cut off the animal's retreat and frighten it back towards the nets. The actual chasing was often left to slaves and dogs, while the hunter contented himself with waiting at the nets and spearing the boar or deer when it had become thoroughly entangled. Pliny, for example, in reporting a successful expedition on which he caught three boars, says that he took his stilus and writing-tablets with him to the hunt and jotted down ideas under



The hunter (bottom left) has been gored by the cornered boar.



People with fishing rods (left and center) in a Pompeian painting of a seaside villa.



Tenants paying their rent.

attached to the house, and the property would usually include an extensive area of land which the owner might farm himself or lease to tenant farmers. In the ancient world, by far the commonest way of investing money was to buy land. It is not surprising that many of Pliny's letters deal with the day-to-day problems of land management. He agonizes over whether to buy a neighboring piece of land, fertile and conveniently situated but long neglected; he asks the emperor to excuse him from Rome so that he can be on one of his estates at a time when the tenancy is changing hands; and when his tenants get into difficulties and are heavily in debt, he arranges for them to pay their rent with part of their crops rather than in cash. He likes to present himself as an ignorant amateur with no interest in the running of his villas, but some of his comments give the impression that he was in fact enthusiastic, practical, and shrewd. One of his villas brought him an income of 400,000 sesterces a year. If you compare this with the annual pay of a centurion – about 6,000 sesterces a year – and remember that Pliny owned other villas and property, you can see that he was a very successful landowner.



What country activities can you find in this picture?

the inspiration of the woodland scene while he waited for the boars to appear. But although Pliny's description of hunting is a very peaceful one, the sport still had its dangers: a cornered boar might turn on its pursuers, and a hunter who was slow with his spear might be gashed severely, even fatally.

Fishing also seems to have been popular, and could easily be combined with rowing or sailing, either on the sea (in the bay of Naples, for example) or on such lakes as the Lucrine lake, famous for its fish and its oysters. A lazier method of fishing is described by Martial, who refers to a villa with a bedroom directly overlooking the sea, so that the occupant could drop a fishing line from the window and catch a fish without even getting out of bed.

Some of Pliny's letters describe his daily routine at his country villas. He spent most of his time in gentle exercise (walking, riding, or occasionally hunting), working on a speech or other piece of writing, dealing with his tenant farmers (*coloni*), entertaining friends, dining, or listening to a reading or to music. He often spent part of the afternoon reading a Greek or Latin speech aloud "for the sake of both voice and digestion." (Pliny often spoke in the law courts and the senate, and he was naturally anxious to keep his voice in good trim.)

The economy of the villa

A country villa of this kind, however, was not just for vacation relaxation: it was an important investment. Often there was a farm

Vocabulary checklist 35

ager, agrī, m.	field
an	or
utrum ... an	whether ... or
carmen, carminis, n.	song
caveō, cavēre, cāvī	beware
culpō, culpāre, culpāvī	blame
inde	then
magis	more
male	badly, unfavorably
moror, morārī, morātus sum	delay
multō	much
nusquam	nowhere
quando?	when?
quidem	indeed
quotiēns	whenever
rūs, rūris, n.	country, countryside
simul	at the same time



A grand country villa, with symmetrical wings and a formal garden in front. A painting in Pompeii.



RECITATIO

Stage 36



Marcus Valerius Mārtiālis

I

in audītōriō exspectant multī cīvēs. adsunt ut Valerium Mārtiālem, poētam nōtissimum, recitantem audiant. omnēs inter sē colloquuntur. subitō signum datur ut taceant; audītōrium intrat poēta ipse.

audītōribus plaudentibus, Mārtiālis scaenam ascendit ut versūs suōs recitet.

Mārtiālis: salvēte, amīcī. (*librum ēvolvit.*) prīnum
recitare volō versūs quōsdam nūper dē
Sabidiō compositōs.

complūrēs audītōrēs sē convertunt ut Sabidium, quā in ultimō sellārum ordine sedet, spectent.

Mārtiālis: nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē.
hoc tantum possum dīcere – nōn amo tē.

audītōr: (*cum amīcīsusurrāns*) illōs versūs nōn
intellegō. cūr poēta dicere nōn potest quārē
Sabidium nōn amet?

prīmus amīcus: (*susurrāns*) scīlicet poēta ipse causam nescit.

secundus amīcus: (*susurrāns*) minimē, poēta optimē scit quārē
Sabidium nōn amet: sed tam foeda est causa
ut poēta eam patefacere nōlit.

alī audītōrēs: st! st!

audītōriō: audītōrium
auditorium, hall (used for public readings)

colloquuntur: colloqui

5 **talk, chat**

audītōribus: audītor
listener, (pl.) audience

ēvolvit: ēvolvere *unroll, open*

compositōs: compōnere
compose, make up

10 **complūrēs** *several*

15

20 **st! hush!**

prīmus amīcus: hem! audītōrēs nōbīs imperant ut taceāmus.

Mārtiālis: nunc dē Laecāniā et Thāide, fēminīs

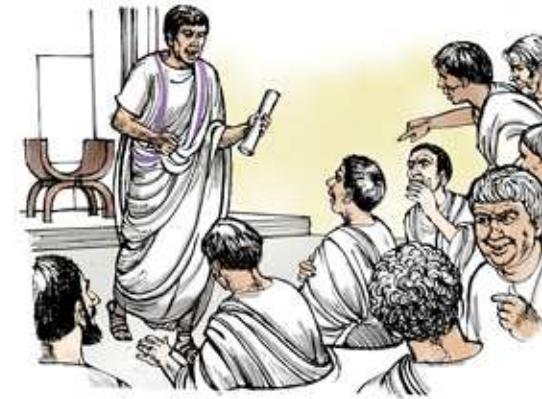
“nōtissimīs”: (*audītōrēs sibi rīdent.*)

Thāis habet nigrōs, niveōs Laecānia **dentes**.*

quae ratiō est? . . .

audītōr: (*interpellāns*) . . . ēmptōs haec habet, illa suōs!

Mārtiālis, valdē īrātus, dē scaenā dēscendit ut audītōrem vituperet.



Mārtiālis: ego poēta sum, tū tantum audītor. ego hūc invītātus sum ut recitem, tū ut audiās.

(*subitō audītōrem agnoscit.*) hem! scio quis sīs.

tū Pontiliānus es, quī semper mē rogās ut

libellōs meōs tibi mittam. at nunc, mī

Pontiliāne, tibi dīcere possum quārē semper

mittere recūsem. (*ad scaenā reversus,*

recitātiōnem renovat.)

cūr nōn mitto **meōs** tibi, Pontiliāne, **libellōs**?

nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs!

30

35 **renovat: renovāre**

continue, resume

omnēs praeter Pontiliānum rīdent. Pontiliānus autem tam īrātus est ut
ē sellā surgat. ad scaenā sē praecipitāre cōnātur ut Mārtiālem pulset,
sed amīcī eum retinent.

40

*Some noun-and-adjective phrases, in which an adjective is separated by one word or more from the noun which it describes, are shown in **boldface**.

II

Mārtiālis, quī iam ūnam hōram recitat, ad fīnem librī appropinquat.

Mārtiālis: postrēmō pauca dē pīncipe nostrō, Domitiānō Augustō, dicere velim. aliquōs versūs nūper dē illā aulā ingentī composū quae in monte Palātinō stat:

aethera contingit **nova** nostrī pīncipis **aula**; clārius in **tōtō** sōl videt **orbe** nihil.

haec, Augste, tamen, quae vertice sīdera pulsat, pār **domus** est caelō sed minor est dominō.

plūrimi audītōrēs vehementissimē plaudunt; animadvertisunt enim Epaphroditūm, Domitiānī libertum, in audītōriō adesse. ūnus audītor tamen, M'. Acilius Glabriō, tālī adulātiōne offēnsus, nōn modo plausū abstinet sed ē sellā surgit et ex audītōriō exit. quā audāciā attonitus, Mārtiālis paulisper immōtus stat; deinde ad extrēnam scaenam prōcedit ut plausum excipiat. ūnus tamen audītor exclāmat:

audītor: sed quid dē mē, Mārtiālis? epigramma dē mē compōnere nunc potes?

Mārtiālis: dē tē, homuncule? quis es et quālis?

audītor: nōmine Diaulus sum. artem medicīnae nūper exercēbam . . .

alias audītor: . . . at nunc vespillō es!

omnēs rident; rīdet praesertim Mārtiālis.

Mārtiālis: bene! nunc epigramma accipe, mī Diaule: nūper erat medicus, nunc est vespillo Diaulus. quod vespillo facit, fēcerat et medicus.

cachinnant multī; ērubēscit Diaulus. Mārtiālis, recitatiōne ita perfectā, ex audītōriō ēgreditur; omnibus praeter Diaulum plaudentibus. servī ingressī audītōribus vīnum cibumque offerunt.



The Emperor Domitian's palace overlooking the Circus Maximus.

pīncipe: **pīnceps** emperor

monte Palātinō: mōns

5 **Palātinus** the Palatine hill

aethera accusative of **aethēr** sky, heaven

contingit: **contingere** touch
clārius . . . nihil

nothing more splendid

orbe: orbis globe, world

vertice: vertex top, peak

sīdera: sīdus star

pār equal

minor . . . dominō

smaller than his master

M'. = **Mānius**

adulātiōne: **adulātiō** flattery
abstinet: **abstinēre** abstain

ad extrēnam scaenam

20 to the edge of the stage

vespillō undertaker

25 **quod** = **id quod** what

et = **etiam** also

About the language 1: present subjunctive

1 In Unit 3, you met the imperfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive:

imperfect

haruspex aderat ut victimam **īspiceret**.

The soothsayer was there in order that he might examine the victim.

Or, in more natural English:

The soothsayer was there to examine the victim.

pluperfect

rēx pīncipēs rogāvit num hostēs **vīdissent**.

The king asked the chieftains whether they had seen the enemy.

2 In Stage 36, you have met sentences like these:

cīvēs conveniunt ut poētam **audiant**.

The citizens are gathering in order that they may hear the poet.

Or, in more natural English:

The citizens are gathering to hear the poet.

Mārtiālis dīcere nōn potest quārē Sabidium nōn **amēt**.

Martial is unable to say why he does not like Sabidius.

The form of the verb in **boldface** is in the **present subjunctive**.

3 Further examples:

a cognōscere volō quid illī fabrī aedificent.

b tam saevus est dominus ut ancillās semper pūniat.

c in agrīs cotidiē labōrō ut cibum liberis meīs praebeam.

d nōn intellegimus quārē tālī hominī crēdās.

4 Compare the present subjunctive with the present indicative:

	present indicative (3rd person singular and plural)		present subjunctive (3rd person singular and plural)	
first conjugation	portat	portant	portet	portent
second conjugation	docet	docent	doceat	doceant
third conjugation	trahit	trahunt	trahat	trahant
fourth conjugation	audit	audiunt	audiat	audiant

The present subjunctive of all four conjugations is set out in full on [page 272](#) of the Language information section.

5 For the present subjunctive of irregular verbs, see [page 282](#).

epigrammata Mārtiālis

The following epigrams, and also the ones which appeared on [pages 16-18](#), were written by Marcus Valerius Martialis (Martial) and published between AD 86 and 101.

I. dē Tuccā, quī saepe postulat ut Mārtiālis libellōs sibi dōnet
exigis ut **nostrōs** dōnem tibi, Tucca, **libellōs**.
nōn faciam: nam vīs vēndere, nōn legere.

Why does Martial refuse Tucca's demand?

II. dē Sextō, iuvene glōriōsō
dīcis amōrē tuī **bellās** ardēre **puellās**,
quī faciem sub aquā, Sexte, natantis habēs.

Judging from Martial's description, what impression do you have of Sextus' appearance?

III. dē Symmachō medicō discipulīisque eius centum
languēbam: sed tū comitātus prōtinus ad mē
vēnisti **centum**, Symmache, **discipulīs**.
centum mē tetigēre **manūs** Aquilōne **gelātae**;
nōn habū febrem, Symmache: nunc habeō.

Why do you think Martial repeats the word **centum** (lines 2-3) and uses the phrase **Aquilōne gelātae** (line 3)?



dōnet: dōnāre give
exigis: exigere demand
nostrōs: noster = meus my

glōriōsō: glōriōsus boastful
bellās: bellus pretty
faciem: faciēs face

discipulīs: discipulus pupil, student
languēbam: languēre
feel weak, feel ill
prōtinus immediately
tetigēre = tetigērunt: tangere touch
Aquilōne: Aquilō North wind
gelātae: gelāre freeze
febrem: febris fever

*centum mē tetigēre manūs
Aquilōne gelātae*

IV. dē Catullō, quī saepe dīcit Mārtiālem hērēdem sibi esse
hērēdem tibi mē, Catulle, dīcis.
nōn crēdam nisi lēgerō, Catulle.

When will Martial believe Catullus' promise? Why do you think he will believe it then, but not believe it earlier?

V. dē Quīntō, quī Thāida lūscam amat
“Thāida Quīntus amat.” “quam Thāida?” “Thāida lūscam.”
ūnum oculum Thāis nōn habet, ille duōs.

What do the last two words suggest about

- a Quintus b Thais?

VI. dē Vacerrā, quī veterēs poētās sōlōs mīrātur
mīrāris **veterēs**, Vacerra, sōlōs
nec laudās nisi mortuōs **poētās**.
ignōscās petimus, Vacerra: tantū
nōn est, ut placeam tibī, perīre.

Do people like Vacerra still exist nowadays?

Thāida accusative of **Thāis**
lūscam: lūscus one-eyed
quam?: quī? which?

mīrātur: mīrārī admire
ignōscās petimus = petimus ut
nōbīs ignōscās
tantū nōn est . . . perīre it is not
worth dying



Christ shown as a Roman reading from a book.

About the language 2: word order

1 From Stage 4 on, you have met phrases in which an adjective is placed next to the noun it describes:

ad silvam oscūram
contrā multōs barbarōs
in flūmine altō

to the dark wood
against many barbarians
in the deep river

2 In Unit 3, you met phrases in which an adjective is separated by a preposition from the noun which it describes:

tōtam per urbēm
omnibus cum militib⁹
hōc ex oppidō

through the whole city
with all the soldiers
from this town

3 In Stage 36, you have met sentences like these:

cūr nōn mitto meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?
Why do I not send you my writings, Pontilianus?

aethera contingit nova nostrī p̄incipis aula.
The new palace of our emperor touches the sky.

This kind of word order, in which an adjective is separated by one or more words from the noun which it describes, is particularly common in verse.

Further examples:

- a dēnique centuriō magnam p̄ervēnit ad urbēm.
- b nox erat, et caelō fulgēbat lūna serēnō. (*From a poem by Horace*)
- c flūminis in rīpā nunc nōster dormit amīcus.

4 In each of the following examples, pick out the Latin adjective and say which noun it is describing:

- a atque iterum ad Trōiam magnus mittētur Achillēs. (*Virgil*)
And great Achilles will be sent again to Troy.
- b ergō sollicitae tū causa, pecūnia, vītae! (*Propertius*)
Therefore you, money, are the cause of an anxious life!
- c rōbustus quoque iam taurī iuga solvet arātor. (*Virgil*)
Now, too, the strong plowman will unfasten the yoke from the bulls.

5 Translate the following examples:

- a On a journey
cōnspicimus montēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.
- b Cries of pain
clāmōrēs simul horrendōs ad sīdera tollit. (*Virgil*)
- c A foreigner
hic posuit nostrā nūper in urbe pedem. (*Propertius*)
- d Preparations for battle
tum iuvenis validā sustulit arma manū.
- e The foolishness of sea travel
cūr cupiunt nautae saevās properāre per undās?

moenia city walls
horrendōs: horrendus horrifying
properāre hurry

Pick out the adjective in each example and say which noun it is describing.

Word patterns: combinations

1 Notice how Latin sometimes combines two or more words into one:

animadvertere to notice (a combination of **animus** mind, **ad** to, and **vertere** turn).
To notice is to turn the mind towards.

ēgregius excellent (a combination of ē out of and **grex**, **gregis** flock).
An excellent person stands out from the flock.

amphitheātrum amphitheater (a combination of **ambō** both and **theātrum** theater).
An amphitheater is a double theater (with an arena in the middle).

2 Using paragraph 1 as an example, explain how the following Latin words were formed and how they came to have the meaning they have acquired:

agricola, aquaeductus, aquilifer, duodecim, intervallum, mandāre, merīdiēs, omnipotēns, ūnivira, valedīcere, versipellis.

Practicing the language

1 Complete each sentence with the correct word, then translate the sentence.

- a Mārtiālis versum dē Imperātōre compōnere (cōnābātur, ēgrediēbātur)
- b mīlitēs ducem ad ultimās regiōnēs Britanniæ (sequēbāntur, suspicābāntur)
- c omnēs senātōrēs dē victoriā Agricolae (adipīscēbāntur, loquēbāntur)
- d cūr fēminam ut ad urbēm revenīret? (cōnspicābāris, hortābāris)
- e clientēs, quī patrōnum ad forum viam complēbānt. (comitābāntur, proficiēbāntur)
- f nēmō mē, quī multōs cāsūs adiuvāre volēbat. (patiēbar, precābar)

2 Translate each sentence. Then change the words in boldface from singular to plural. Use the tables on [pages 258–267](#) and [280](#) to help you.

- a tribūnus **centuriōnēm callidūm** laudāvit.
- b frāter meus, postquam **hoc templūm** vīdit, admīratiōne affectus est.
- c senex **amicō dēspērāntī** auxiliū tulit.
- d ubi est **puellā?** eam salūtāre volō.
- e iuvenis, **hastā ingentī** armātus, aprūm saevūm petīvit.
- f **puer,** quem heri pūnīvī, hodiē labōrāre nōn **potest.**
- g mē iubēs **rem difficilem** facere.
- h mīlitēs **flūmen altūm** trānsiērunt.

3 Complete each sentence with the most suitable verb from the box below, using the correct form. Then translate the sentence. Do not use any verb more than once.

occīdit	accēpit	iussit	recitāvit	dūxit
occīdērunt	accēpērunt	iussērunt	recitāvērunt	dūxērunt
occīsus est	acceptus est	iussus est	recitātus est	ductus est
occīsī sunt	acceptī sunt	iussī sunt	recitātī sunt	ductī sunt

- a senātor ā servō
- b poēta multōs versūs dē Imperātōre
- c capīvī per viās urbīs in triumphō
- d clientēs pecūniām laetissimē
- e libertus ad aulām contendere

recitātiōnēs

Although most Latin literature was designed initially for reading, many authors presented their work to a listening audience first. For example, a poet might choose a convenient spot, such as a street corner, a barber's shop, or a colonnade in the forum, and recite his poems to anyone who cared to stop and listen. Like any kind of street performance or sales talk, this could be very entertaining or very annoying for the passersby. In an exaggerated but colorful complaint, Martial claims that a poet called Ligurinus used to recite continually at him, whether he was eating dinner, hurrying along the street, swimming in the baths, or using the public lavatories, and that even when he went to sleep, Ligurinus woke him up and began reciting again.

Often, however, a writer's work received its first reading in a more comfortable place than the street corner, with a carefully chosen group of listeners rather than a casual collection of passersby. A natural audience for a writer was his patron, if he had one, and his patron's family and friends. For example, Virgil read sections of his poem the *Aeneid* to the Emperor Augustus and to Augustus' sister Octavia, who is said to have fainted when Virgil reached a part of the poem which referred to her dead son Marcellus. A writer might also invite friends to his house and read his work to them there. This kind of reading sometimes took place at a dinner party. If the host was an accomplished and entertaining writer, this would add to the guests' enjoyment of the meal; but some hosts made great nuisances of themselves by reading boring or feeble work to their dinner guests.

The public reading of a writer's work often took place at a special occasion known as a **recitatiō**, like the one on [pages 16–18](#), in which an invited audience had a chance to hear the author's work and could decide whether or not to buy a copy or have a copy made. The recitatio might be given at the writer's house, at the house of his patron, or in a hall (**auditōriūm**) especially rented for the purpose. Invitations were sent out. A raised platform for the recitātor was erected at one end of the hall. In the front rows cushioned chairs were set out for the more distinguished guests. Behind them were placed benches, and, if the recitatio was a very grand occasion, even tiered seats on temporary scaffolding. Slaves gave out programs to the audience as they arrived. All these expenses were met by the author or his patron. If the writer was unscrupulous or over-anxious, he might even plant friends or hired clappers in the audience with instructions to applaud at appropriate passages.

When all was ready, the reading started. Generally the author himself read his work, though there were exceptions. Pliny the Younger, for example, knew that he was bad at reading poetry; so although he read his



An author reading from a scroll.



Mosaic showing the poet Virgil, with the *Aeneid* on his lap. The two female figures are goddesses, the Muses of epic poetry and tragedy.

speeches himself, he had his poems read by a freedman. The writer, specially dressed for the occasion in a freshly laundered toga, stepped forward and delivered a short introduction (*praefatio*) to his work, then sat to read the work itself. The recital might be continued on a second and third day, sometimes at the request of the audience.

Things did not always go smoothly at recitationes. The Emperor Claudius, when young, embarked on a series of readings from his own historical work, but disaster struck when an enormously fat man joined the audience and sat down on a flimsy bench, which collapsed beneath him; in the general laughter it became impossible for the reading to continue. Pliny records a more serious incident during the reign of Trajan. A historian, who had announced that he would continue his reading in a few days' time, was approached by a group of people who begged him not to read the next passage because they knew it would be dealing with some fairly recent events in which they had been involved. It is possible that the author concerned was the historian Tacitus, describing the misdeeds of the Emperor Domitian and his associates. The historian granted the request and canceled the next installment of the reading. However, as Pliny pointed out, canceling the recitatio did not mean that the men's misdeeds would stay unknown: people would be all the more curious to read the history, in order to find out why the recitatio had been canceled.

Pliny, who gave recitationes of his own work and also regularly attended those of other people, was very shocked at the frivolous way in which *Claudius*.

some members of the audience behaved: "Some of them

loiter and linger outside the hall, and send their slaves in to find out how far the recitatio has gotten; then, when the slaves report that the author has nearly finished his reading, they come in at last – and even then they don't always stay, but slip out before the end, some of them sheepishly and furtively, others boldly and brazenly."

Pliny was more impressed by the response of his wife to his recitals: "Whenever I recite, she sits nearby but behind a curtain, and listens with greedy ears to the audience singing my praises."

The attitude of Romans toward recitationes varied. While Pliny the Younger attached great importance to public readings, Martial, once he was an established poet, laughed at them. By then public recognition of Martial's literary qualities was so assured that he could afford to disregard the success of the recitatio. Seneca wrote that when the author asked the audience, "Shall I read some more?" they usually replied, "Yes, please do," but privately they were praying for the man to be struck dumb. Juvenal sarcastically includes recitationes among the dangers and disadvantages of life in Rome, together with fires and falling buildings. In fact, the work read out must have varied enormously in quality: occasional masterpieces, a sprinkling of good-to-middling work, and plenty of trash.



Statuette of a man reading from a scroll. With his prominent ears, he could have been intended as a caricature of

However, in first-century Rome, when every copy of a book had to be produced individually by hand, recitationes filled a real need. They enabled the author to bring his work to the notice of many people without the expense and labor of creating large numbers of copies. From the response of the listeners, the author could learn if his work was worth publishing. From a discerning audience, the author could obtain comments and criticism that would help in the final revision of his work. There was a danger, however, that the exaggerated applause of a clique might encourage the conceit of an indifferent author. An even more serious criticism of recitationes is that they encouraged writers to think too much about impressing their patron or their audience. One author admitted that much of what he wrote was done not because it pleased him but because it would please his audience.

From the audience's point of view, recitationes were useful. It was far harder in Roman than in modern times to go into a library or a bookstore, run one's eye over the titles and covers, sample the contents of a few likely-looking books, and make a selection. The physical nature of a Roman book (see illustration on [page 21](#)) meant that there was no such thing as a cover; the title was printed not on a convenient part of the book but on a label attached to it, which was often lost; and the act of unrolling and reading a book, then rerolling it ready for the next reader, was so laborious that sampling and browsing were virtually impossible. The recitatio allowed the author to present his work to an audience conveniently, economically, and (if he was a good reader) attractively.

A reconstruction of a Roman gentleman's library, with cupboards for the scrolls and a statue of Minerva, goddess of wisdom.



Vocabulary checklist 36

animadvertisō, animadvertere,	<i>notice, take notice of</i>
animadvertisī, animadversus	<i>arms, weapons</i>
arma, armōrum, n. pl.	<i>reason, cause</i>
causa, causae, f.	<i>pupil, student</i>
discipulus, discipuli, m.	<i>give</i>
dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus	<i>farthest</i>
extrēmus, extrēma, extrēmum	<i>end</i>
finis, finis, m.	<i>fire</i>
ignis, ignis, m.	<i>admire, wonder at</i>
mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum	<i>that ... not, in order that ... not</i>
nē	<i>black</i>
niger, nigra, nigrum	<i>especially</i>
praesertim	<i>except</i>
praeter (+ACC)	<i>recite, read out</i>
recitō, recitāre, recitāvī, recitātus	<i>touch</i>
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus	<i>old</i>
vetus, gen. veteris	



Inkwell, pen, and scroll, showing its label.



CONSLIUM

Stage 37

Agricola, Calēdoniōs victīs, epistulam nūntiō dictat. in hāc epistulā Agricola victoriā Rōmānōrum Imperātōrī nūntiat.

1 “exercitus Rōmānus Calēdoniōs superāvit!”



Agricola dīcit exercitum Rōmānum Calēdoniōs superāvisse.

2 “multī hostēs periērunt, paucī effūgērunt.”



Agricola dīcit multōs hostēs periisse, paucōs effūgisse.

3 “aliæ gentēs nūntiōs iam mīsērunt quī pācem petant.”



Agricola dīcit aliās gentēs nūntiōs mīsisse quī pācem petant.

epistula

Cn. Iūlius Agricola Domitiānō Imperātōrī salūtem dīcit.
septimus annus est, domine, ex quō pater tuus, dīvus
Vespasiānus, ad prōvinciam Britanniam mē mīsit, ut barbarōs
superārem, tū ipse, audītīs precibus meīs, iussistī Calēdoniōs
quoque in populi Rōmānī potestātem redigī. nunc tibi nūntiō
exercitum Rōmānum magnam victoriā rettulisse. bellum est
cōfūctum; Calēdoniī sunt victī.

initiō huius aestātis, exercitus noster ad ultimās partēs
Britanniae pervēnit. hostēs, adventū nostrō cognitō, prope
montem Graupiū sē ad proelium īstrūxerunt. ibi mīlitēs
nostrī, spē glōriae adductī, victoriā nōmine tuō dignam
rettulērunt. incertum est quot hostēs perierint; scio tamen
paucissimōs effūgisse. explōrātōrēs méi affirmant nōnnūllōs
superstītēs, salūte dēspērātā, etiam casās suās incendisse atque
uxōrēs liberōsque manū suā occīdisse.

dē bellō satīs dīxī. nunc pāx firmando est. ego ipse Britanniōs
hortātus sum ut templa, fora, domōs exstruant; fīlīs pīncipū
persuāsū ut lingua Lātīnam discant. mōrēs Rōmānī ā Britannīs
iam adsūmuntur; ubīque geruntur togae.

ūna cūra tamen mē sollicitat. timeō nē inquiēta sit Britannia,
dum Hibernia īnsula in libertātē manet. quod sī Hibernōs
superāverimus, nōn modo pācem in Britanniā habēbimus, sed
etiam magnās dīvitiās comparābimus; audiō enim ex
mercātōribus metalla Hiberniae aurum multum contīnere.
equidem crēdō hanc īnsulam legiōne ūnā obtinērī posse. mīlitēs
sunt parāti; signum Imperātōris alacriter exspectātur. valē.

Cn. = Gnaeus

5 in ... potestātem redigī: in
potestātem redigere
bring under the control
victoriā rettulisse: victoriā
referre win a victory
10 initiō: initium beginning
aestātis: aestās summer
proelium battle

15 firmāda est: firmāre
strengthen, establish

20 adsūmuntur: adsūmere adopt
sollicitat: sollicitare worry
timeō nē I am afraid that
inquiēta: inquiētus unsettled
Hibernia Ireland
quod sī but if
aurum gold
equidem indeed
obtinērī: obtainērī hold
alacriter eagerly



Drawing of a coin (a brass sestertius) issued shortly after the battle of Mons Graupius.

amīcī prīncipis

When you have read this story, answer the questions on the next page.

diē illūcēsscente, complūrēs senātōrēs in aulam Domitiānī conveniēbant, nam Domitiānus cōnsilium suum ad aulam arcessī iusserat. L. Catullus Messālinus, vir maximaē auctōritatis, et Q. Vibius Crispus, senātor septuāgintā annōs nātus, dum Imperātōrem exspectant, anxii inter sē colloquēbantur.

Messālinus: cūr adeō perturbāris, mī Crispe? nōn intellegō quārē anxius sīs.

Crispus: nōn sine causā perturbor. ego enim prīmus ā Domitiānō sententiam rogābor, quia cōsulāris sum nātū maximus. at nisi sciam quārē Domitiānus nōs arcessīverit, sententiam bene meditātam prōpōnere nō poterō.

Messālinus: difficile est mihi tē adiuvāre, mī amīce. nescio enim quārē Domitiānus nōs cōsulere velit. alī dīcunt nūntium ē Britanniā advēnisse; alī putant Germānōs rebellāvissen; alī crēdunt ministrōs Epaphrodītū coniūrātiōnem dēprehendisse. nōn tamen tibi timendum est; tū enim es senātor summae auctōritatis.

Crispus: id quod dīcis fortasse vērum est. nihilominus mihi semper difficile est intellegere quāle respōnsum Domitiānus cupiat. sēnsūs enim vērōs dissimulāre solet. sī tamen tū mē adiūveris, sēcūrus erō. vīsne, quicquid dīixerō, sententiam similem prōpōnere?

Messālinus: minimē! perīculum mihi ipsī facere haudquāquam volō. nihil dīcam priusquam Epaphrodītū sententiam audīverō.

Crispus: sed –

Messālinus: tacē, mī amīce! adest Imperātor.

5 Q. = Quīntus

10 cōsulāris *ex-consul*

meditātam: **meditārī** *consider*

15 putant: **putārē** *think*

ministrōs: **minister** *servant, agent*

20 dēprehendisse: **dēprehendere** *discover*

sēnsūs: **sēnsus** *feeling*

25 quicquid *whatever*

similem: **similis** *similar*



30

Questions

- 1 At what time of day did this conversation take place?
- 2 Why were the senators gathering in the palace?
- 3 Which Latin word shows how Messalinus and Crispus were feeling (lines 3–6)?
- 4 **ego enim ... maximus** (lines 9–11). Who will be asked for an opinion first? Why?
- 5 What does he need to know before he can give a well-considered opinion (lines 11–13)?
- 6 Messalinus mentions three rumors he has heard (lines 15–18). What are they?
- 7 **nōn tamen ... auctōritatis** (lines 18–20). How does Messalinus try to reassure Crispus?
- 8 What favor does Crispus ask from Messalinus (lines 24–25)?
- 9 Why does Messalinus refuse (lines 26–27)?
- 10 What impression do you get in this passage of
 - a Domitian
 - b Epaphroditus?

Make one point about each character and support your answer by referring to the text.



About the language 1: indirect statement (perfect active infinitive)

1 Compare the following direct and indirect statements:

direct statements

"servus fūgit."
"The slave has fled."

indirect statements

dominus crēdit servum **fūgisse**.
The master believes the slave to have fled.
Or, in more natural English:
The master believes that the slave has fled.

"Rōmānī multa oppida dēlēvērunt."
"The Romans have destroyed
many towns."

audiō Rōmānōs multa oppida **dēlēvisse**.
*I hear that the Romans have destroyed
many towns.*

The form of the verb in **boldface** is known as the **perfect active infinitive**.

2 Further examples:

- a "hostēs castra in rīpā flūminis posuērunt."
- b centuriō dicit hostēs castra in rīpā flūminis posuisse.
- c "Rōmānī magnam victōriam rettulērunt."
- d in hāc epistulā Agricola nūntiat Rōmānōs magnam victōriam rettulisse.
- e clientēs putant patrōnum ex urbe discessisse.
- f scio senātōrem vīllam splendidam in Campāniā aedificāuisse.

3 Compare the perfect active infinitive with the perfect active indicative:

perfect active indicative (1st person singular)

portāvī	<i>I have carried</i>
docuī	<i>I have taught</i>
trāxī	<i>I have dragged</i>
audīvī	<i>I have heard</i>

perfect active infinitive

portāvisse	<i>to have carried</i>
docuisse	<i>to have taught</i>
trāxisse	<i>to have dragged</i>
audīvisse	<i>to have heard</i>

cōnsilium Domitiānī

I

dum senātōrēs anxī inter sē colloquuntur, ingressus est Domitiānus vultū ita compositū ut nēmō intellegere posset utrum īrātus an laetus esset. eum sequēbātur Epaphrodītus, epistulam manū tenēns.

Domitiānus, ā senātōribus salūtātus, "nūntius," inquit, "nōbīs epistulam modo attulit, ā Cn. īlīliō Agricolā missam. in hāc epistulā Agricola nūntiat exercitum Rōmānum ad ultimās partēs Britanniae pēvēnisse et magnam victōriam rettulisse. affirmat bellum cōflectum esse. Epaphrodītus, epistulam recitā."



epistulā recitatā, Domitiānus, ad Crispum statim conversus,

"quid," inquit, "dē hāc Agricolae epistulā putās? quid mihi suādēs?"

Crispus diū tacēbat; superciliis contractis quasi rem cōgītaret, oculōs humī dēfixit, dēnique:

"moderātiōnem," inquit, "suādeō."

Domitiānus "breviter," inquit, "et prūdenter locūtus es; tua tamen sententia amplius est explicanda."

priusquam Crispus respondēret, A. Fabricius Vēientō, cēterī paulō audīcīor, interpellāvit, veritus tamen nē Domitiānūm offenderet, verbis cōsiderātīs ūsus est:



"cognōvimus, domine, Calēdoniōs tandem victōs esse. Agricola tamen hāc victōriā nimis ēlātus est. nam crēdit īsulam Hiberniam facile occupārī posse; ego autem puto Agricolam longē errāre; Hibernī enim et ferōcēs et validī sunt. sī cōpiae nostraē trāns mare in Hiberniam ductae erunt, magnō perīculō obiciēntur. revocandus est Agricola."

quibus verbīs offēnsus, M'. Acīlius Glabriō, "equidē valdē gaudeō," inquit, "Calēdoniōs superātōs esse. sī Hibernia quoque ab Agricolā victa erit, tōtam Britanniā in potestātē nostrā habēbimus. absurdum est Agricolam revocāre priusquam Britannōs omnīnō supereret! quis nostrōrum ducum est melior quam Agricola? quis dignior est triumphō?"

5



modo just now
10 suādēs: suādēre advise, suggest
superciliis contractis: supercilia
contrahere draw eyebrows
together, frown
moderātiōnem: moderātiō moderation, caution

15 breviter briefly
prūdenter prudently, sensibly
amplius more fully
A. = Aulus

20 veritus: verītē be afraid, fear
cōsiderātīs: cōsiderātus
careful, well-considered

ūsus est: ūtī use
ēlātus excited, carried away
25 cōpiae forces
obiciēnt: obicere
put in the way of, expose to

30



35

40



36 Stage 37



Above: A reconstruction of part of Domitian's enormous palace on the Palatine hill. At the left there is a large hall (aula) where the emperor's consilium might have met. It was flanked by two other large rooms. In the center is a peristylum with a fountain, and on the right, a vast dining room.

Right: The remains of the porch in front of the large hall (at the left in the reconstruction). Built of brick-faced concrete, the palace was covered in colored marbles.



37 Stage 37

II

ceterī, audaciā Glabriōnis obstupefacti, oculos in Imperatōrem dēfixos tenēbant nec quicquam dīcere audēbant. ille tamen nec verbō nec vultū sēnsū ostendit. deinde

Epaphrodītus, ad Glabriōnem conversus, “num comparās,” inquit, “hanc inānēm Agricolae victoriā cum rēbus splendidiā ab Imperatōre nostrō gestis? nōnne audīvisti, mī Glabriō, Imperatōrem ipsum proximō annō multa mīlia Germānōrum superāvisse? num oblitus es p̄fīcipiēs Germānōs, catēnī vīctōs, per viās urbīs in triumphō dēductōs esse?”

tum Messālinus, simulatque haec Epaphrodīti verba audīvit, occāsiōne ūsus,

“scīmus,” inquit, “nūllōs hostēs ferōciōrēs Germānīs esse, nūllum ducem Domitiānō Augustō esse meliōrem. scīmus etiam

Agricolam in prōvinciā septem annōs mānsisse. ipse affīmat tam fidēlēs sibi legiōnēs esse ut ad Hiberniam sine timōre prōgredī possit. cavendum est nōbīs! timeō nē Agricola, spē imperiū adductus, in Italiam cum legiōnibus reveniat bellumque contrā patriam gerat. num Glabriō cupit Agricolam fierī Imperatōrem? Agricola, meā sententiā, revocandus, laudandus, tollendus est.”

Glabriō nihil respondit. nōn enim dubitabat quīn Imperatōrem graviter offendisset. Messālinī sententiam ceterī senatōrēs alacriter secūtī sunt.

Domitiānus autem nūllum signum dedit neque odiī neque gaudiī neque invidiae. cōnsiliō tandem dīmissō, in ātriō sōlus mānsit; multa in animō dē Glabriōne atque Agricolā volvēbat.



5 **comparās: comparāre** compare

10 **gestis: gerere** achieve

proximō: proximus last

oblitus es: oblīvisci forget

15

20

imperīi: imperium power

fierī become, to be made

30

tollendus: tollere
remove, do away with
nōn ... dubitabat quīn
did not doubt that

invidiae: invidia jealousy, envy

About the language 2: indirect statement (perfect passive infinitive)

1 Compare the following direct and indirect statements:

direct statements

“capīvī liberātū sunt.”

“The prisoners have been freed.”

indirect statements

scio captīvōs liberātōs esse.

I know the prisoners to have been freed.

Or, in more natural English:

I know that the prisoners have been freed

libertus dīcit nūntium ab Agricolā missum esse.

The freedman says that a messenger has been sent by Agricola.

The form of the verb in **boldface** is known as the **perfect passive infinitive**.

2 Further examples:

a “multū Calēdoniū occīsū sunt.”

b in hāc epistulā Agricola nūntiat multōs Calēdoniōs occīsōs esse.

c “templū novū in forō exstrūctū est.”

d mercatōrēs dīcunt templū novū in forō exstrūctū esse.

e audiō libertatē omnibus servīs datam esse.

f nauta crēdit quattuor nāvēs tempestāte dēlētās esse.

3 Compare the perfect passive indicative with the perfect passive infinitive:

perfect passive indicative

(1st person singular)

portātus sum I have been carried

doctus sum I have been taught

tractus sum I have been dragged

audītus sum I have been heard

perfect passive infinitive

portātus esse

to have been carried

doctus esse

to have been taught

tractus esse

to have been dragged

audītus esse

to have been heard

Notice that the perfect passive infinitive contains the perfect passive participle (**portātus**, etc.), which changes its ending in the usual way to agree with the noun it describes:

videō cibū **parātū** esse.

I see that the food has been prepared.

videō nāvēs **parātās** esse.

I see that the ships have been prepared.

Word patterns: frequentatives

1 Study the form and meaning of the following verbs:

agere	<i>to drive</i>	agitāre	<i>to chase</i>
volare	<i>to fly</i>	volitāre	<i>to flit, to fly about</i>
habēre	<i>to have</i>	habitāre	<i>to have possession of, to inhabit</i>

The verbs in the second column are called **frequentatives**. They indicate repeated or more intense action than the basic verb from which they are formed.

2 Using paragraph 1 as a guide, complete the following table:

dicere	dictāre	<i>to dictate</i>
salire	<i>to jump</i>	saltāre
haerēre	haesitāre
.....	clāmitāre	<i>to cry out violently</i>
.....	<i>to fall asleep</i>

3 Give the meaning for the following frequentative verbs:

cantāre, captāre, cōgitāre, iactāre, pulsāre, ventitāre, vīsitāre.

4 The verb **dubitāre** is a combination of **duo** and **habitāre**. Explain how it comes to have the meanings given in the vocabulary checklist for this Stage.

Practicing the language

1 Complete each sentence with the most suitable word from the box below, and then translate.

audītō aedificābatur poterant prōcēdere Imperatōrī esset

- a in summō monte novum templum
- b nūntius, simulatque advēnit, epistulam trādidit.
- c strepitū, cōsul ē lectō surrēxit.
- d facile cognōvī quis auctor pugnae
- e putō pomparam per forum iam
- f post proelium paucī Calēdoniī effugere

2 Translate the first sentence of each pair. Then, with the help of page 000, complete the second sentence with a passive form of the verb to express the same idea. Finally, translate the second sentence.

For example:

senātōrēs Domitiānum timēt.
Domitiānus ā senātōribus timē... .

Translated and completed, this becomes:

senātōrēs Domitiānum timēt.
The senators fear Domitian.
Domitiānus ā senātōribus timētur.
Domitian is feared by the senators.

a dux equitēs iam incitat.
equitēs ā duce iam incita. . . .

b exercitus noster oppidum mox dēlēbit.
oppidum ab exercitū nostrō mox dēlē. . . .

In sentences e–f, nouns as well as verbs have to be completed. Refer if necessary to the table of nouns on [pages 258–259](#).

c multī cīvēs lūdōs spectābunt.
lūdī ā multīs cīv. . . spectā. . . .

d puellae ātrium ḍrnānt.
ātrium ā puell. . . ḍrnā. . . .

e puer victimās ad āram dūcēbat.
victimae ad āram ā puer. . . dūcē. . . .

f mercātor ancillam accūsābat.
ancill. . . ā mercātor. . . accūsā. . . .

3 Translate each sentence into Latin by selecting correctly from the list of Latin words.

a *The barbarians have been surrounded by our army.*

barbarī	ad exercitū	nostrō	circumventus est
barbarīs	ab exercitū	noster	circumventī sunt

b *A certain senator is trying to deceive you.*

senātōrī	quīdam	tē	dēcipit	cōnātūr
senātōr	quidem	tuī	dēcipere	cōnāntur

c *She was lying hidden, in order to hear the old men's conversation.*

latēbat	ut	sermōnem	senem	audīvisset
latuerat	nē	sermō	senum	audīret

d *The same clients will be here tomorrow.*

eōsdem	cliēns	crās	aderunt
eīdem	clientēs	cotidiē	aberunt

e *The instigator of the crime did not want to be seen in the forum.*

auctor	scelerī	in forum	vidēre	volēbat
auctōrem	sceleris	in forō	vidērī	nōlēbat

The emperor's council

Among the people who took part in the government of the empire were the members of the emperor's **cōnsilium** (council), often referred to as **amici** (friends) of the emperor.

The consilium did not have a fixed membership; it was simply made up of those people whom the emperor invited to advise him on any particular occasion. Some men were regularly asked to meetings of the consilium; others were asked occasionally. Many would be experienced and distinguished men of senatorial rank, who had reached the top of the career ladder described on [pages 43–45](#). Some men of equestrian rank might also be invited, such as the commander of the praetorian guard. When there was a change of emperor, the new emperor usually invited some new members to meetings of the consilium, but also found it convenient to continue using some of the previous emperor's advisers. In many cases the new emperor had himself attended the previous emperor's consilium.

The matters on which the emperor asked his consilium for advice were naturally varied. The consilium might, for example, be summoned in moments of crisis, such as the discovery of a conspiracy against the emperor's life; or it might be consulted on the delicate question: "Who should be the emperor's heir?" Sometimes the emperor would want advice about military decisions or foreign affairs. The story on [pages 35 and 38](#), in which Domitian asks his advisers about Agricola's letter from Britain, is fictitious, but it would not have been odd or unusual for the consilium to have discussed such a question.



Relief showing an emperor dealing with affairs of state, seated on a platform in front of the Basilica Iulia in the Forum.

However, the commonest task of the amici was to advise the emperor while he was administering the law. For example, they might join him when he was hearing an appeal by a condemned prisoner, or settling a property dispute between two or more parties. After the people concerned had stated their case, the emperor would ask for the **sententia** (opinion) of each member of the consilium in turn; he might then retire for further thought, and would finally announce his decision. He was not bound to follow the majority opinion of the consilium, and could even ignore their advice altogether. In theory, the amici were free to give their opinions firmly and frankly; but under some emperors it could be dangerous to speak one's mind too openly. During Domitian's reign a number of amici used their position as members of the consilium to increase their own power and to spread rumors and accusations about their enemies; it was said of one man that he could "slit a throat with a whisper."

Some of the cases which were heard by the Emperor Trajan are described by Pliny, who was sometimes invited to Trajan's consilium. They include a charge of adultery against a military tribune's wife and a centurion, and a dispute in a small town in Gaul where the local mayor had abolished the town's annual games. It is clear from Pliny's account that even quite trivial cases were sometimes referred to the emperor for decision; most Roman emperors were kept very busy, and needed the help of their amici in order to cope with the workload.

The senatorial career

Most of the amici taking part in the discussion on [pages 35 and 38](#) would have successfully followed a career known as the senatorial **cursus honōrum** (series of honors or ladder of promotion), in which members of the senatorial class competed with each other for official posts in the Roman government. These official positions were arranged in a fixed order. As a man worked his way through them, his responsibilities and status steadily increased. Some posts were compulsory, so that a man who had not held a particular post was not allowed to proceed to a higher one, except by special favor of the emperor. Some positions also had age restrictions. To gain a position **suō annō** (in one's year) meant at the earliest possible age. The most successful men got to the top of the ladder of positions while the rest dropped out at various points along the way.

Some officials, such as the consuls, were chosen by the emperor; others were elected by the senate. Even in those posts where the choice was made by the senate, the emperor still had great influence, since he could "recommend" to the senate particular candidates for election.

By the time of Domitian, the most important stages in the **cursus honorum** were as follows:



Holders of the senior posts – aediles, praetors, and consuls – had the honor of sitting in an ivory-inlaid "curule chair."

The senatorial cursus honorum

1 vigintivir. Every year twenty young men were chosen as *vigintiviri*, who served for a year in Rome as junior officials, assisting with such tasks as the management of the law courts and prisons, and the minting of the Roman coinage.

2 tribunus militum. In the following year, each of the young men went abroad on military service as an officer in a legion.

3 quaestor. On returning to Rome, a man who wanted to progress further in the *cursus honorum* would aim at the *quaestorship*. This position involved the management of sums of public money and was usually (but not always) held in Rome. It lasted for one year and was important because it qualified a man for entry into the senate, which met regularly to discuss and decide government business.

4 tribunus plebis or aedilis. After a compulsory interval of a year, an ex-*quaestor* who wanted further promotion had a choice. He might aim to become one of the ten *tribunes of the people*, whose original responsibility had been to act as helpers and advisers of the common people (*plebs*), but whose tasks had been greatly reduced by the time of Domitian. Alternatively, he could try to be appointed as one of the six *aediles*, who were responsible for the upkeep of public buildings, baths, sewers, and roads.

5 praetor. The chief task of the *praetors* was to supervise the Roman law courts. A man who had held the *praetorship* also became eligible for certain important posts abroad; for example, he might command a legion, or govern one of the twenty-eight provinces (but not the ten most important ones). Governorships of provinces were normally held for a period of three years.

6 cōsul. The highest post in the *cursus honorum* was the *consulship*. There were only two *consuls* at any one time, but they changed at intervals during the year. They presided at meetings of the senate, and had a general responsibility for supervising government business. The ablest ex-*consuls* became governors of the ten most important provinces; some men, through exceptional ability or by favor of the emperor, achieved further distinctions, including second or even third *consulships*.



Above: *An inscription, with transcript, setting out the career of Pliny, found in a town where he had a villa. It was set up in his honor by the people of Vercellae. His final posting, to Bithynia, must have come later (coin of Nicaea in Bithynia, below).*



This system enabled the emperor to see who the best men were. It also showed him whether a man had any special skills which made him suitable for a particular job or province. For example, Agricola was a good soldier, while Pliny was an expert in financial matters; each man was given work that offered him opportunities to use his particular gifts. The careers of both men are given below. They differ from each other in the early stages, because Agricola did not become a *vigintivir* and had an unusually long period as a military tribune. Pliny's career looks somewhat fuller than Agricola's; this is partly because Agricola's governorship of Britain was exceptionally lengthy, and partly because Agricola held no post at all between his recall from Britain and his death.

Career of Agricola

AD

40 birth

58–61

tribunus militum in Britain

64

quaestor in Asia

66

tribunus plebis

68

praetor

70–73

legatus Legionis XX in

Britain

74–76

legatus (governor) of

Aquitania

77

consul

78–84

legatus (governor) of Britain

93 death

Career of Pliny

AD

61 or 62 birth

782

vigintivir (with responsibility for one of the law courts)

tribunus militum in Syria

quaestor in Rome

tribunus plebis

praetor

praefectus aerarii militaris (in charge of the military treasury)

praefectus aerarii Saturni (in charge of the treasury of the god Saturn)

consul

augur (honorary priesthood, held simultaneously with other positions)

curator Tiberis (responsible for flood precautions, drainage, etc., in connection with Tiber river)

legatus Augusti in Bithynia (a special governorship by personal appointment of the emperor)

death

Several of the above dates, especially in the early part of Pliny's career, are approximate and uncertain.

Vocabulary checklist 37

complūrēs, complūra	several
dignus, digna, dignum	worthy, appropriate
discō, discere, didicī	learn
dīvus, dīvī, m.	god
dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī	hesitate, doubt
exercitus, exercitūs, m.	army
fīō, fierī, factus sum	become, be made
oblīviscor, oblīvisci, oblītus sum	forget
odium, odīū, n.	hatred
patria, patriae, f.	country, homeland
paulō	a little
perturbō, perturbāre, perturbāvī, perturbātus	alarm, disturb
proelium, proeliī, n.	battle
puto, putāre, putāvī	think
revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātus	recall, call back
sēcūrus, sēcūra, sēcūrum	without a care
tempestās, tempestātis, f.	storm
trāns (+ACC)	across
validus, valida, validum	strong



Pliny's experience as *Prefect of the Treasury of Saturn* (housed in this temple overlooking the Forum Romanum) prepared him for sorting out the considerable financial problems of Bithynia.



NUPTIAE

Stage 38

Imperātōris sententia

When you have read this story, answer the questions on the next page.

in aulā Domitiānī, T. Flāvius Clēmēns, adfinis Imperātōris, cum
Domitiānō anxius colloquitur. Clēmēns semper cum Imperātōre
cōsentīre solet; verētur enim nē idem sibi accidat ac frātrī, quī iussū
Imperātōris occīsus est.

Domitiānus: decōrum est mihi, mī Clēmēns, tē līberōsque tuōs
honōrāre. ego ipse, ut scīs, līberōs nullōs habeō
qui imperium post mortem meam exerceant.
cōstitū igitur fīliōs tuōs in familiā meā
ascīscere. cognōmina “Domitiānum” et
“Vespasiānum” eīs dabō; praetereā rhētorem
nōtissimum eīs praeficiām, M. Fabium
Quīntiliānum. prō certō habeō Quīntiliānum eōs
optimē doctūrum esse.

Clēmēns: grātiās maximās tibi agō, domine, quod mē
fīliōsque meōs tantō honōrē affīcis. ego semper –
Domitiānus: satis! pauca nunc dē Pōllā, fīliā tuā, loquī velim.
crēdō Pōllam quattuordecim annōs iam nātam
esse. nōnne necesse est nōbīs eam in
mātrimōniūm collocāre?

Clēmēns: domine –
Domitiānus: virum quendam cognōvī quī omnī modō fīliā tuā
dignus est. commendō tibi Sparsūm, senātōrem
summae virtūtis quī magnās dīvītiās possidet.

Clēmēns: at, domine, iam quīnquāgintā annōs nātūs est
Sparsus.
Domitiānus: ita vērō! aetāte flōret.
Clēmēns: at bis mātrimōniō iūncutus, utramque uxōrem
repudiāvit.
Domitiānus: prō certō habeō eum numquam cognātam
Imperātōris repudiātūrum esse. quid multa?
prōmittō Sparsūm tibi generūm grātissimum
futūrum esse. haec est sententia mea, quam sī
dissēnseris mūtābō. sed prius tibi explicandū
erit quārē dissentiās.

adfinis relative, relation by
marriage

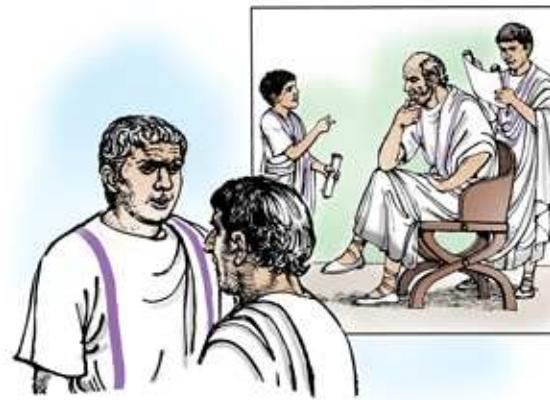
idem ... ac the same ... as

5
ascīscere adopt
cognōmina: cognōmen
surname, additional name

15
affīcis: affīcere treat
quattuordecim fourteen

20
virtūtis: virtūs virtue

25
aetāte flōret: aetāte flōrēre
be in the prime of life
bis twice
iūncutus: iungere join
utramque: uterque each, both
repudiāvit: repudiāre divorce
30
cognātam: cognāta
relative (by birth)
quid multa? what more is there
to say?, in short
generūm: gener son-in-law
grātissimum: grātus
acceptable, pleasing
mūtābō: mūtāre change



prō certō habeō
Quīntiliānum eōs
optimē doctūrum esse.

Questions

- What is taking place in the palace?
- What attitude does Clemens always take toward Domitian? Why?
- What is Domitian proposing to do (lines 5–6)?
- What problem does he have (lines 6–7)?
- How has he decided to solve it (lines 8–9)?
- What arrangements will he make about the boys' education? What guarantee does he make to Clemens (lines 10–13)?
- What proposal does Domitian make about Polla? Why does he think it is the right time to make it?
- commendō ... possidet** (lines 22–23). Why does Domitian recommend Sparsus?
- What is the first objection Clemens makes to Sparsus (lines 24–25)? What do you think of Domitian's reply?
- What is Clemens' second objection (lines 27–28)? Do you think Domitian's answer is convincing (lines 29–30)? Give a reason.
- haec est ... dissentiās** (lines 32–34). What does Domitian say he will do if Clemens disagrees? What condition does he attach? Do you think Clemens will disagree? Give a reason.
- What does this story tell us about Domitian's attitude to his family? Make two points.

Pōlla

Pōlla, filia Clēmentis, fortūnam suam queritur; māter Flāvia eam cōnsolārī cōnātur.

Pōlla: quam crūdēlis est pater meus, quī mē Sparsō nūbere iussit! quid faciam, māter? num putās mē istī senī umquam nūptūram esse? scīs mē alium quendam amāre.

Flāvia: ò dēliciae, nōlī lacrimāre! dūra est vīta; necesse est pārēre eīs quī nōs regunt. crēdō tamen Sparsum satis grātum et benignum tibi futūrum esse.

Pōlla: cūr mē ita cēcipis? scīs eum esse senem odiōsum. scīs etiam eum duās uxōrēs iam repudiāvisse. at tū, māter, sententiā Imperātōris nimis movēris; nihil dē mē cūrās, nihil dē Helvidiō quem amō.

Flāvia: num tū tam audā es ut istī amōrī indulgeās? iste enim Helvidius gentī nostrae est odiō. num oblīta es avum eius, cum Vespaśiānum Imperātōrem graviter offendisset, in exiliō occīsum esse? mihi crēde, mea Pōlla! melius est cēdere quam frūstrā resistere.



Sculptures of Roman married couples often show that the man was older than the woman.

5 **queritur: querī**
 lament, complain about
cōsōlārī *console*
nūbere *marry*
quid faciam? *what am I to do?*

10 **odiōsum: odiōsus** *hateful*

movēris: movēre *move,*
 influence
indulgeās: indulgēre *give way*
15 *to*
avum: avus *grandfather*
exiliō: exilium *exile*

About the language 1: indirect statement (future active infinitive)

1 Compare the following direct and indirect statements:

direct statements
“hostēs mox pugnābunt.”
“The enemy will fight soon.”

indirect statements
crēdimus hostēs mox **pugnātūrōs esse.**
We believe the enemy to be going to fight soon.
Or, in more natural English:
We believe that the enemy will fight soon.

“senex perībit.”
“The old man will die.”

medicus dīcit senem **peritūrum esse.**
The doctor says that the old man will die.

The form of the verb in **boldface** is known as the **future active infinitive**.

2 Further examples:

- a “multī āthlētae crās certābunt.”
- b praecō dīcit multōs āthlētās crās certātūrōs esse.
- c “fīliae mox advenient.”
- d māter crēdit fīliās mox adventūrās esse.
- e suspicor ancillām tē dēceptūram esse.
- f mercātor spērat sē magnās dīvitiās comparātūrum esse.

3 Study the way in which the future active infinitive is formed:

portātūrus esse	to be about to carry
doctūrus esse	to be about to teach
tractūrus esse	to be about to drag
audītūrus esse	to be about to hear

Notice that the future active infinitive contains a participle (**portātūrus**, etc.) which changes its ending in the usual way to agree with the noun it describes:

puer dīcit patrem crās **reventūrum** esse.
The boy says that his father will return tomorrow.

puer dīcit fēminās crās **reventūrās** esse.
The boy says that the women will return tomorrow.

prīdiē nūptiārum

nox est. crās nūptiae Pōlla et Sparsī celebrābuntur. Pōlla per hortum patris errat. crēdit sē sōlam esse; ignōrat Helvidium advēnisse. quī, hortum clam ingressus, Pōllam querentem audit; inter arborēs immōtus stat.

Pōlla: quid faciam? Helvidius trēs diēs iam abest, neque scio quō ille ierit. intērā tōtam domum nostram videō ad nūptiās mēas odiōsās parārī. ō Helvidi, ēripe mē ex hīs malīs!

Helvidius: (*subitō prōgressus*) id libenter faciam. nēmō mē prohibēbit.

Pōlla: (*gaudiō et pavōre commōta*) Helvidi! quō modō hūc vēniſt? si hīc captus eris, interficiēris. fuge, priusquam pater meus tē cōnspiciat!

Helvidius: fugiam vērō, sed nōn sine tē. fuge mēcum, mea Pōlla! tē ex hīs malīs ēripiam, sicut tū modo precābāris.

Pōlla: quō modō fugere possumus? tū ipse scīs mē semper custōdīrī. nūptiās odiōsās nūllō modō vītare possum. parentēs, Imperātor, lēgēs mē iubent cōguntque Sparsō nūbērē.

Helvidius: minimē, mea Pōlla! tibi polliceor mē moritūrum esse priusquam ille senex tē uxōrem dūcat. nōbīs procul ex hāc urbe fugiendum est, ubi parentēs tuī nōs invenīre numquam poterunt.

Pōlla: distrahor et excrucior. hūc amor, illūc pietās mē trahit.

Helvidius: nōlī timēre, mea Pōlla! tē numquam dēseram, semper servābō.

Flāvia: (*intrā domum*) Pōlla! Pōlla, ubi es?
Pōlla: ēheu! ā mātre vocor. audī, mī Helvidi! haec ultima verba tibi dīcō; nōn enim puto mē umquam tē iterum vīsūram esse. crās ego Sparsō nūbam. est mihi nūlla spēs fugae. sed quamquam Sparsum mē uxōrem ductūrus est, mī Helvidi, iūrō mē tē sōlum amāre, iūrō mē ... (*lacrimās retinēre frūstrā cōnātur*) tē semper amatūram ... (*vōx dēficit*.)

Helvidius: (*dextram Pōllae arripiēns*) Pōlla, dēōs testor Sparsum tē uxōrem numquam ductūrum esse. cōnfide mihi, mea Pōlla! (*Pōllam ardenter amplexus, Helvidius abit.*)

Pōlla: (*incerta utrum spēret an timeat*) dea Fortūna, servā eum!

prīdiē *the day before*

errat: *errāre* *wander*

5

ēripe: *ēripere* *rescue, snatch away*

10

15

uxōrem dūcat: *uxōrem dūcere*
take as a wife, marry

25 distrahor: *distrahēre*
tear apart, tear in two
hūc ... illūc *this way ... that way, one way ... another way*

30 **pietās** *duty*
intrā *inside*

iūrō: *iūrāre* *swear*

35 **dēficit:** *dēficere* *fail, die away*
dextram: *dextra* *right hand*
arripiēns: *arripiere* *seize*
testor: *testārī* *call to witness*
40 **ardenter** *passionately*

About the language 2: perfect subjunctive

1 In Stage 36, you met the present subjunctive:

incertus sum ubi Mārtiālis hodiē **recitet**.
I am not sure where Martial is reciting today.

2 In Stages 37 and 38, you have met sentences like these:

cognōscere volō quārē Domitiānus nōs **vocāverit**.
I want to find out why Domitian has called us.
senātor nescit quō modō Imperātōrem **offenderit**.
The senator does not know how he has offended the emperor.

The form of the verb in **boldface** is the **perfect subjunctive**.

3 Further examples:

- a cognōscēmus quantam pecūniā parentēs nōbīs relīquerint.
- b centuriō scīre vult num senex equum cōspexerit.
- c Pōlla nescit quō Helvidius ierit.
- d uxor mē cotīdiē rogat quārē hanc vīllam ēmerim.
- e incertū sumus utrum barbarī castra oppugnāvērint an fūgerint.

4 Compare the perfect subjunctive with the perfect indicative:

<i>perfect indicative</i>	<i>perfect subjunctive</i>
portāvī	portāverim
portāvistī	portāverīs
portāvit	portāverit
portāvimus	portāverīmus
portāvistis	portāverītis
portāvērunt	portāverīnt

Perfect subjunctive forms of **doceō**, **trahō**, and **audiō** are given on page 000 of the Language information section.

5 For the perfect subjunctive of irregular verbs, see [page 282](#).

cōfarreātiō

I

diēs nūptiārum adest. Pōlla, veste nūptiālī ornāta, in cubiculō suō stat. māter eam īspicit.

Flāvia: nunc tē verte ad mē, Pōlla! flammeum firmē capitī superpositum est? (Pōllam lacrimāre videt.) ō mea filia, tibi haud lacrimandum est; diē nūptiārum nōn decōrum est lacrimāre.

servus Clēmentis: (ingressus) domina, iussus sum vōs ad sacrificium arcessere. dominus meus dicit victimam iam ēlectam esse, haruspīces paratōs adstāre. nūntius quoque iam adest, quī dicit Imperatōrem, comitante Sparsō, mox adventūrum esse.

Flāvia: bene! nūntiā dominō tuō nōs statim ad ātrium prōcessūrās esse.

cōfarreātiō wedding ceremony

veste: vestis clothing, clothes
nūptiālī: nūptiālis wedding

flammeum veil
superpositum est: superpōnere
5 place on

10

15

Flāvia et Pōlla ad ātrium prōcēdunt, ubi multī amīcī, familiārēs, clientēs iam adsunt. intrat Sparsus, multīs comitantibus servīs; deinde ingreditur ipse Domitiānus. Pōlla, valdē commōta, ad Sparsum dicitur; dextrās solleminiter iungunt. inde Domitiānus, ut Pontifex Maximus, ad medium ātrium prōcēdit ut sacrificium Iovī faciat. victima ā Domitiānō sacrificātur; precēs Iovī et Iūnōnī offeruntur. Pōlla tamen adeō perturbātur ut precēs audire vix possit.

Sparsus: (Pōllam perturbārāt animadvertisit.) nōlī timēre, mea Pōlla! age! cōnsidē in hāc sellā. nunc cōfarreātiōnem celebrābimus.

Domitiānus: (lībum farreum Sparsō et Pōllae offerēns) hoc lībum sacrum cōnsūmīte!

Sparsus et Pōlla lībum sacrum cōnsūmunt.

Domitiānus: tacēte vōs omnēs, quī adestis! vōbīs prōnūtiō hanc virginem nunc in manū huius virī convenīre.

spectatōrēs: fēliciter! fēliciter!

Domitiānus: nunc cēdite testibūs! tabulae nūptiālēs signandae sunt.

tabulīs signatīs, omnēs ad tricliniūm prōcēdunt, ubi cēna sūmptuōsa parāta est.

Pontifex Maximus Chief Priest

20

Iūnōnī: Iūnō Juno (goddess of marriage)

25

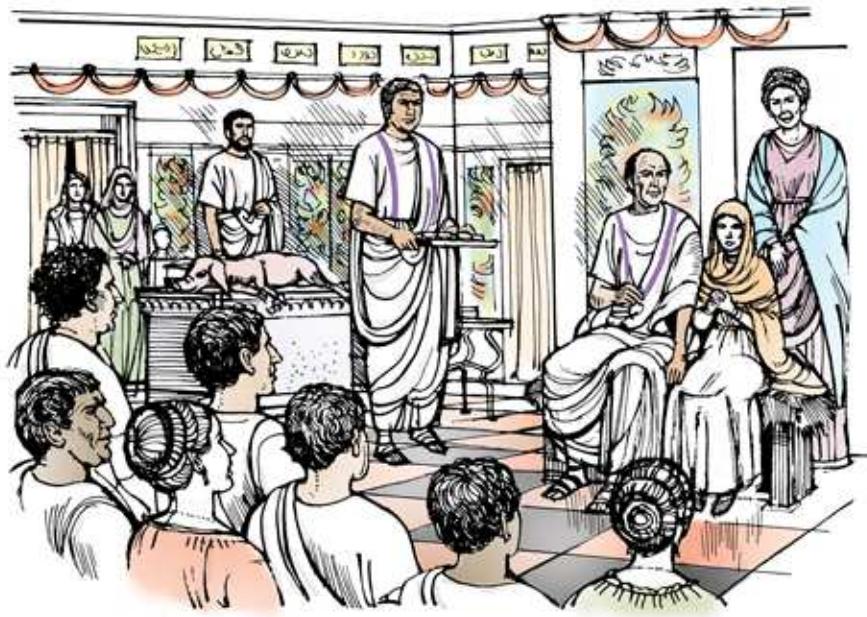
lībum farreum cake made from grain

30 **in manū ... convenīre**
pass into the hands of

fēliciter! good luck!

tabulae nūptiālēs marriage contract, marriage tablets

35



Sparsus Pōllam perturbārāt animadvertisit.

II

sōle occidente, servī Pōllam domum Sparsī dēducere parant, ubi Sparsus, prior profectus, iam eam exspectat. chorus mūsicōrum carmen nūptiāle cantāre incipit.

chorus: ō Hymēn Hymenae, iō!

ō Hymēn Hymenae!

Flāvia: mea filia, sīc tē amplexa valedīcō. valē, mea Pōlla, valē!

servī, ut mōs est, puerālā mātre abripiunt. puerī, quī facēs ardētēs ferunt, Pōllam forās dēducunt. magnā comitante turbā pompa per viās prōgreditur.

chorus: tollite, ō puerī, facēs!

flammeum videō venīre.

ō Hymēn Hymenae, iō!

ō Hymēn Hymenae!

prior earlier
chorus chorus, choir
mūsicōrum: mūsicus musician
Hymēn and Hymenae:
5 Hymenaeus Hymen
(Roman god of weddings)

abripiunt: abripere tear away
from
forās out of the house

10



III

tandem pompa domum Sparsī, flōribus ḫrnātam, advenit. quī, domō ēgressus, Pōllam ita appellat:

Sparsus: siste! quis es tū? quō nōmine hūc venīs?

Pōlla: ubi tū Gāius, ego Gāia.

quibus verbis sollemnis dictis, subito magnus clāmor audītur; ē mediā turbā ērumpit iuvenis, pugioñe armātus, quī praeceps in Sparsum ruit.

iuvenis: nunc morere, Sparse! (Sparsum ferōciter pugioñe petit.)
Sparsus: subvenīte! subvenīte!

ingēns strepitus orītur; servī accurrunt; aliī spectatōrēs Sparsō servīsque subveniunt, aliī immōti et obstupēfacti stant. Pōlla tamen, iuvene Helvidiō agnītō, pallēscit. servī Helvidium, tandem comprehēnsum, fīrmē retinēt.

siste: sistere stop, halt

5 sollemnibus: sollemnis
solemn, traditional

morere! die!

10 orītur: orītī rise, arise

Sparsus: (exclāmāns) illum agnōscō! Helvidius est, homō īfestissimus gentī Imperatōris. eum ad Imperatōrem dūcite! prō certō habēō Domitiānum eī poenam aptissimam excōgitātūrum esse. (Pōlla horrēscit.) nōlī timēre, mea Pōlla! ille iuvenis īsānus numquam iterum nōs vexābit. nunc tibi tempus est domum tuam novam intrāre.

15

excōgitātūrum esse: excōgitare
invent, think up
horrēscit: horrēscere shudder
20

Sparsus Pōllam bracchiis tollit ut eam trāns limen portet. Helvidius ad Domitiānum abdūcitur.

About the language 3: indirect statement (present passive infinitive)

1 In Stage 34, you met the present passive infinitive, used in sentences like these:

laudārī volō.

I want to be praised.

sonitus **audīrī** nōn poterat.

The sound was unable to be heard.

2 In Stage 38, you have met the present passive infinitive in indirect statements. Study the following examples:

direct statements

“vexāris.”

“You are annoyed.”

indirect statements

scio tē **vexārī**.

I know you to be annoyed.

Or, in more natural English:

I know that you are annoyed.

“multī mīlitēs exercentur.”

“Many soldiers are being trained.”

audīmus multōs mīlitēs **exercērī**.

We hear that many soldiers are being trained.

3 Further examples:

a “cēna splendida in vīllā iam parātūr.”

b prō certō habēō cēnam splendidam in vīllā iam parārī.

c “cōnsul morbō gravī afflīgitur.”

d senātōrēs dīcunt cōnsulem morbō gravī afflīgī.

e audiō filiōs Clēmentis ā Quīntiliānō cotidīē docērī.

f amīcus meus affirmat tē numquam ab Imperatōre laudārī, saepe culpārī.

4 The forms of the present passive infinitives are set out on [page 275](#).

amor et mātrīmōnium

I. dē amīcō mūtābili

difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus es īdem:
nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē.

Martial

How does Martial emphasize the contradictions in his friend's character and the effect they have on himself?

II. dē Chlōē, quae septem marūtīs nūpsit

īnscripsit tumulīs septem scelerāta virōrum
“sē fēcisse” Chlōē. quid pote simplicius?

Martial

What does Chloe mean by **sē fēcisse**? What meaning does Martial suggest?

The following lines are taken from a longer poem, possibly written by Petronius, Nero's **arbiter elegantiae** (adviser on good taste).

III. dē Cupīdīne, deō potentī

ecce tacent vōcēs hominum strepitusque viārum
et volucrum cantūs turbaque fida canum:
sōlus ego ex cūncētīs paveō somnumque torumque
et sequor imperium, magne Cupīdo, tuum.

What contrasts do you find between the first two and the last two lines? What impression are you given of the god Cupid?



The Romans often decorated their walls, floors, and (as here) their crockery with pictures of lovers.

mūtābili: mūtābilis
changeable, contradictory
facilis here = easy-going
iūcundus pleasant
acerbus harsh, disagreeable
īdem here = you, the same person

tumulīs: tumulus tomb
scelerāta: scelerātus wicked
virōrum: vir here = husband
quid pote? what could be?
simplicius: simplex simple

volucrum: volucris bird
cantūs: cantus song
fida: fidus faithful
cūncētīs: cūncetus all
paveō: pavēre dread, fear
somnum: somnus sleep
-que ... -que both ... and
torum: torus bed
imperium here = command

Word patterns: Compounds of *facere*

1 Study the following verb forms:

facere	to make	perficere	to complete (to do thoroughly)
afficere	to affect (to do to)	reficere	to repair (to make again)
efficere	to accomplish (to carry out)		

What happens to the form of **facere** following the prefix in each of the other verbs?
What other verbal compounds of **facere** have we met?

2 Other compounds of *facere* follow different patterns. Explain the meaning for each of the following:

aedificium, beneficium, carnifex, grātificārī, patefacere, pontifex, praefectus, sacrificium

Practicing the language

1 Complete each sentence with the correct word. Then translate the sentence.

- a cognōscere volō ubi filius vester (habitet, habitent)
- b tot gemmās ēmisī ut nūllam pecūniām iam (habeās, habeātis)
- c strēnuē labōrāmus ut opus ante lūcem (perficiāmus, perficiāmus)
- d tam fessus est amīcus meus ut longius prōgređī nōn (possit, possint)
- e māter nescit quārē puellae in viā (clāmēs, clāmet, clāment)
- f iterum vōs rogō num hunc virum (agnōscam, agnōscās, agnōscātis)

2 Translate the first sentence. Then change it from a direct statement to an indirect statement by completing the second sentence. Finally, translate the second sentence.

For example:

puer labōrat. dominus putat puerum labōr.... .

Translated and completed, this becomes:

puer labōrat. dominus putat puerum labōrāre.
The boy is working. The master thinks that the boy is working.

- a multae vīllae ardent!
senex dicit multās vīllās ard.... .
- b centuriō appropinquat.
mīlitēs putant centuriōnem appropinqu.... .
- c medicus tēcum cōnsentit.
crēdō medicum tēcum consent.... .

In sentences **d-f**, nouns as well as verbs have to be completed. Refer if necessary to the table of nouns on [pages 258–259](#).

- d rēx in illā aulā habitat.
scio rēg.... in illā aulā habit.... .
- e servī iam dormiunt.
für crēdit serv.... iam dorm.... .
- f puella dentēs nigrōs habet.
Mātrīalis dīcit puell.... dentēs nigrōs hab.... .

Marriage

A Roman girl was normally married by the age of twenty, with the daughters of elite families often married as young as twelve; men probably married aged twenty-five to thirty. If the husband had been married previously, like Sparsus in the story on [page 48](#), there might be a wide difference in age between the man and his wife.

The husband was normally chosen for the girl by her father or guardian. According to the law, the consent of both the bride and the groom had to be given. However, it is unlikely that a daughter would have found it easy to defy the wishes of her **paterfamilias**. If all the requirements of age and consent were met, then the girl's father would negotiate with the family of her future husband about the **dōs** (dowry); this was a payment (in money or property or both) made by the bride's family to the husband.

At the ceremony of betrothal or engagement (**spōnsalia**), the father of the bride made a promise of marriage, on his daughter's behalf, to the father of the groom, or, if the husband-to-be were independent, to the man himself. Gifts were exchanged, and a ring was placed on the third finger of the girl's left hand. The Roman belief that a nerve ran directly from this finger to the heart initiated this custom, which is still practiced in many countries. Family and friends were present as witnesses, and the ceremony was followed by a party.

Under Roman law, there were two different sorts of marriage. In the first, which was known as marriage **cum manū**, the bride ceased to be a member of her father's family and passed completely into the



Above: Gold betrothal ring.

Below: Traditionally, girls were supposed to be unwilling to leave the safety of their parents' home for marriage. This painting shows a veiled bride, seated on the marriage bed, being coaxed by the goddess Persuasion, while another goddess and human wedding attendants make preparations.



manus (control) of her husband; any property she possessed became her husband's, and although he could divorce her, she could not divorce him. A couple could enter into marriage **cum manu** in various ways; one was by an ancient ceremony known as **cōnfarreātiō**, in which the bride and bridegroom together ate a sacred cake made of **far** (grain). This ceremony was used only by a few aristocratic families and had almost died out by the end of the first century AD. However, on [page 54](#), Polla is married by confarreatio because she is related to the Emperor Domitian.

By the first century, marriage **cum manu** had become far less common than the other type of marriage, which was known as marriage **sine manū**. In this type of marriage, the bride did not pass into the manus of her husband; legally, she was still regarded as a member of her father's family (even though she was now no longer living with them); she could possess property of her own and she could divorce her husband. It was very easy for a couple to enter into marriage **sine manu**; all they needed to do was to live together after declaring their intention of being man and wife.

On the evening before her wedding day, the bride took off her **lūnula**, a moon-shaped locket or amulet worn on a chain around the neck. She had worn this since shortly after birth as a protection against evil but now she removed it, perhaps as a sign that she was leaving her childhood behind. The groom would already have dedicated his **bulla** to his family's lares when he became a citizen at about the age of seventeen.

Whether a couple became married **cum manu** or **sine manu**, they usually celebrated their wedding with some of the many customs and ceremonies that were traditional among the Romans. Some of these are mentioned in the story of Polla's wedding to Sparsus on [pages 54–57](#): the flame-colored bridal veil (**flammeum**); the sacrifice and the taking of the omens by a haruspex; the signing of the marriage contract, witnessed by the wedding guests; the symbolic joining of hands (**iunctiō dextrārum**); the wedding feast (**cēna nūptialis**) at the bride's house; the ancient custom of pretending to pull the bride away from her mother by force; the torch-lit procession to the bridegroom's house; the wedding song; the calling out of noisy greetings and coarse jokes to the bridegroom; the traditional words of the bride to her husband, **ubi tū Gāius, ego Gāia** (*Where you are Gaius, I am Gaia*); the anointing of the doorposts with oil; and the custom of carrying the bride across the threshold of her new home. Other traditions and ceremonies included the careful arrangement of the bride's hair, parted with the point of a spear and then divided into six plaits; the presentation of fire and water by the bridegroom to the bride; and the undressing of the bride by **mātrōnae univirae** (women who had had only one husband).

The chief purpose of Roman marriage, as stated in marriage contracts and in various laws, was the obvious one of producing



Pictures of weddings very often show the joining of hands (**iunctiō dextrārum**).



A woman suckling her baby while her husband looks on.

and bringing up children. The Roman government often made efforts to encourage marriage and large families; in particular, the Emperor Augustus introduced a law which imposed penalties on those who remained unmarried (for example, by forbidding them to receive legacies) and offered special privileges to married couples who produced three or more children. Nevertheless, the birthrate in Rome dropped steadily from the second century BC onwards, especially among the senatorial class.

A Roman wife had fewer legal rights than her husband. In the eyes of the law, unless she had three children (four if she was a freedwoman), she was under the authority of either her husband or her father (or guardian), depending on whether she had been married cum manu or sine manu. She could not vote in elections, take an active part in public or political life, sit on a jury, or plead in court. But in some ways a first-century Roman wife had more freedom than women in other countries, and enjoyed a higher status than they did. She was not restricted to the home but could visit friends, go to the theater and the baths, and accompany her husband to dinner parties (unlike the women of classical Athens, for example). Her traditional day-to-day task, the running of the household, was regarded by most Romans as important and valuable, and a woman could gain great prestige and respect for the way in which this task was carried out; in many aristocratic and wealthy families, running the house was a highly complicated and demanding job, involving the management and supervision of a large number of domestic slaves.

Our knowledge of Roman married life is very incomplete. We know far less about the poor than about the wealthy upper classes,



A wife could go to a party with her husband (painting in Pompeii).

and have hardly any information on married life from the wife's point of view, because most of what is written in Latin was written by men. Nevertheless, the writings of Roman authors include many references to married life. The following letter, for example, was written by Pliny to his wife Calpurnia:

The strength of my longing for you is hard to believe. Love is the reason above all others. Another reason is that we are not used to being separated. I spend most of the night awake, picturing you. During the day, at the times when I usually come to see you, my feet guide me to your room; then I turn sadly back, sick at heart.

Calpurnia was Pliny's third wife. At the time of their marriage, she was about fifteen and he was in his early forties. In another letter, he writes about Calpurnia:

From sheer affection for me, she keeps copies of my speeches, reads them over and over again and even learns them by heart. She is tortured with worry when I appear in court, and is overcome with relief when the case is over. Whenever I give a recitatio, she listens from behind a curtain waiting eagerly for comments of approval. As for my poems, she sets them to music and sings them, taught not by some musician but by love, the best of teachers.

A letter by Cicero describes an incident from the stormy relationship between his brother Quintus and Quintus' wife Pomponia:

We lunched at Arcanum. When we got there, Quintus said, perfectly politely, "Pomponia, you invite the women, and I'll get the slave-boys together." There was nothing to be cross about, as far as I could see, in either what he said or the way he said it. But, within everyone's hearing, Pomponia replied, "What, me? I'm only a stranger here!" – just because Quintus had made arrangements for the lunch without telling her, I suppose. "There you are," said Quintus. "That's what I have to put up with every day." I hid my feelings. We sat down to eat; she refused to join us. Quintus sent her some food from the table; she sent it back. The following day, Quintus told me that she had refused to sleep with him and had continued to behave as she had done at lunchtime.

Roman married life is also referred to in numerous epitaphs, written in memory of husbands and wives. There are extracts from three of them below.

HERE LIES
AMYMONE,
WIFE OF MARCUS,
MOST GOOD AND
MOST BEAUTIFUL,
WOOL-SPINNER,
DUTIFUL, MODEST,
CAREFUL, CHASTE,
HOME-LOVING.

I HAVE
WRITTEN THESE
WORDS SO THAT
THOSE WHO READ
THEM MAY REALISE
HOW MUCH WE
LOVED EACH
OTHER.

TO MY DEAREST WIFE
WITH WHOM I LIVED
TWO YEARS, SIX
MONTHS, THREE DAYS,
TEN HOURS.

Vocabulary checklist 38

certus, certa, certum	<i>certain, infallible</i>
prō certō habēre	<i>know for certain</i>
clam	<i>secretly, in private</i>
cōpiae, cōpiārum, f. pl.	<i>forces</i>
dextra, dextrae, f.	<i>right hand</i>
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripūī, ēreptus	<i>rescue, snatch away</i>
familia, familiae, f.	<i>household</i>
grātus, grāta, grātum	<i>acceptable, pleasing</i>
ignōrō, ignōrāre, ignōrāvī	<i>not know about</i>
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus	<i>join</i>
lēx, lēgis, f.	<i>law</i>
līmen, līminis, n.	<i>threshold, doorway</i>
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi (+ DAT)	<i>marry</i>
orior, orīrī, ortus sum	<i>rise, arise</i>
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum	<i>promise</i>
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus	<i>prevent</i>
queror, querī, questus sum	<i>lament, complain about</i>
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus	<i>rule</i>
vereor, verērī, veritus sum	<i>be afraid, fear</i>
vērō	<i>indeed</i>
virgō, virginis, f.	<i>virgin</i>



A beautiful marble container provided by one of the emperor's freedmen for the ashes of his wife, Vernasia Cyclas.



STUDIA

Stage 39

hērēdēs pīncipis

I

in aulā Imperatōris, duo puerī in studiīs litterārum sunt occupātī. alter puer, Titus nōmine, fābulam nārrāre cōnātur; alter, nōmine Pūblius, intentē audit. adest quoque puerōrum rhētor, M. Fabius Quīntiliānus. Titus Pūbliusque, filiū Clēmentis ac frātrēs Pōllae, nūper hērēdēs Imperatōris facti sunt.

Titus: (fābulam nārrāns) deinde Iuppiter, rēx deōrum, sceleribus hominum valde offēnsus, genus mortale magnō dīlūviō dēlere cōnstituit. pīmō eī placuit dē caelō fulmina spargere, quae tōtam terram cremārent. timēbat tamen nē dē ipsī, sī flammae ad caelum ā terrā ascendissent, eōdem ignī cremārentur. dīversam ergō poenam impōnere māluit.

Titō nārrante, iānuā subīto aperītū. ingreditur Epaphrodītus. puerī anxiū inter sē aspiciunt; Quīntiliānus, cui Epaphrodītus odiō est, nihilominus eum cōmīter salūtat.

Quīntiliānus: libenter tē vidēmus, Epaphro-
Epaphrodītus: (interpellāns) salvēte, puerī. salvē tū, M. Fabī. hūc missus sum ut mandāta pīncipis nūntiem. pīnceps vōbīs imperat ut ad sē quam celerrīmē contendātis.

Quīntiliānus: verba tua, mī Epaphrodītē, nōn intellegō. cūr nōs ad Imperatōrem arcessimur?

Epaphrodītus, nūllō respōnsō datō, puerōs Quīntiliānumque per aulam ad Imperatōris tablīnum dūcit. puerī, timōre commōtī, extrā tablīnum haesitant.



studiīs: studium study
litterārum: litterae literature

5

genus mortāle
the human race
dīlūviō: dīlūvium flood
fulmina: fulmen thunderbolt
cremārent: cremāre
burn, destroy by fire
dīversam: dīversus different

15

20

25

Quīntiliānus: (timōrem suum dissimulāns) cūr perturbāminī, puerī?

Pūblius: bonā causā perturbāmur. Imperatōr enim nōs sine dubiō castīgābit vel pūniēt.

Quīntiliānus: nimis timidus es, Pūblī. sī prūdenter vōs gesseritis, neque castīgābimī neque pūniēmī.

II

Quīntiliānus et puerī, tablīnum ingressī, Domitiānum ad mēnsam sedentem muscāsque stilō trānsfigentem inveniunt. Domitiānus neque respicit neque quicquam dīcit. puerī pallēscunt.

Domitiānus: (tandem respiciēns) nōlīte timēre, puerī. vōs nōn pūniētūs sum – nisi mihi displiceritis. (muscam aliam trānsfigit; dēnique, stilō dēpositō, puerōs subitō interrogat;) quam diū discipulī M. Fabī iam estis? (haesitāns) dūdos mēnsēs, domine.

Titus: Domitiānus: nōbīs ergō tempus est cognōscere quid didicerītis. (ad Pūblium repente conversus) Pūblī, quid heri docēbāmī?

Pūblius: versūs quōsdam legēbāmus, domine, quōs Ovidius poēta dē illō dīlūviō fābulōsō composuit.

Domitiānus: itaque, versibus Ovidiānīs heri lēctīs, quid hodiē facītis?

Pūblius: hodiē cōnāmur eandem fābulam verbīs nostrīs nārrāre.

Quīntiliānus: ubi tū nōs arcessīvīstī, domine, Titus dē īrā Iovis nārrātūr erat.

Domitiānus: fābula scīlicet aptissima! eam audīre velim. Tite, nārrātiōnem tuam renovā!

(fābulam timidē renovāns) Iu-Iuppiter nimbōs ingēntēs dē ca-caelō dēmittēre cōnstituit. statim Aquilōnēm in-ca-cavernīs Aeoliī inclūsit, et Notūm liberāvit. quī madidīs alīs ēvolāvit; ba-barba nimbīs gravābātur, undae dē capillīs fluēbānt. simulatque Notus ēvolāvit, nimbī dēnsī ex aethere cum ingēntī fragōre effūsī sunt. sed tanta erat Iovis īrā ut imbrībus caelī contentus nōn esset; auxiliū ergō ā frātre Neptūnō petīvit. quī cum terrā tridente percussīset, illa valde tremuit viāmque patefēcīt ubi undae fluerent. statim flūmina ingēntia per campōs apertōs ruēbānt. satis nārrāvīstī, Tite. nunc tū, Pūblī, nārrātiōnem excipe.

30 castīgābit: castīgāre
scold, reprimand
vōs gesseritis: sē gerere
behave, conduct oneself

muscās: musca fly
respicit: respicere look up

5 displiceritis: displicerē
displease

didicerītis: discere learn

10 fābulōsō: fābulōsus
legendary, famous
Ovidiānīs: Ovidiānus of Ovid

15 nārrātiōnem: nārrātiō
narration
nimbōs: nimbus rain cloud
cavernīs: caverna cave, cavern

Aeoliīs: Aeolius Aeolian
inclūsit: inclūdere shut up
Notūm: Notus South wind
alīs: alā wing
gravābātur: gravāre
load, weigh down

imbrībus: imber rain
Neptūnō: Neptūnus Neptune
(Roman god of the sea)
tridente: tridēns trident
campōs: campus plain
excipe: excipere take over

Pūblius:

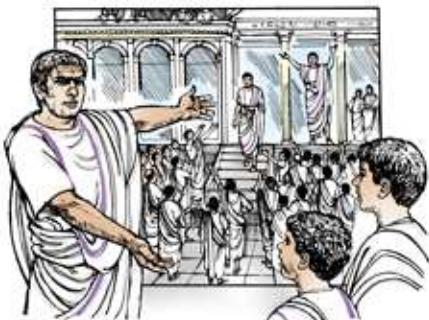
iamque inter mare et tellūrem nūllum discrīmen erat; mare ubīque erat, neque ullā litora habēbat. hominēs exitium effugere cōnābantur. alī montēs ascendērunt; alī, in nāvibus sedentēs, per agrōs illōs rēmigāvērunt quōs nūper arābant; hic suprā segetēs aut tēcta villārum mersārum nāvigāvit; ille in summīs arboribus piscēs invēnit. lupī inter ovēs natābant; leōnēs fulvī undīs vehēbantur. avēs, postquam terram diū quaerēbant ubi cōnsistere possent, tandem in mare fessīs ālīs dēcidērunt. capellae gracilēs –

Pūblīo hoc nārrantī Domitiānus manū significat ut dēsistat. diū tacet, puerīs anxiis expectantibus. Quīntiliānus verētur nē puerī Imperātōrī nōn placuerint. tandem ille loquitur.

Domitiānus: fortūnātī estis, Pūblī ac Tite; nam, ut decōrūm est prīncipis hērēdibus, ab optimō rhētore docēmīnī, quī optima exempla vōbīs prōpositū. sī vōs, puerī, causās vestrās tam fācundē dīxeritis quam Ovidius versūs compositū, saepe victōrēs ē basilicā discēdētis; ab omnibus laudābimīnī.

(timōre iam dēpositō) nōnne ūna rēs tē fallit, domine? nōs sumus hērēdēs tuī; nōnne igitur nōs, cum causās nostrās dīxerimus, nōn saepe sed semper victōrēs discēdēmus et ab omnibus laudābimur?

Quīntiliānus ērubēscit. Domitiānus, audāciā Titī obstupēfactus, nihil dicit. tandem, rīdēns vel rīsum simulāns, puerōs rhētoremque dīmittit; deinde, stīlō resūmptō, muscās iterum trānsfigere incipit.



ab omnibus laudābimīnī.

tellūrem: tellūs *land, earth*
discrīmen *boundary, dividing line*

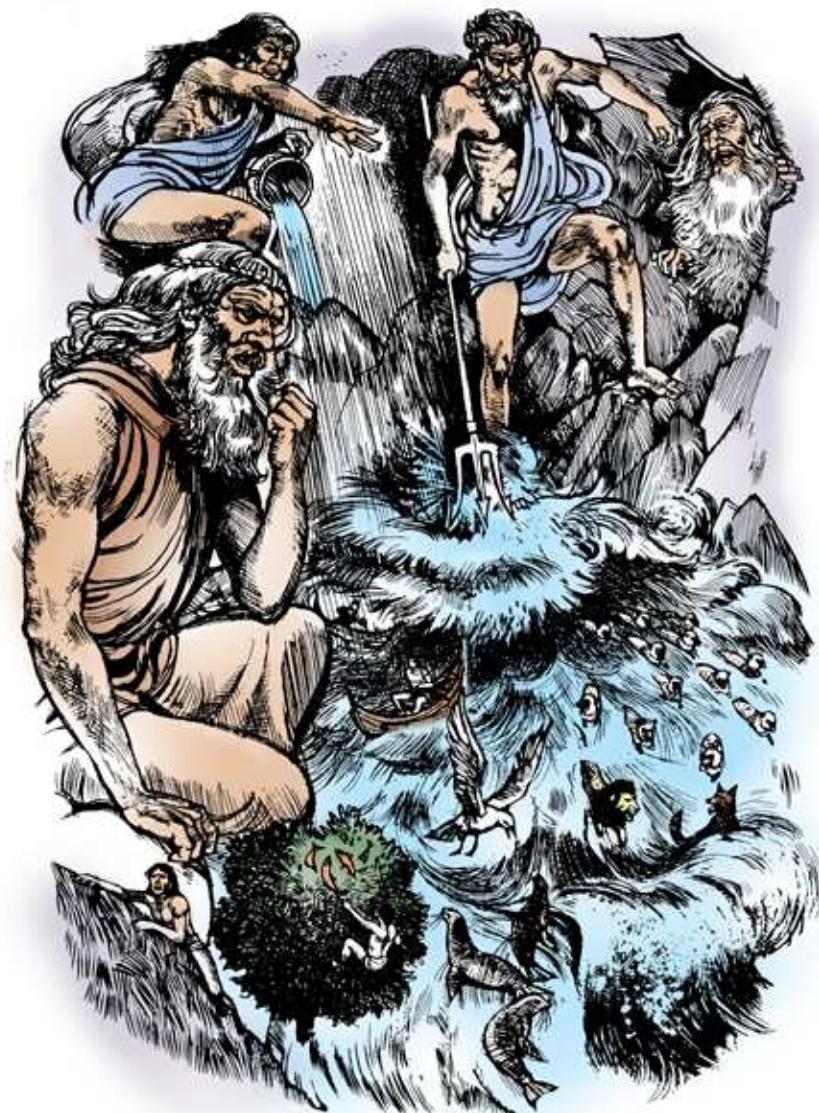
40 rēmigāvērunt: rēmigāre *row*
arābant: arāre *plow*
hic ... ille *this man ... that man, one man ... another man*

45 suprā *over, on top of*
aut *or*
mersārum: mergere *submerge*
piscēs: piscis *fish*
ovēs: ovis *sheep*

50 fulvī: fulvus *tawny*
capellae: capella *she-goat*
gracilēs: gracilis *graceful*
causās ... dīxeritis: causam dicere *plead a case*
fācundē *fluently, eloquently*

55 fallit: fallere *escape notice of, slip by*

60 simulāns: simulāre *pretend*
resūmptō: resūmere *pick up again*



About the language 1: fearing clauses

1 Study the following examples:

timeō **nē inquiēta sit Britannia**, dum Hibernia īnsula in libertāte manet.

I am afraid that (lest, in case) Britain may be unsettled, as long as the island of Ireland remains free.

timēbat Iuppiter **nē deī ipsī eōdem ignī cremārentur**.

Jupiter feared that the gods themselves might be consumed by the same fire.

Quīntiliānus verētur **nē puerī Domitiānō nōn placuerint**.

Quintilian is afraid that the boys have not pleased Domitian.

Glabriō timēbat **nē Imperatōrem graviorē offendisset**.

Glabrio was afraid that he had seriously offended the emperor.

The groups of words in **boldface** are known as **fearing clauses**. The verb in a fearing clause in Latin is always subjunctive. Because a fear can be for the past, the present, or the future, you must pay particular attention to the tense of the subjunctive verb.

2 In fearing clauses, the conjunction **nē** means *that (lest/in case)* and the negative is **nē ... nōn**. Occasionally the negative can be **ut**, e.g.

Quīntiliānus verētur **ut puerī Domitiānō placuerint**.

Quintilian is afraid that the boys have not pleased Domitian.

3 Further examples:

a timeō **nē genus mortāle deōs fallere cōnātum sit**.

b Domitia, fragōre audītō, verita est **nē Paris dē arbore cecidisset**.

c timēbāmus **nē diūtius dubitāvissēmus**.

d anxiane erās **ut tē hīs malīs ēriperem?**



This coin shows the infant son of Domitian among the stars with the description **divus Caesar**, divine Caesar. This suggests that the coin was issued after the child's death as emperors and members of their families were often posthumously proclaimed as gods. Domitian and Domitia only had one son and therefore Domitian later took on Titus and Publius as his heirs.



sed tanta erat Iovis ira ut imbribus caeli contentus nōn esset; auxilium ergō à frātre Neptūnō petivit.

This Greek bronze sculpture from the fifth century BC stands over 6.5 feet (2 meters) tall and was found in a shipwreck. It is disputed whether it portrays the Jupiter or Neptune. The figure would have hurled a thunderbolt or trident from his right hand.

versūs Ovidiānī

The story of the flood, told by Publius and Titus on [pages 66–68](#), is based on the following lines written by the poet Ovid. When you have read them, answer the questions on the next page. At the start of the extract, the god Jupiter is about to punish the human race for its wickedness by submerging the earth in a great flood.

prōtinus **Aeoliā** Aquilōnem claudit in **antrīs**.^{*}
ēmittitque Notum; **madidis** Notus ēvolat **ālis**;
barba gravis nimbīs, **cānīs** fluit unda **capillīs**.
fit fragor; hinc **dēnsī** funduntur ab aethere **nimbī**.

nec **caelō** contenta **suō** est Iovis īra, sed illum
caeruleus frāter iuvat auxiliāribus undīs.
ipse tridente suō terram percussit, at illa
intremuit mōtūque viās patefecit aquārum.
exspatiāta ruunt per apertos **flūmina** campōs.

iamque mare et tellūs nūllum discrēmū habēbant:
omnia pontus erant, dēerant quoque litora pontō.
occupat hic collēm, **cumbā** sedet alter **aduncā**
et dūcit rēmōs illīc, ubi nūper arābat;
ille suprā segetēs aut **mersae** culmina **villae**
nāvīgat, hic **summā** pīscēm dēprendit in **ulmō**.
nat lupus inter ovēs, **fulvōs** veht unda **leōnēs**,
quæsītīsque diū terrīs, ubi sistere possit,
in mare **lassātīs** volucris vaga dēcidit **ālis**.
et, modo quā **gracilēs** grāmen carpsēre **capellae**,
nunc ibi **dēfōrmēs** pōnunt sua corpora **phōcae**.

antrīs: antrum cave

cānīs: cānus white
fit: fierī be made, occur

5 **hinc** then, next
caeruleus from the deep blue sea
iuvat: iuvāre help, assist
auxiliāribus: auxiliāris additional
intremuit: intremere shake
exspatiāta: exspatiāri extend, spread out

pontus sea
dēerant: dēesse be lacking, be missing
collēm: collis hill
15 **cumbā:** cumba boat
aduncā: aduncē curved
illīc there, in that place
culmina: culmen roof
ulmō: ulmus elm tree
nat: näre swim

lassātīs: lassāre tire, weary
vaga: vagus wandering
quā where
grāmen grass
carpsēre = carpsērunt: carpere
chew, nibble, crop
20 **dēfōrmēs:** dēfōrmis ugly, inelegant
phōcae: phōca seal

Questions

- 1 **prōtinus ... Notum** (lines 1–2). What two things did Jupiter do?
- 2 **madidis ... capillīs** (lines 2–3). In this description of the South wind, how does Ovid emphasize that he brings rain? Make three points.
- 3 **fit ... nimbī** (line 4). What happened when the South wind appeared?
- 4 Who came to Jupiter's assistance (lines 5–6)? What was his name?
- 5 What did he do?
- 6 What results did this have (lines 7–9)?
- 7 How does Ovid emphasize the vastness of the flood (line 11)?
- 8 **dūcit rēmōs** (line 13). Where is this man rowing?
- 9 **ille ... nāvīgat** (lines 14–15). Where is this one sailing?
- 10 **hic ... pisces dēprendit** (line 15). What is remarkable about this?
- 11 **nat lupus inter ovēs** (line 16). What is strange about the relationship of these animals?
- 12 **quæsītīs ... ālis** (lines 17–18). What happened to the birds? Why?
- 13 What is the connection between the goats and seals (lines 19–20)?
- 14 Which Latin word in line 20 is used to contrast with **gracilēs** in line 19?
- 15 How does Ovid vary his subject-matter? Give three examples taken from the text.

Questions for discussion

- 1 Which detail or incident in this passage can you picture most vividly?
- 2 Which seems to you to be the better description of Ovid's account: "serious" or "light-hearted"?

* Some noun-and-adjective phrases, in which an adjective is separated by one word or more from the noun which it describes, are shown in **boldface**.

About the language 2: word order (continued)

1 In Stage 36, you met verse sentences like this:

exigis ut **nostrōs** dōnem tibi, Tucca, **libellōs**.

You demand that I should give you my books, Tucca.

The adjective **nostrōs** is separated from the noun which it describes (**libellōs**).

2 In Stage 39, you have met sentences in which one noun-and-adjective phrase is followed by another:

caeruleus frāter iuvat auxiliāribus undīs.

His brother from the deep blue sea helps him with additional waves.

Further examples:

a **arbore** sub **magnā parva** latēbat **avis**.

b **vertice dē summō liquidōs** mōns ēvomit **ignēs**.

liquidōs: liquidus *liquid*

ēvomit: ēvomere *spit out, spew out*

Study the pattern formed by the pairs of noun-and-adjective phrases in each of the above sentences. Similar patterns are often formed in English verse by rhymes at the end of lines. For example:

A man he was to all the country **dear**,
And passing rich with forty pounds a **year**,
Remote from towns he ran his godly **race**,
Nor e'er had changed, nor wished to change his **place**.

3 You have also met sentences in which one noun-and-adjective phrase is placed inside another one:

nunc ibi **dēfōrmēs** pōnunt **sua corpora phōcae**.

Now the ugly seals rest their bodies there.

Further examples:

a **in mediōs** vēnit **iuvenis fortissimus hostēs**.

b cōnstituit ante **oculōs pulchra puella meōs**.

Suggest how the order of the words helps to convey the images described by the words.

Compare the arrangement of the noun-and-adjective phrases in the previous sentences with the arrangement of the rhyming lines in such verse as the following:

Ring out, wild bells, to the wild **sky**,

The flying cloud, the frosty **light**,

The year is dying in the **night**:

Ring out, wild bells, and let him **die**.

4 In each of the following examples, pick out the Latin adjectives and say which nouns they are describing:

a **aure meā ventī murmurā rauca sonant**.

The hoarse murmurs of the wind sound in my ear.

b **iam nova prōgeniēs caelō dēmittitur altō**. (Virgil)

Now a new generation is being sent down from high heaven.

c **nōn fuit ingenio Fāma maligna meō**. (Ovid)

Fame has not been unkind to my talent.

d **agna lupōs audit circum stabula alta frementēs**. (Ovid)

The lamb hears the wolves howling around the tall sheepfolds.

e **atque opere in mediō laetus cantābat arātor**.

And the happy plowman was singing in the middle of his work.

f **vincuntur molli pectora dūra prece**. (Tibullus)

Hard hearts are won over by soft prayer.

5 Translate the following examples:

a *A cry for help*
at puer īnfēlīx mediīs clāmābat in undīs.

b *An echo*
reddēbant nōmen concava saxa meum.

c *Travel plans*
nunc mare per longum mea cōgitat īre puella. (Propertius)

d *Evening*
maiōrēsque cadunt altīs dē montibus umbrae. (Virgil)

concava: concavus hollow

Pick out the adjectives in each example and say which nouns they are describing.

Word patterns: verbs and nouns

1 Study the form and meaning of each of the following verbs and nouns:

nōmināre	<i>nominate, name</i>	nōmen	<i>name</i>
volvere	<i>turn, roll</i>	vōlūmen	<i>roll of papyrus, scroll</i>
unguere	<i>anoint, smear</i>	unguentum	<i>ointment</i>

2 Following the example of paragraph 1, complete the following table:

certāre	<i>compete</i>	certāmen
cōmīnāre	<i>accuse</i>	cōmīnē
arguere	argūmentum	<i>proof, argument</i>
impedīre	impedīmentum	<i>hindrance, nuisance</i>
vestīre	<i>clothe, dress</i>	vestīmenta
ōrnāre	ōrnāmentum
torquēre	tormentum

Practicing the language

1 In each sentence, replace the noun in **boldface** with the correct form of the noun in parentheses. Then translate the sentence.

Use the table of nouns on [pages 258–259](#) to help you, if necessary; you may also need to consult the Vocabulary to find out the genitive singular of 3rd declension nouns, as a guide to forming the other cases.

- a subitō Pōlla Flāviam vīdit. (māter)
- b nūntius uxōri epistulam trādīdit. (fēmina)
- c senātōrēs ad aulam Domitiānī contendēbant. (Imperātor)
- d iuvenis Agricolae tōtam rem nārrāvit. (dux)
- e ingēns multitūdō Rōmānōrum in amphitheātrō conveniēbat. (cīvis)
- f poēta audītōribus paucōs versūs recitāvit. (amicus)

2 Complete each sentence with the correct verb. Then translate the sentence.

- a fessus sum! cotidī ā centuriōne labōrāre (iubeor, teneor)
- b tū semper bene recitās; semper ā rhētore (parāris, laudāris)
- c nōlī dēspērāre, mī amīce! mox (spectāberis, līberāberis)
- d maximē gaudēō; crās enim ab Imperātōre (honōrābor, vituperābor)
- e cum in urbe habitārem, strepitū continuō (audiēbar, mittēbar, vexābar)
- f medicus tē sānāvit, ubi morbō gravī (afficiēbāris, dēcipiēbāris, dūcēbāris).

3 Translate the first sentence. Then change it from a direct statement to an indirect statement by completing the second sentence. Finally, translate the second sentence.

For example: hostēs advēnērunt.
nūntius dīcit hostēs advēn̄

Translated and completed, this becomes:
hostēs advēnērunt.
The enemy have arrived.
nūntius dīcit hostēs advēnisse.
The messenger says that the enemy have arrived.

In sentences **a–c**, a perfect *active* infinitive is required. For examples of the way in which this infinitive is formed, see [page 34](#), paragraph 3.

- a Imperātor sententiam mūtāvit.
cīvēs crēdunt Imperātōrem sententiam mūtāv
- b nautae nāvēm ingēntem comparāvērunt.
mercātōr dīcit nautās nāvēm ingēntem comparāv
- c fabrī mūrūm optimē refēcērunt.
putō fabr mūrūm optimē refēc

In sentences **d–f**, a perfect *passive* infinitive is required. For examples of the way in which it is formed, see [page 37](#), paragraph 3. Note that the first part of this infinitive (e.g. **parātus** in **parātus esse**) changes its ending to agree with the noun it describes.

For example: epistulae missae sunt.
crēdō epistulās miss

Translated and completed, this becomes:
epistulae missae sunt.
The letters have been sent.
crēdō epistulās missās esse.
I believe that the letters have been sent

- d victimā ā pontifice ēlēcta est.
spectātōrēs putant victimām ā pontifice ēlēct
- e multī amīci ad cēnam vocāti sunt.
scio multōs amīcōs ad cēnam vocāt
- f captīvus occīsus est.
mīlitēs dīcunt captīv occīs

Authors, readers, and listeners

After a Roman writer had recited his work to his patron or friends, or to a wider audience at a *recitatio*, as described in Stage 36, he had to decide whether or not to make it available to the general public. If he decided to go ahead, his next step was to have several copies made. If he or his patron owned some sufficiently educated slaves, they might be asked to make copies for the author to distribute among his friends. Cicero sent volumes of his work to his banker friend, Atticus, who had many such **librarii**. Alternatively, the author might offer his work to the **bibliopole**, the booksellers, whose slaves would make a number of copies for sale to the public.

Most Roman booksellers had their shops in the Argiletum, a street which ran between the Forum Romanum and the Subura. Books were fairly inexpensive. A small book of poems might cost 5 sesterces if it were an ordinary copy, 20 sesterces if it were a deluxe edition made of high-quality materials. Martial tells us that his first book of epigrams, about 700 lines, sold for 20 sesterces. After the work had been copied, all money from sales of the book belonged to the booksellers, not to the author. We do not know if the booksellers ever paid anything to an author for letting them copy his work.

One result of these arrangements for copying and selling books was that there was no such thing in Rome as a professional writer; no author could hope to make a living from his work. Some of the people who wrote books were wealthy amateurs like Pliny, who made most of his money as a landowner and wrote as a hobby; others, like Martial, depended on patrons for support. Writers fit into the general client–patron system we learned about in Unit 3. An author, unlike ordinary **clientēs**, however, could offer his **patrōnus** a wider reputation, a chance for perpetual **dignitās**.

Sometimes the emperor became an author's patron. For example, the poets Virgil and Horace were helped and encouraged first by the Emperor Augustus' friend, Maecenas, and then by Augustus himself. Other authors, however, got into trouble with the emperor. Ovid, for instance, was sent into exile by Augustus because he had been involved in a mysterious scandal in the emperor's own family and because he had written a poem entitled *Ars Amatoria* (*The Art of Love*), a witty and light-hearted guide for young men on the conduct of love affairs. The *Ars Amatoria* greatly displeased Augustus, who had introduced a number of laws for the encouragement of respectable marriage, and Ovid was exiled to a distant part of the empire for the rest of his life. Under later emperors, such as Domitian, it was safest for an author to publish nothing at all, or else to make flattering remarks about the emperor in his work, as Martial did in his poem on [page 18](#) (lines 6–9).

Some works of Latin literature reached a wide public. For example, thousands of people saw the comic plays of Plautus when



The Argiletum, where the book shops were, is the long street emerging from the Forum at top left, passing through the narrow Forum Transitorium which Domitian began, and running down to the bottom right in the crowded Subura district.



Choosing a book.



they were performed in the theater. But most Roman authors wrote for a small, highly educated group of readers who were familiar not only with Latin literature, but also with the literature of the Greeks.

Schoolboys, like Publius and Titus in the story on [pages 66–68](#), and perhaps a few girls as well, were introduced by their teachers to the study of both Greek and Roman authors. The famous educator and orator, Quintilian (c. AD 35 – c. 100), was the first teacher to obtain a salary from the state when he was appointed instructor of rhetoric by Vespasian. Besides Domitian's adopted sons, Quintilian taught Pliny the Younger. The most influential of Quintilian's books, *The Education of an Orator*, covered education from infancy to the level of the experienced speaker. The book also included a long list of recommended Greek and Latin authors, with comments on each one. For example, he wrote: "Ovid is light-hearted even on serious subjects and too fond of his own cleverness, but parts of his work are excellent."

Latin literature played an important part in Roman education. Roman education, in turn, played an important part in the writing of Latin literature. Most Roman authors had received a thorough training from a **rhetor**, who taught them how to express themselves persuasively and artistically, how to choose words and rhetorical devices that would have maximum effect on an audience, and how to organize a speech. This training had a great influence on the way Latin literature was written.



Above: The poet Horace was given this farm in the Sabine Hills by his patron, Maecenas.

Below: A boy practicing public speaking. Round his neck he wears a bulla, a child's locket containing an amulet.

An important difference between Latin and modern literature is that most modern literature is written for silent reading, whereas Latin literature was often written to be read aloud. The three reasons for this have already been mentioned: first, the easiest way for an author to tell the public about his work was to read it aloud to them; second, most authors had received extensive training in public speaking and this affected the way they wrote; third, many Romans when reading a book, would read it aloud or have it read to them.

The fact that Latin literature was written for speaking aloud, and not for silent reading, made a great difference to the way Roman authors wrote. They expressed themselves in ways that would sound effective when heard, not just look effective when read. For example, suppose a Roman author wished to say, in the course of a story:

The unfortunate boy did not see the danger.

He might express this quite straightforwardly:

puer infelix periculum non vidit.

But he might, especially in poetry, choose a more artistic word order. For instance, he might place the emotional word **infelix** in the prominent first position in the line, juxtapose the alliterative **periculum** and **puer**, and separate the adjective from its noun.

infelix periculum puer non vidit.

Again, the author might prefer a more dramatic way of expressing himself. He might address the character in the story as if he were physically present, and put a question to him:

heu, puer infelix! nonne periculum vides?

Alas, unfortunate boy! Do you not see the danger?

On the printed page, especially in English translation, such artistic variations as these may sometimes appear rather strange to a modern reader. When they are read aloud in Latin, however, the effect can be very different. To read Latin literature silently is like looking at a page of written music; it needs to be performed aloud for full effect.

Domitian's palace

The Emperor Domitian was a great builder. He finished Vespasian's Colosseum and gave Rome a stadium and a new forum (the Forum Transitorium) as well as many smaller buildings. He restored much of Rome after a serious fire. But his greatest building was his own palace, on the Palatine hill.



Fragment of a floor made by cutting white and colored marbles and red and green porphyry to an elaborate pattern.



The side of the palace overlooking the Circus Maximus.



The palace reconstructed.



The Hippodrome: a garden in the shape of a stadium.



A wall belonging to the state rooms shown on page 36, showing the holes for the builders' scaffolding. The builders constructed two brick walls and filled the gap between with mortar and rubble, i.e. concrete. The scaffolding holes would have been hidden by marble facing or stucco rendering.

Vocabulary checklist 39

arbor, arboris, f.	<i>tree</i>
aut	<i>or</i>
cadō, cadere, cecidī	<i>fall</i>
campus, campī, m.	<i>plain</i>
capillī, capillōrum, m. pl.	<i>hair</i>
discrimen, discriminis, n.	<i>dividing line; crisis</i>
ergō	<i>therefore</i>
fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsus	<i>deceive, escape notice of, slip by</i>
fragor, fragōris, m.	<i>crash</i>
genus, generis, n.	<i>race</i>
hinc	<i>from here; then, next</i>
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtus	<i>help, assist</i>
littera, litterae, f.	<i>letter (of the alphabet)</i>
litterae, litterārum, f. pl.	<i>letter, letters (correspondence), literatu</i>
mēnsis, mēnsis, m.	<i>month</i>
simulō, simulāre, simulāvī, simulātus	<i>pretend</i>
spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus	<i>scatter</i>
stilus, stilī, m.	<i>pen (pointed stick for writing on wax tablet)</i>
studium, studī, n.	<i>enthusiasm; study</i>
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum	<i>any</i>



Domitian's palace: connecting rooms leading to the Hippodrome.



IUDICIUM

Stage 40

ingēns senātōrum multitudō in cūriā convēnerat, ubi Gāius
Salvius Līberālis accūsābatur.



- 1 “multa scelera ā Salviō in Britanniā commissa sunt.”
prīmus accūsātor affirmāvit multa scelera ā Salviō in Britanniā commissa esse.



- 2 “Salvius testāmentum rēgis finxit.”
secundus accūsātor dīxit Salvium testāmentum rēgis finxisse.



- 3 “innocēns sum.”
Salvius respondit sē innocentem esse.

accūsātiō



I

septimō anno Domitiānī prīcipātūs, C. Salvius Līberālis, qui priōre annō fuerat cōnsul, ab Aciliō Glabriōne falsī accūsātūs est. quā rē imprōvisā perturbātus, amīcōs statim cōnsuluit utrum accūsātiōnēm sperneret an dēfēnsiōnēm susciperet.

Salviō rogantī quid esset agendum, aliī alia suādēbant. aliī affirmāvērunt nullūm periculum īstāre quod Salvius vir magnae auctōritatis esset. aliī exīstīmabant Domitiānī īram magis timendam esse quam minās accūsāntium; Salvium hortābantur ut ad Imperātōrem fret veniamque peteret. amīcīs diversa monētibus, Salvius exspectāre cōstituit, dum cognōseret quid Domitiānus sentīret.

interēa Glabriō et aliī accūsātōrēs causam parābant. eīs magnō auxiliō erat L. Mārcius Memor, haruspex et Salvii cliēns, qui, socius quondam scelerum Salvii, nunc ad eum prōdendum adductus est, spē praemī vel metū poenārum. quō testimoniō ūsī, accūsātōrēs rem ad Imperātōrem rettulērunt.

Domitiānus, ubi verba accūsātōrum audīvit, cautē sē gessit; bene enim sciēbat sē ipsum sceleribus Salvii implicārī. interēa, ut speciem amīcīiae præbēret, Salvium dōnīs honōrāvit, ad cēnam invītāvit, cōmīter excēpit.

accūsātiō accusation

prīcipātūs: prīcipātūs
principate, reign

falsi: falsum forgery

imprōvisā: imprōvisus
unexpected, unforeseen

sperneret: spernere ignore

5 dēfēnsiōnēm: dēfēnsiō defense
aliī alia ... some ... one thing,
some ... another

īstāre be pressing, threaten

minās: mināe threats

10 dīversa: dīversus different
accūsātōrēs: accūsātor

accuser; prosecutor
socius companion, partner
ad eum prōdendum to betray

15 him
testimoniō: testimoniō
evidence

implicārī: implicāre implicate,
involve

20 speciem: speciēs appearance

II

Domitia autem, iam ab exilio revocata atque in favorem Domitiānū restituta, intentē ultiōnem aduersus Salvium meditabatur, patefecerat enim Myropnous pūmiliō Salvium auctōrem fuisse exiliī Domitiae, Paridis mortis; Salvium domum Haterii falsis litteris Domitiam Paridemque invītāvisse; Salviō auctōre, Domitiam in īsulam duōs annōs relēgātam esse, Paridem occīsum esse.

accūsātōrēs igitur, ā Domitiā incitātū, cognitiōnem senātūs poposcērunt et impetrāvērunt. invidia Salvīi aucta est suspicīōne Cogidubnum venēnō necātūm esse. praetereā nōnnūllī dixērunt reliquias corporum in thermīs Aquārum Sūlis inventās esse, dēfīxiōnēs quoque nōmine Cogidubnū īscrīptās. quibus audītīs, multī crēdēbant Salvium dīs īferīs inimīcōs cōsacrāvisse.

tum dēmū Salvius intellēxit quantō in perīculō esset. veste ergō mūtātā, domōs circumiit amīcōrum, quī sibi auxiliō essent. omnibus autem recūsantibus, domum rediit, spē omnī dēiectus.



cognitiō

diē dictā, magna senātōrum multitudō ad causam audiendam in cūriā convēnit. Salvius, iam metū cōfēctus, ad cūriam lectīcā vectus est; fīliō comitate, manib⁹ extēntīs, Domitiānō lentē ac suppliciter appropinquāvit. quī Salvium vultū compositō excēpit; crīminibus recitātis, pauca dē Salvīo ipsō addidit: eum Vespasiānū patris amīcum fuisse, adiūtōremque Agricolae ā sē missum esse ad Britanniam administrādam. dēnique L. Ursūm Serviānum, senātōrem clārissimum, élēgit quī cognitiōnī praeasset.

restitūta: restituere restore
aduersus against
domum Haterii to Haterius' house

cognitiōnem senātūs: cognitiō
senātūs trial by the senate
10 impetrāvērunt: impetrāre obtain
invidia unpopularity
reliquias: reliquiae remains
dēfīxiōnēs: dēfīxiō curse
dīs īferīs: dī īferī gods of the underworld
cōsacrāisse: cōsacrāre consecrate
veste ... mūtātā: vestem
mūtāre change clothing, i.e.
put on mourning clothes
circumiit: circumīre go around

dictā: dictus appointed
ad causam audiendam
to hear the case, for the purpose of the case being heard
5 cōfēctus exhausted
suppliciter like a suppliant, humbly
crīminibus: crīmen charge
adiūtōrem: adiūtor assistant

prīmō diē cognitiōnis Glabriō crīmina levia et inānia exposuit. dīxit Salvium domī statuam suam in locō altiōre quam statuam prīcipis posuisse; imāginem dīvī Vespasiānī quae aulam rēgis Cogidubnū īrnāvisset ā Salvīo vīlī pretiō vēnditam esse; et multa similia, quibus audītīs, Salvius spērāre coepit sē ē manibus accūsātōrum ēlāpsūrum esse.

postrīdiē tamen appāruit accūsātōr novus, Quīntus Caecilius Iūcundus. vōce ferōcī, vultū minantī, oculis ardēntibus, verbīs īfestissimis Salvium vehementer oppugnāvit. affirmāvit Salvium superbā ac crūdēliter sē in Britanniā gessisse; cōnātūm esse venēnō necāre Ti. Claudium Cogidubnum, rēgem populō Rōmānō fidēliissimum et amīcissimum; rēge mortuō, Salvium testāmentum finxisse; poenās maximās meruisse.

Quīntō haec crīmina expōnenīt acriter respondit Salvius: "id quod dīcis absurdum est. quō modō venēnūm Cogidubnū darī potuit, tot spectātōribus adstantib⁹? quis tam stultus est ut crēdat mē mortem rēgis octōgintā annōrum efficere voluisse? etiam rēgēs mortālēs sunt." dē testāmentō nihil explicāvit.

subītō extrā cūriam īfestae vōcēs sunt audītāe clāmantium sē ipsōs Salvium interfēctūrōs esse sī poenam scelerum effūgisset. alī effigiem Salvīi dēreptam multīs contumēliis in Tiberim iēcērunt; alī domum eius circumventam securib⁹ saxīsque pulsāre coopērunt. tantus erat strepitus ut ēmitteret prīnceps per urbē mīlitēs prætōriānōs quī tumultūm sēdārent.

intereā Salvius, lectīcā vectus, ā tribūnō domum dēductus est; utrum tribūnū custōs esset an carnifex, nēmō sciēbat.



10 levia: levis trivial
exposuit: expōnere set out, explain
imāginem: imāgō image, bust

15

crūdēliter cruelly
20 amīcissimum: amīcus friendly
finxisse: fingere forge
meruisse: merēre deserve
acrīter keenly, fiercely

25

30 dēreptam: dēripere tear down

sēdārent: sēdāre quell, calm down

35

About the language 1: indirect statement (concluded)

1 From Stage 35 on, you have met sentences in which indirect statements are introduced by a verb in the present tense, such as **dicit**, **spērānt**, **audiō**, etc.:

direct statements

“custōs revenit.”
“The guard is returning.”

“puella recitābit.”
“The girl will recite.”

“vīllae dēlētāe sunt.”
“The villas have been destroyed.”

indirect statements

puer dīcit custōdem revenīre.
The boy says that the guard is returning.

spērānt puellam recitātūram esse.
They hope that the girl will recite.

audiō vīllās dēlētās esse.
I hear that the villas have been destroyed.

2 In Stage 40, you have met sentences in which indirect statements are introduced by a verb in the perfect or imperfect tense, such as **dīxit**, **spērābant**, **audiūvi**, etc.

direct statements

“custōs revenit.”
“The guard is returning.”

“puella recitābit.”
“The girl will recite.”

“vīllae dēlētāe sunt.”
“The villas have been destroyed.”

indirect statements

puer dīxit custōdem revenīre.
The boy said that the guard was returning.

spērābant puellam recitātūram esse.
They hoped that the girl would recite.

audiūvi vīllās dēlētās esse.
I heard that the villas had been destroyed.

Compare the indirect statements in paragraph 1 with the indirect statements in paragraph 2. How do they differ?

3 Further examples:

- a “Salvius multa scelera commīsīt.”
- b accūsātōrēs affirmāvērunt Salvium multa scelera commīssisse.
- c “mīlitēs urbem facile capient.”
- d centuriō crēdēbat mīlitēs facile urbem captūrōs esse.
- e “Agricola iniūstē revocātus est.”
- f multī senātōrēs putābant Agricolam iniūstē revocātūm esse.
- g “frāter tuus in Britanniā iam habitat.”
- h nūntius dīxit frātrem meum in Britanniā illō tempore habitāre.
- i “Domitiānus timōre coniūrātiōnis saepe perturbātūr.”
- j cīvēs sciēbant Domitiānum timōre coniūrātiōnis saepe perturbārī.

dēspērātiō

dēspērātiō *despair*

I

When you have read this part of the story, answer the questions at the end.

intereā Rūfilla, Salvī uxor, dum spēs eius firma manēbat, pollicēbatur sē sociam cuiuscumque fortūnae futūram esse. cum autem sēcrētis Domitiāe precibus veniam ā pīncipe impetrāvisset, Salvium dēserere cōstituit; dēnique mediā nocte ē marītū cubiculō ēgressa domum patris suī rediit.

tum dēmūnū Salvius dēspērābat. filius Vitelliānus identidem affīrmāvit senātōrēs numquam eum damnātūrōs esse; Salvium hortābatur ut animō firmō dēfēnsiōnēm postrīdiē renovāret. Salvius autem respondit nūllam iam spēm manēre: īfestōs esse senātōrēs, pīncipēm nūllō modō lēnīrī posse.

postulāvit tabulās testāmentī, quās signātās libertō trādidit. tum frēgit ānūlūm suūm, nē posteā ad aliōs accūsāndōs ūsuī eset. postrēmō litterās in hunc modum compositās ad pīncipēm mīsit:

“opprimor, domine, inimīcōrum coniūrātiōne mendācībusque testibus, nec mihi licet innocentiam meam probāre. deōs immortālēs testor mē semper in fidē mānsisse. hoc ūnum ḥrō ut filiō meō innocentī parcās. nec quicquām aliud precor.”

dē Rūfillā nihil scrīpsit.

Questions

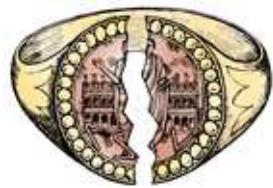
- 1 What did Rufilla at first promise?
- 2 Explain why she broke her promise (lines 2–4). Who was Domitia?
- 3 What suggests that Rufilla did not tell Salvius about her decision (lines 4–5)?
- 4 What effect did Rufilla’s behavior have on Salvius?
- 5 How did his son try to reassure him? What did he encourage him to do (lines 7–8)?
- 6 Salvius ... manēre (line 9). Why did Salvius think this?
- 7 What did Salvius do after sealing and handing over his will? Explain why he did this (lines 11–13).
- 8 In his letter to the emperor, Salvius explains the reasons for his downfall (lines 15–16). What were they?
- 9 What request did Salvius make to the emperor in his letter (lines 17–18)? What did he say about his wife?
- 10 Does this story change your previous opinion of Salvius? Give a reason.

dum *so long as*
firma: *firmus firm*
sociam: *socia companion, partner*
cuiuscumque: *quīcumque*
any, any whatever

5

10 ūsuī eset: *ūsuī esse be of use*

mendācībus: *mendāx lying, deceitful*
mihi licet *I am allowed*
innocentiam: *innocentia innocence*
in fidē mānsisse: *in fidē remain loyal*
manēre *remain loyal*



II

cum advesperāsceret, Salvius aliis servīs pecūniam, aliis libertātem dedit. deinde mortem sibi cōscīscere parāvit. venēnō ūtī nōn potuit; nam corpus iam diū antidoīs mūniēbatur. cōnstituit ergō vēnās pugione incīdere. quō factō, in balneum inlātus mox examinātus est.

at prīnceps, simulac mortem ā Salviō cōgitārī per ministrōs cognōvit, tribūnum mīlitēsque domum eius ēmīsit. mandāvit eīs ut Salviī mortem prohibērent; ipse enim crūdēlis vidērī nōlēbat. mīlitēs igitur, ā tribūnō iussī, Salvium ē balneō extrāxerunt, dēligāvērunt bracchia vulnerāta, sanguinem suppressērunt.

damnātiō

postridiē Ursus Serviānus, quī cognitiōnī praefuerat, sententiam prōnūtiāvit: nōmen Salviī Fāstī ērādendum esse; bonōrum eius partem pūblicandam, partem filiō trādendam; Salvium ipsum quīnque annōs relēgandum.

ille igitur, vulneribus sānātīs, Rōmā discessit. eōdem diē mīrum fideī exemplum oculīs populi Rōmānī obiectum est. Q. Haterius Latrōniānus, quī favōrem Salviī flōrentis semper quaerēbat, eum rēbus adversīs oppressum nōn dēseruit, sed in exilium comitātus est.

paučīs post diēbus Domitiānus accūsātōribus honōrēs ac praemia distribuit. Glabriōnī sacerdōtium dedit; plūrimī autem exīstimābant Glabriōnēm rē vērā Domitiānum hāc accūsātiōne graviter offendisse. Quīntō Caeciliō prīnceps favōrem suum ad honōrēs petendōs pollicitus est; simul autem eum monuit nē nimis ēlātus vel superbus fieret. pūmiliōnī Myropnoō, quī Salviī scelera Domitiiae patefēcerat, libertātem obtulit; quam tamen ille recūsāvit. “quid mihi cum libertāte?” rogāvit; “satis est mihi amīcum mortuum vindicāvisse.” et tībiīs dēmum resūmptīs, exsultāns cantāre coepit.

- mortem sibi cōscīscere** commit suicide
- 5 antidōtīs: antidōtūm** antidote, remedy
- mūniēbatur: mūnīre** protect, immunize
- vēnās: vēna** vein
- incīdere** cut open
- 10 suppressērunt: supprimere** stanch, stop the flow of
- damnātiō** condemnation
- sententiam: sententia** sentence
- prōnūtiāvit: prōnūtiāre** announce
- Fāstī:** Fāstī the list of consuls
- 5 bonōrum: bona** goods, property
- pūblicandam: pūblicāre** confiscate
- flōrentis: flōrēre** flourish

10

15

About the language 2: more about gerundives

1 In Stage 32, you met sentences like these:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| mihi fābula nārranda est. | Haterius laudandus est. |
| <i>I must tell a story.</i> | <i>Haterius should be praised.</i> |

In these examples, the gerundives **nārranda** and **laudandus** are being used with **est** to indicate that something *ought* to be done (“the story *ought* to be told,” “Haterius *ought* to be praised”).

2 In Stage 40, you have met the gerundive used with **ad**, meaning *for the purpose of ...*:

- deinde Quīntus ad Salvium accūsandūm surrēxit.
Then Quintus stood up for the purpose of Salvius being accused.
- Or, in more natural English:
Then Quintus stood up to accuse Salvius.
- mercātōrēs in portū ad nāvēm reficiendām manēbant.
The merchants stayed in port for the purpose of their ship being repaired.
- Or, in more natural English:
The merchants stayed in port to repair their ship.

3 Further examples:

- a Calēdonī nūntiōs ad pācem petendām mīsērunt.
- b sculptor ingēnētē marmōris massām ad statūā faciēndās comparāvit.
- c poēta ad versūs recitāndōs scaenā ascēdit.
- d Memor ad scelerā Salvī patefacienda adductus est.
- e servōs in agrōs ad frūmentū colligēndū ēmīsī.



dē tribus capellīs

The following poem by Martial is about a court case over the theft of three she-goats. However, the lawyer for the prosecution, Postumus, treats it as though it were a very important case requiring all his powers of oratory.

nōn dē vī neque caede nec venēnō,
sed līs est mihi dē tribus capellīs.
vīcīnī queror hās abesse fūrtō.
hoc iūdex sibi postulat probārī;
tū Cannās Mithridāticūmque bellū
et periūria Pūnicī furōris
et Sullās Mariōsque Mūciōsque
magnā vōce sonās manūque tōtā.
iam dīc, Postume, dē tribus capellīs.

Questions for discussion

- How does Martial emphasize that the court case is about a trivial theft?
- What kind of speech does the lawyer make (lines 5–8)? Why?
- Why do you think Martial repeats the phrase **dē tribus capellīs** at the end of the poem?

Word patterns: inceptives

1 Study the following forms:

calēre	<i>to be warm</i>	calēscere	<i>to grow warm</i>
concupere	<i>to long for</i>	concupīscere	<i>to develop a longing for</i>
senex	<i>old man</i>	senēscere	<i>to grow old</i>
īrātus	<i>angry</i>	īrāscī	<i>to become angry</i>

The verbs in the second column are called **inceptives** or **inchoatives** (from **incipere** and **inchoare**, both meaning *to begin*) because they indicate an action which is beginning or developing.

2 Give a meaning for each of the following verbs:

advesperāscere, ascīscere, cognōscere, convalēscere, ērubēscere, ēvānēscere, ignōscere, ingravēscere, nāscī, oblīvīscī, pallēscere, ulcīscī.



A goat balanced improbably on a branch – a wall decoration from a villa near Pompeii.

Practicing the language

- 1 Translate each sentence into Latin by selecting correctly from the list of Latin words.

- a *I was being looked after by a very experienced doctor.*
ā medicō perītiōre cūrābam
prope medicum perītissimō cūrābar
- b *The commander hopes that the messengers will return soon.*
lēgātus spērō nūntiī mox revenīre
lēgātī spērat nūntiōs nūper reventūrōs esse
- c *We hear that a new house is being built.*
audīmus domus nova aedificāre
audīvimus domum novam aedificārī
- d *After the conspiracy had been revealed (two words only), very many senators were condemned.*
coniūrātiōnem patefactā plūrimī senātōrī damnātī sunt
coniūrātiōne patefactam maximī senātōrēs damnātūs est
- e *The soothsayer advises you not to leave the city.*
haruspex tū monet ut urbī discēdās
haruspicem tē monēbat nē ex urbe discessissēs

- 2 With the help of paragraph 1 on [page 267](#), turn each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence by replacing the word in **boldface** with the correct form of the relative pronoun **qui**, **quae**, **quod**. Then move the relative pronoun to the *beginning* of the relative clause. Finally, translate the sentence. You may need to check the gender of the noun in the Vocabulary.

For example: intrāvit medicus. senex **medicūm** arcessīverat.
This becomes: intrāvit medicus, **quem** senex arcessīverat.
In came the doctor, whom the old man had sent for.

- a templūm nōtissimum vīsitāvimus. Domitiānus ipse **templūm** exstrūxerat.
b prō domō cōnsulīs stābat pauper. praeō **pauperī** sportulam trādēbat.
c ille vir est Quīntus. pater **Quīntī** mēcum negōtium agere solēbat.
d servī flammās exstīnxerunt. villa **flammīs** cōnsūmēbātur.
e praēmium illis puellīs dabītur. auxiliō **puellārum** für heri comprehēnsus est.

3 Complete each sentence with the correct verb. Then translate the sentence. Finally write down whether the sentence expresses a purpose, a result, or an indirect command.

- a iuvenis puellae persuādēre nōn poterat ut sēcum (fugeret, sperneret)
- b senātōrēs tacēre cōstituērunt nē Imperātōrem (offenderent, incēderent)
- c tam fortis erās ut vērum dicere nōn (funderēs, timērēs)
- d tālis erat ille homō ut nēmō eī (crēderet, spērāret)
- e uxōrēs ducem ḫrābant nē captivōs (interficeret, dēcideret)
- f tam diū in vīllā rūsticā manēbam ut ad urbē regredī (sentīrem, nōllem)
- g Domitiānus vōbīs imperat ut ad aulam statim (vincātis, conveniātis)
- h vīsne mēcum ad theātrum venīre ut pantomīnum nōtissimum ?
(spectēmus, moveāmus)



Domitian

In this picture, Domitian is shown as a young man at the start of the principate of his father, Vespasian. Domitian is in the center, welcoming Vespasian (right) to Rome.

When Vespasian became emperor he was campaigning overseas, and Domitian looked after affairs in Rome until his father could get back to the capital and take control himself. His critics said this experience gave Domitian a lust for power. When eventually he became emperor himself, he was a tyrant. He ignored the senate much of the time, relying on his inner circle of amici. Conspiracies against him were ruthlessly suppressed. Eventually he was assassinated by plotters including his wife, Domitia.

Roman law courts

At the beginning of the first century AD, there were several different law courts in Rome, for handling different sorts of cases. If a Roman was charged with a criminal offense, he or she might find themselves in one of a group of jury courts known as **quaestiōnēs** (commissions of inquiry), each responsible for judging a particular crime, such as treason, murder, adultery, misconduct by governors of provinces, forgery, and election bribery. If he or she was involved in a civil (that is, non-criminal) case, such as a dispute over a legacy or an attempt to gain compensation from a next-door neighbor for damage to property, he or she would go first of all to a **praetor**. The praetor would inquire into the cause and nature of the dispute, then either appoint an individual judge (**iūdex**) to hear the case or refer it to an appropriate court. Cases involving inheritance or property claims, for example, usually went to the court of the **centumviri**.

By the time of Domitian, some further ways of handling law cases had been added. For example, a senator charged with a crime could be tried in the senate by his fellow-senators, like Salvius in the story on [pages 85–90](#); and the emperor himself took an increasingly large part in administering the law (see [page 43](#)). But the courts described in the previous paragraph continued to operate alongside these new arrangements.

In modern times, someone who has committed an offense is liable to be charged by the police and prosecuted by a lawyer who acts on behalf of the state; the system is supervised by a government department. In Rome, however, there were no charges by the police, no state lawyers, and no government department responsible for prosecutions. If a man committed a crime, he could be prosecuted only by a private individual, not by a public official. A man who held citizenship could bring a prosecution, and if the accused was found guilty, there was sometimes a reward for the prosecutor. A woman who was not under the authority of her father or husband was allowed to bring a criminal charge, but only if she had a personal interest in the case (that is, if an offense had been committed against herself or a close relative). She was also allowed to bring a civil suit on her own behalf but not to represent others in such cases, and it may in fact have been more usual for a woman to be represented in court by a male advocate.

The courts played an important part in the lives of many Romans, especially senators and their sons. Success as a speaker in court was one of the aims of the long training which they had received from the rhetor. In the courts, a Roman could make a name for himself with the general public, play his part as a patron by looking after any clients who had gotten involved with the law, and catch the eye of people (such as the emperor and his advisers) whose support might help him gain promotion in the *cursus honorum*. One such success story concerns



This coin illustrates voting in the senate: in the center, under a canopy, the presiding magistrate's chair; on the right, the tablets used by the jurors (A and C); and on the left the urn into which they were cast.

Cicero, a young, unknown lawyer with no family influence. A case with political ramifications attracted attention to this **novus homō**. In only a few days the extraordinary eloquence of his defense made him a leading figure in the courts and laid the foundation for his future political success.

Fame and prestige usually mattered more than financial reward to the men who conducted cases in the courts. For a long time, they were forbidden to receive payment at all from their clients. Later, they were permitted to accept a fee for their services, but this fee was regarded as an unofficial “present,” or donation, which the client was not obliged to pay and the lawyer was not supposed to ask for.

Roman courts were probably at their liveliest in the first century BC, when rival politicians fought each other fiercely in the courts as part of their struggle for power. By the time of Domitian, some of the glamor had faded; now that Rome was ruled by an emperor, there was less political power to be fought for. Nevertheless, the contests in court still mattered to the speakers and their clients and attracted enthusiastic audiences. When a well-known orator was to speak, the news spread and a large audience gathered, often taking sides vocally. Pliny gives a vivid description of a case that aroused particularly lively interest:

There they were, one hundred and eighty jurors, a great crowd of lawyers for both plaintiff and defendant, dozens of supporters sitting on the benches, and an enormous circle of listeners, several rows deep, standing around the whole courtroom. The platform was packed solid with people, and in the upper galleries of the basilica men and women were leaning over in an effort to hear, which was difficult, and see, which was rather easier.

The writings of Martial, Pliny, and Quintilian are full of casual details which convey the liveliness and excitement of the courts: the gimmicky lawyer who always wears an eye-patch while pleading a case; the claque of spectators who applaud at the right moments in return for payment; the successful speaker who wins a standing ovation from the jury; the careful allocation of time for each side, measured by the water clock; the lawyer with the booming voice, whose speech is greeted by applause not only in his own court but also from the court next door; the windbag who is supposed to be talking about the theft of three she-goats, but goes off into long irrelevant ramblings about Rome’s wars with Carthage three hundred years earlier (see the poem on [page 92](#)); and the anxious wife who sends messengers to court every hour to find out how her husband is doing.

It is difficult to say how fair Roman justice was. Some of the tactics used in Roman law courts had very little to do with the rights and wrongs of the case. An accused man might dress up in mourning or hold up his little children to the jury to arouse their pity. A speaker whose client was in the wrong might ignore the facts altogether, and



Statue of a Roman making a speech.

try to win his case by appealing to the jury’s emotions or prejudices, or by using irrelevant arguments. Sometimes a man might be accused and found guilty for political reasons; there were a number of “treason trials” under Domitian, in which innocent men were condemned. However, the writings of such men as Pliny and Quintilian show that at least some Roman judges made an honest effort to be fair and just.

Fairness in a Roman court was partly the result of the **lēgēs** (the laws) themselves. In the middle of the fifth century BC the Romans had set up a ten-man board (**decemviri lēgibus scribendis**) to write down the important points of law on bronze tablets for all to see and use. These Twelve Tables (**duodecim tabulae**), since they were written and publicly displayed, eliminated arbitrary decisions by magistrates. Over the centuries the laws evolved, accumulating legal interpretations and precedents. At its best Roman law was careful, practical, and immensely detailed; it became the basis of many present-day legal systems in North America and Europe.



Remains of the Basilica Iulia in the Forum, an important law court. The case described by Pliny took place here. This is the building seen in the background on [page 42](#).

Vocabulary checklist 40

affirmō, affirmāre, affirmāvī	declare
amīcitia, amīcitiae, f.	friendship
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus	increase
cōsul, cōnsulis, m.	consul (senior magistrate)
crīmen, crīminis, n.	charge
cūria, cūriae, f.	senate-house
dēmum	at last
tum dēmum	<i>then at last, only then</i>
existimō, existimāre, exīstimāvī, exīstimātus	think, consider
inānis, ināne	empty, meaningless
invidia, invidiae, f.	jealousy, envy, unpopularity
levis, leve	light, slight, trivial
minor, minārī, minātus sum	threaten
mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus	change
obiciō, obicere, obiēcī, obiectus	present, put in the way of, expose to
probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus	prove
prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus	betray
similis, simile	similar
socius, sociī, m.	companion, partner
suādeō, suādere, suāsī	advise, suggest
ūtor, ūfi, ūsus sum	use
videor, vidērī, vīsus sum	seem



One of the boards for various games scratched on the steps of the Basilica Julia.



BITHYNIA
Stage 41

Governing an empire

For about four hundred and fifty years, the Romans controlled an empire that, at its height, stretched from the Atlantic Ocean to the edge of Russia and from Scotland to the Sahara Desert. The empire's provinces were ruled by an enormous and complicated organization of governors and their staffs.

As a rule, we know very little about the day-to-day running of this vast network; but in one case we have an unusually large amount of information because the provincial governor's letters to the emperor have survived, together with the emperor's replies. In about AD 110, Gaius Plinius Caecilius Secundus (Pliny) was appointed by the Emperor Trajan to govern the province of Bithynia et Pontus (roughly equivalent to northern Turkey). It was an abnormal governorship: Pliny had been personally chosen by the emperor himself; he was given special authority and status, and he had a special job to do. Stage 41 contains five of Pliny's official letters to Trajan, together with Trajan's replies.



Pliny's route.

adventus

I

Gaius Plinius Trātānō Imperātōrī

nāvīgātiō mea, domine, usque Ephesum salūberrima erat; inde, postquam vehiculīs iter facere coepī, gravissimīs aestibus atque etiam febriculis afflīgēbar; Pergamī igitur ad convaleſcendum substītī. deinde, cum nāvem iterum cōncendissem, contrārīs ventīs retentus sum; itaque Bīthyniam intrāvī aliquantō tardius quam spērāveram, id est XV Kal. Octōbrēs.

nunc ratiōnēs Prūsēnū excutiō; quod mihi magis ac magis necessāriū vidētur. multae enim pecūniae, variīs ex causīs, ā prīvātīs cīvib⁹ retainentur; praetereā quaedam pecūniae sine iūstā causā impenduntur. dispice, domine, num necessāriū putēs mittere hūc mēnsōrem, ad opera pūblica īspicienda; crēdō enim multās pecūniās posse revocārī ā cūrātōrib⁹ pūblicōrum operum, sī mēnsūrae fidēliter agantur. hanc epistolam tibi, domine, in ipsō adventū meō scrīpsī.

nāvīgātiō voyage
usque Ephesum as far as
Ephesus
salūberrima: salūbris
comfortable

5 vehiculīs: vehiculum carriage
gravissimīs: gravis severe
aestibus: aestus heat
febriculis: febricula slight fever
Pergamī at Pergamum
ad convaleſcendum
for the purpose of getting better, in order to get better
10 substītī: subsistere halt, stop
aliquantō somewhat, rather
XV Kal. Octōbrēs
September 17 (literally fifteen days before October 1)

Prūsēnū: Prūsēns
people of Prusa
excutiō: excutere examine, investigate
necessāriū: necessārius
necessary

pecūniae: pecūnia sum of money
iūstā: iūstus proper, right
impenduntur: impendere spend
dispice: dispicere consider
mēnsōrem: mēnsor surveyor
opera: opus work, building
revocārī: revocāre recover
ā from
cūrātōrib⁹: cūrātor
supervisor, superintendent
mēnsūrae: mēnsūra
measurement
fidēliter faithfully, reliably

Questions

- 1 How did Pliny travel to Ephesus?
- 2 What change in his method of traveling did he make when he got there?
- 3 Why was he forced to stop at Pergamum?
- 4 What method of travel did he use for the final stage of his journey? What delayed him?
- 5 What is Pliny doing at Prusa? From lines 9–11 find two reasons why Prusa is short of public money.
- 6 What kind of assistant does Pliny ask Trajan for?
- 7 What job does Pliny want this assistant to do?
- 8 What impression does Pliny give by the words **nunc** (line 8) and **in ipsō adventū** (lines 14–15)? Can you suggest why Pliny is so anxious to impress Trajan in this way – is it, for example, to make up for any failure on his part?

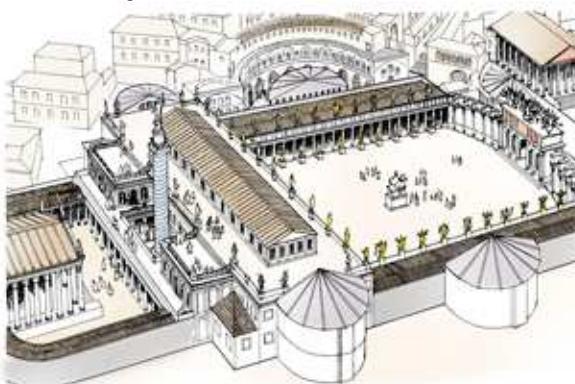
II

Trāiānus Plīniō

cognōvī litterīs tuīs, Secunde cārissime, quō diē in Bīthyniam
pervēnīssēs. brevī tempore, crēdō, Bīthynī intellegent
prōvinciam mihi esse cūrae: nam ego tē elēgī quī ad eōs meī locō
mittāris; tū efficiēs ut benignitās mea sit manifesta illīs.

prīmum autem tibi ratiōnēs pūblicae sunt excutiēdae; nam
satis cōstānt et eās vexātās esse.

mēnsōrēs vix sufficiētēs habeō etiam eīs operibus quae aut
Rōmae aut in proximō flūnt. sed in omnī prōvinciā inveniuntur
mēnsōrēs quibus crēdere possīmus; et ideō nōn vereor nē tibi
dēsint. sī tū diligenter excutiēs, inveniēs.



*mēnsōrēs vix sufficiētēs habeō etiam eīs operibus quae aut Rōmae
aut in proximō flūnt.*

Questions

- 1 What phrase does Trajan use to emphasize that Pliny's job in Bithynia is an important one?
- 2 What impression of himself does Trajan want the Bithynians to have?
- 3 Why is Trajan unable to agree to Pliny's request for a surveyor? What steps does he suggest Pliny should take instead?
- 4 On the evidence of this pair of letters, what special task has Pliny been sent to Bithynia to perform? Can you suggest reasons why Trajan should have chosen Pliny for this task?

carcer

I

Gāius Plīnius Trāiānō Imperātōrī

rogō, domine, ut mē tuō cōnsiliō adiuvēs: incertus enim sum
utrum carcerem custōdīre dēbeam per pūblicōs servōs (quod
usque adhūc factum est) an per mīlitēs. sī enim servīs pūblicīs
ūtar, vereor nē parum fidēlēs sint; sī mīlitibus ūtar, vereor nē hoc
officium magnum numerū mīlitūm distingat. interim pūblicīs
servīs paucōs mīlitēs addidī. videō tamen in hōc cōnsiliō
periculum esse nē utrīque neglegentiōrēs flānt; nam sī quid
adversī acciderit, culpam mīlitēs in servōs, servī in mīlitēs
trānsferre poterunt.

usque adhūc up till now, until now
parum too little, not ... enough
fidēlēs: **fidēlis** reliable, trustworthy
officium task, duty
distingat: distingere distract, divert
utrīque both groups of people
sī quid if anything
adversī: **adversus** unfortunate, undesirable
culpam: **culpa** blame
trānsferre transfer, put

Questions

- 1 What problem is causing Pliny difficulty? What disadvantage does each of his two alternatives have?
- 2 What step has Pliny taken for the moment?
- 3 Is Pliny satisfied with his present solution? If not, why not?
- 4 What reply would you expect from Trajan? Would you expect him to agree with what Pliny has done? or to prefer another solution? or to snap at Pliny for bothering him with trivialities?





Trajan addressing the army.

II

Trāiānus Pl̄niō

nihil opus est, mī Secunde cārissime, mīlītēs ad carcerem custōdiendum convertere. melius est persevērāre in istūs prōvinciae cōnsuētūdine, et pūblicis servīs ad vigilandum in carcere ūt; tū enim, sevēritāte ac diligentiā tuā, potes efficere ut servī fidēliter hoc faciant. nam, sī mīlītēs servīs pūblicis permiscentur, rēctē verēris nē utrīque neglegentiōrēs sint; sed nōs semper oportet hoc meminisse: mīlītēs Rōmānōs in prōvinciis nostrīs positōs esse nōn ad carcerēs custōdiendōs, sed ad pugnandum.

10

Questions

- 1 In Trajan's view, who ought to guard the prisoners?
- 2 Why had Pliny been reluctant to adopt this solution, and how does Trajan answer his objection?
- 3 Which of Pliny's fears does Trajan agree with?
- 4 What aspect of the problem does Trajan seem to feel most strongly about? Is it the unreliability of the public slaves, the disadvantage of sharing the work, or some other aspect?

nihil opus est there is no need
converte divert
persevērāre continue
5 **cōnsuētūdine: cōnsuētūdō** custom
ad vigilandum for keeping watch
sevēritāte: sevēritās strictness,
severity
permiscentur: permiscēre mix with

mix with

About the language 1: gerunds

- 1 In Stage 40, you met the gerundive used with **ad**, meaning "for the purpose of ...":

Quīntus ad Salvium accūsandū surrēxit.

Quintus stood up for the purpose of Salvius being accused.

Or, in more natural English:

Quintus stood up in order to accuse Salvius.

iuvenēs ad pompa spectandā advēnērunt.

The young men arrived for the purpose of the procession being watched.

Or, in more natural English:

The young men arrived to watch the procession.

- 2 In Stage 41, you have met sentences like these:

pontifex ad **sacrificandū** aderat.

The priest was present for the purpose of sacrificing.

Or, in more natural English:

The priest was present in order to sacrifice.

līberī ad **lūdendum** exiērunt.

The children went out for the purpose of playing.

Or, in more natural English:

The children went out to play.

The word in **boldface** is known as a **gerund**.

Further examples:

a puer in fossum ad latendum dēsiluit.

b senex ad cēnandum recumbēbat.

- 3 Further examples of sentences containing gerunds and gerundives:

a mīlītēs ad imperātōrem **salūtandum** īstrūctī erant. (*gerundive*)

b mīlītēs ad **pugnandum** īstrūctī erant. (*gerund*)

c Pl̄niō ad **convalescendum** in oppidō manēbat. (*gerund*)

d haruspicēs ad victimās **inspicēdās** prōcessērunt. (*gerundive*)

e servus ad **labōrandū** ē lectō surrēxit. (*gerund*)

f dominus ad pecūniām **numerandām** in tablinō sedēbat. (*gerundive*)

g clientēs ad patrōnōs **vīsitandōs** per viās contendēbant.

h amīcus meus ad **dormiendum** abiit.

i multī āthlētae ad **certandū** aderant.

j cīvēs aquam ad incendium **extinguendum** quaerēbant.

In sentences g–j, which of the words in **boldface** are gerundives, and which are gerunds?

aquaeductus

I

Gāius Plinius Trāiānō Imperātōrī

in aquaeductum, domine, Nīcomēdēnsēs impendērunt sestertium
 |XXX| CCCXVIII, quī, imperfectus adhūc, nōn modo omissus
 sed etiam dēstrūctus est; deinde in alium aquaeductum impēnsa
 sunt CC. hōc quoque relictō, novō impendiō opus est, ut aquam
 habeant, postquam tantam pecūniā perdidērunt. ipse pervēnī ad
 fontem pūrissimum, ex quō vidētur aqua dēbēre perducī (sicut
 initiō temptātum erat), arcuātō opere, nē tantum ad humiliēs
 regiōnēs oppidī perveniat. manent adhūc paucissimī arcūs;
 possunt etiam exstrū arcūs complūrē lapide quadrātō quī ex
 priōre opere dētractus est; aliqua pars, ut mihi vidētur, testācēō
 opere agenda erit (id enim et facilius et vīlius est). sed in prīmīs
 necessāriū est mittī ā tē vel aquilegem vel architectūm, nē id
 quod prius accidit rūrsus ēveniat. ego quidem cōfidō et
 ūtilitatē operis et pulchritūdinēm prīcipiatū tuō esse
 dignissimam.

Questions

- What happened to the Nicomedians' first aqueduct?
- What has happened to their second attempt?
- Why does the aqueduct have to be carried on arches?
- manent ... agenda erit** (lines 9–12). What three suggestions does Pliny make for the providing of arches?
- What request does he make of Trajan?
- How does Pliny attempt to make his idea more persuasive to Trajan?

aquaeductus aqueduct

Nīcomēdēnsēs people of Nicomedia

|XXX| CCCXVIII 3,318,000:
 | = multiply by 1,000;
 | = multiply by 100,000

adhūc still

omissus = omissus est: omittere

abandon

dēstrūctus est: dēstruere

pull down, demolish

CC 200,000

impendiō: impendium

expense, expenditure

opus est there is need of (literally
 there is work (to be done)
 with)

perdidērunt: perdere waste, lose
 perducī: perducere bring, carry
 arcuātō: arcuātus arched
 humiliēs: humiliis low-lying
 quadrātō: quadrātus squared, in blocks

testācēō opere: testāceum

opus brickwork

in prīmīs in the first place

vel ... vel either ... or

aquilegem: aquilex water engineer;
 hydraulic engineer

ēveniat: ēvenīre occur

ūtilitatēm: ūtilitās usefulness

pulchritūdinēm: pulchritūdō

beauty

II

Trāiānus Plīniō

cūrandum est, ut aqua in oppidum Nīcomēdiām perducātur.
 cōfidō tē summā dīligențiā hoc opus effectūrum esse. sed
 mediūs fidius! necesse est tibi eādem dīligențiā ūtī ad
 cognōscendum quōrum vitiō tantam pecūniām Nīcomēdēnsēs
 perdidērunt; suspicor eōs ideō tot aquaeductūs incohāvisse et
 relīquisse, ut inter sē grātificentur. quicquid cognōveris, perfer in
 nōtitiam meam.

5

cūrandum est steps must be taken

mediūs fidius! for goodness sake!

vitiō: vitium fault, failure

incohāvisse: incohāre begin grātificentur: grātificārī do favors

perfer: perferre bring

nōtitiam: nōtitia notice

Questions

- Does Trajan give permission for the new aqueduct?
- What is Trajan especially concerned about? What does he suspect?
- What does Trajan do about Pliny's request for a water engineer?



lapis quadrātus.



testāceum opus.

supplicium

I

Gāius Plinius Trāiānō Imperātōrī

Semprōnius Caeliānus, ēgregius iuvenis, duōs servōs inter tīrōnēs repertōs mīsit ad mē; quōrum ego supplicium distulī, ut tē cōnsulerem dē modō poenae. ipse enim ideō maximē dubitō, quod hī servī, quamquam iam sacrāmentum dīxērunt, nōndum in numerōs distribūtī sunt. rogō igitur, domine, ut scrībās quid facere dēbeam, praeſertim cum pertineat ad exemplum.



Legionaries on the march.

Questions

- 1 What has Sempronius Caelianus discovered? What action has he taken?
- 2 What does Pliny want Trajan to decide?
- 3 Why is Pliny particularly hesitant?
- 4 Why does he think the case is important?

II

Trāiānus Plīniō

rēctē mīsit Semprōnius Caeliānus ad tē eōs servōs, quī inter tīrōnēs repertī sunt. nunc tē oportet cognōscere num supplicium ultimum meruisse videantur. rēfert autem utrum voluntāriī vēnerint an lēctī sint vel etiam vicāriī ab aliīs datī. sī lēctī sunt, illī peccāvērunt quī ad mīlitandum eōs ēlēgērunt; sī vicāriī datī sunt, culpa est penes eōs quī dedērunt; sī ipsī, cum habērent condicōnis suae cōscientiam, nihilōminus vēnērunt, sevērē pūniendī erunt. neque multum rēfert, quod nōndum in numerōs distribūtī sunt. illō enim dī, quō prīmū probātī sunt, vēritās condicōnis eōrum patefacienda erat.



Marble bust of Trajan.

Questions

- 1 What punishment are the slaves liable to suffer if they are found guilty?
- 2 Trajan refers to three possible explanations for the situation. What are they? What action does he think should be taken in each case?
- 3 When should the status of the recruits to have been discovered?
- 4 Who seems to have a better grasp of the problem, Pliny or Trajan?

About the language 2: present subjunctive passive

1 Study the following examples:

tam stultus est ille puer ut ā cēterīs discipulīs semper dērīdeātur.

That boy is so stupid that he is always laughed at by the other pupils.

medicus ignōrat quārē hōc morbō affligāris, mī amīce.

The doctor does not know why you are stricken with this illness, my friend.

The form of the verb in **boldface** is the **present subjunctive passive**.

Further examples:

a scīre velim quot captīvī in illō carcere retineantur.

b tot clientēs habēmus ut in viās semper salūtēmur.

c arma semper gerō nē ā latrōnibus interficiar.

2 Compare the active and passive forms of the present subjunctive of **portō**:

present subjunctive active	present subjunctive passive
portem	porter
portēs	portēris
portet	portētur
portēmus	portēmur
portētis	portēminī
portent	portentur

The present subjunctive passive of all four conjugations is set out in full on [page 273](#) of the Language information section.

3 Study the following examples:

nescio quid iuvenis efficere cōnētur.

I do not know what the young man is trying to achieve.

crās equōs cōnsēndēmus ut proficiscāmur.

Tomorrow we will mount our horses in order to set out.

The verbs in **boldface** are present subjunctive forms of deponent verbs.

Further examples:

a tam timidi sunt servī mēi ut etiam umbrās vereantur.

b dīcite mihi quārē illōs senēs sequāminī.

The present subjunctive of deponent verbs is set out in full on [page 278](#).

incendium

I

Gāius Plīnius Trāiānō Imperātōrī

cum dīversam partem prōvinciae circumfīrem, vāstissimum incendium Nīcomēdīa coortum est. nōn modo multās cīvium prīvātōrum domōs dēlēvit, sed etiam duo pūblica opera, Gerūsiān et templum Īsīdis. flammae autem lātius sparsae sunt, prīmum violentiā ventī, deinde inertiā hominum, quī ōtiōsī et immōtī adstābant, neque quicquam ad adiuvandum fēcērunt. praetereā, nūllus est usquam pūblicus sīpō, nūlla hama, nūllum omnīnō īnstrūmentum ad incendia exstingēnda. et haec quidem īnstrūmenta, ut iam praecepī, parābuntur; tū, domine, dispice num putēs collēgium fabrōrum esse īnstītūendum, dumtaxat hominum CL. ego efficiam nē quis nisi faber in hoc collēgium admittātur, nēve fabrī hōc iūre in aliud ūtantur; nec erit difficile custōdīre tam paucōs.

vāstissimum: vāstus great, large

Nīcomēdīa at Nicomedia

coortum est: coorīrī break out

5 Gerūsiān Greek accusative of

Gerūsiā the Gerūsiā (club
for wealthy elderly men)

lātius: lātē widely

sparsae sunt: spargere spread

10 violentiā: violentiā violence

inertiā: inertia laziness, idleness

sīpō fire pump

hama fire bucket

īnstrūmentum equipment
instruct,

praecepī: praecipere order

collēgium brigade

fabrōrum: faber fireman

īnstītūendum: īstituere set up

dumtaxat not exceeding

nē quis that nobody

nēve and that ... not

iūre: iūs right, privilege

in aliud for any other purpose

Questions

- A 1 What has happened in Nicomedia?
2 Where was Pliny at the time?
3 How extensive was the damage?
4 What was the attitude of the bystanders?
5 In what way was the city ill-prepared for such a disaster?
6 What preventive measure is Pliny taking?
7 What further suggestion does he make to the emperor?
- H 1 Why does Pliny mention his whereabouts at the time of the disaster?
2 Do the words **ōtiōsī et immōtī adstābant** (lines 6–7) merely describe the scene, or do they also convey Pliny's attitude toward the bystanders? If so, what is his attitude?
3 Does Pliny's suggestion to the emperor seem to you reasonable? What reply would you expect to this letter?
4 Do lines 11–14 (from **dumtaxat hominum** to the end) indicate Pliny's confidence that the emperor will agree to his suggestion, or does he think the emperor may disapprove?



II

Trāiānus Plīniō

tibi in mentem vēnit collēgium fabrōrum apud Nīcomēdēnsēs īnstituere, sicut in aliis prōvinciis factum est. sed nōs oportet meminisse prōvinciam istam et praecipuē urbēs factiōnibus eius modi saepe vexātās esse. quodcumque nōmen dederimus eīs quī in idem contractū erunt, hetaeriae brevī tempore fient. melius igitur est comparāre ea quae ad incendia extinguenda auxiliō esse possint; admonendī quoque sunt dominī prædiōrum ut ipsī flammās extinguere cōnentur; dēnique, sī opus est, auxilium ā spectantibus est petendum.

Questions

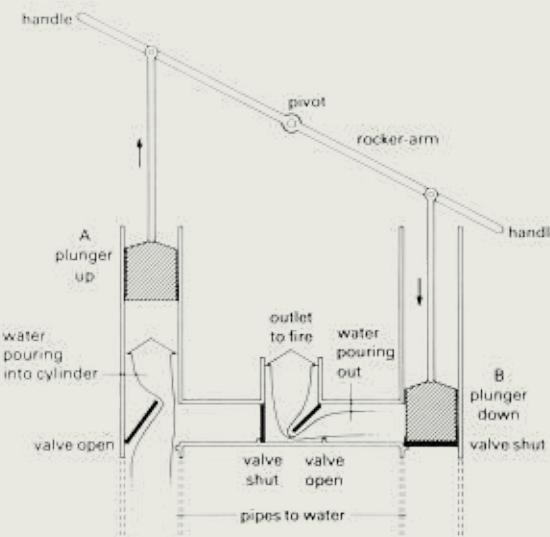
- 1 What decision does Trajan give?
- 2 How has the previous history of Bithynia affected Trajan's decision?
- 3 What three suggestions does Trajan make?
- 4 To what extent do you agree with the following opinion?
"Trajan seems more concerned with politics than with the safety of his subjects; his advice to Pliny is vague and unhelpful. He appears not to realize the seriousness of fires in large towns."

*admonendī quoque sunt
dominī prædiōrum ut
ipsī flammās extinguere
cōnentur.*

in mentem vēnit: in mentem
venīre occur, come to mind
praecipuē especially
factiōnibus: factiō organized group
quodcumque whatever
in idem for a common purpose, for the same purpose
10 contractī erunt: contrahere bring together, assemble
hetaeriae: hetaeria political club
domini: dominus owner
prædiōrum: præmium property



Bronze water pump.



How the pump worked.

About the language 3: more about *cum* clauses

1 Study the following examples:

cum nāvem iterum cōscendissem, contrārīis ventīs retentus sum.

When I had boarded a ship again, I was held back by headwinds.

rogō quid facere dēbeam, praeſertim cum pertineat ad exemplum.

I ask what I should do, especially since it involves a precedent.

sī ipsī, cum habērent condicōniā suaē cōscientiam, vēnērunt, pūniendī erunt.

If they came themselves, although they were aware of their status, they will have to be punished.

In Unit 3, we met the conjunction **cum** meaning *when* as in the first sentence above. While *when* is also a possible equivalent for **cum** in the second and third sentences, *since* and *although* are more satisfactory meanings. You will need to check all three meanings, to see which makes the best sense in any particular sentence.

2 Further examples:

- a difficile est incendium extinguere, cum nūllum īstrūmentum adsit.
- b nūllōs mēnsōrēs, cum dīligerenter excuterem, invēnī.
- c architectus pecūniām, cum opus nōndum perfēcerit, poscit.
- d iūdex, cum crīmina audīvisset, sententiam prōnūntiāvit.
- e Imperātor Salviō praemium meritum pollicitus est, cum Domitia Parisque pūnītī essent.
- f cum diversam partem prōvinciae circumfrēmus, duo aedificia Nīcomēdīae perdita sunt.

3 **cum fēlēs abest**, mūrēs lūdunt.

When the cat's away, the mice play.

servīs **cum revēnerō**, dīcam.

I shall speak to the slaves when I return.

cum meaning *when* can introduce clauses in which the verb is indicative mood.

cum meaning *since* or *although* cannot.

Practicing the language

1 The following list contains the 3rd person singular present and perfect forms of seven verbs, jumbled together. Sort them into pairs, writing the present form first and then the perfect, and give the meaning of each form.

For example: **portat** *he carries* **portāvit** *he carried*

portat, facit, tulit, est, cōgit, fēcit, fert, ēgit, fuit, vēnit, coēgit, venit, agit, portāvit.

2 Complete each sentence with the correct word and then translate.

- a ego vōs servāvī, ubi ab inimīcīs (accūsābāminī, fingēbāminī)
- b diffīcile erat nobīs prōcēdere, quod ā turbā (dīcēbāmur, impediēbāmur)
- c audīte, mēt amīcī! nōs ad aulam contendere (regimur, iubēmur)
- d rēctē nunc , quod ā proeliō heri fūgīstis. (culpāminī, agnōscimīnī)
- e epistulam ad prīncipem hodiē mittam, mīlitēs, ut facta nostra nūntiem; sine dubiō ab illō (rogābimur, laudābimur)
- f iūdex "facinus dīrum commīsistis" inquit. "crās" (amābimīnī, necābimīnī)

3 Referring to the letters on [pages 106–109](#), complete each of the sentences below with one of the following groups of words. Then translate the sentence. Use each group of words once only.

Plīniū rem dīligerenter effectūrum esse
quamquam multam pecūniām impenderant
quod servī erant
num servī supplicium ultimum meruissent
ut architectū ad Bīthynīam mitteret

- a Nīcomēdēnsēs, , nūllam aquam habēbant.
- b Plīniū Imperātōrī persuādēre cōnābatur
- c Trāiānus cōnfidēbat
- d Semprōniū duōs tīrōnēs ad Plīniū mīsit
- e Plīniū incertus erat



The provinces of the Roman empire during the reign of Trajan.

The government of the Roman provinces

The map on [page 116](#) shows the provinces of the Roman empire at the time of its greatest extent, during the reign of the Emperor Trajan. The Romans obtained these territories gradually during several centuries, starting with the island of Sicily in the third century BC, and ending with Trajan's conquests in Dacia (modern Romania) and the east. Some provinces, such as Britain, became part of the empire as a result of a successful Roman invasion. Others were given to the Romans by their previous rulers; Bithynia, for example, was bequeathed to Rome by its king in his will.

A number of provinces (which were generally the more dangerous frontier provinces and whose names are marked on the map in *italics*) were known as “imperial provinces.” Their governor was chosen by the emperor, he usually ruled for three years, and his official title was **legatus Augusti** (emperor’s deputy). The other provinces (which were generally the more peaceful provinces and whose names are in **boldface** on the map) were known as “senatorial provinces.” Their governor was appointed by the senate, he generally governed for one year, and his official title was **proconsul**. Occasionally the emperor stepped in and picked the governor of a senatorial province himself, as Trajan did when he appointed Pliny as governor of Bithynia, instead of leaving the choice to the senate.

Both the senate and the emperor took trouble to select suitable people for governorships. No senator could become the governor of a province unless he had previously held the praetorship, and some important provinces could be governed only by men who had been consul. The senate and emperor kept a lookout for men who had shown special skill or talent during the earlier part of their career. For example, both Agricola and Pliny were sent to provinces where they could put their particular qualities and experience to good use; Agricola had already served in Britain as a military tribune and as a legionary commander, and Pliny had served in two treasury offices. (See [page 45](#) for the *cursus honorum* of each man.)

A small group of imperial provinces were governed by members of the equestrian class, who were known as **praefecti**. The most important of these provinces was Egypt, whose governorship was one of the highest honors that an **eques** could hope for. No senator was allowed to enter Egypt without the emperor’s permission, for fear that an ambitious senator would cut off the grain supply to Rome. Another province with an equestrian governor was Judea, one of whose **praefecti** was the best known of all Roman governors, Pontius Pilatus (Pilate), who offended the Jews with his harshness and tactlessness and became notorious among Christians for the crucifixion of Jesus.



Peutinger Table showing Bithynia.

A governor's first and most important duty was a military one, to protect his province against attack from outside and rebellion from inside. Under his command were one or more **legionēs** or **auxilia**. He might, like Agricola in Scotland, use these troops to conquer further territory; he could also use them, if necessary, to deal with problems such as bandits or pirates. A small number of soldiers were taken away from their military duties to serve as officials on the governor's staff, but the governor was not supposed to use soldiers for jobs that could be done by civilians. Trajan reminded Pliny firmly about this when Pliny thought of using soldiers as prison guards. (See **carcer**, [pages 103–104](#).) Whoever the governor was, he would not be completely inexperienced in army matters, because normally he would have served as a military tribune in the early part of his career and, in most cases, he would have commanded a legion after his praetorship.

The governor's other main task was to administer the law, by traveling around his province and acting as judge in the towns' law courts. He had supreme power, and his decisions could not be challenged, with one exception: any Roman citizen who was sentenced to death or flogging had the right to appeal to the emperor against the governor's decision. One man who appealed in this way was St Paul, who was arrested in the province of Judea. The Jews wished to try him in their own court. Paul, however, not only insisted

on being tried in a Roman court but also appealed to the emperor. The following extract from the Acts of the Apostles describes the confrontation between Paul and the Roman governor Festus:

But Paul said to Festus, “Against the Jews I have committed no offense, as you very well know. If I am guilty of any capital crime, I do not ask to escape the death penalty; but if there is no truth in the charges which these men bring against me, no one has any right to hand me over to them. I appeal to Caesar!” Then Festus, after consulting his council of advisers, replied, “You have appealed to Caesar; to Caesar you shall go.”

Sometimes, especially in imperial provinces, the governor was too busy with his military tasks to carry out his other duty of administering the law. When this happened, the emperor could send out another official, known as a **iūridicus**, to take charge in the law courts while the governor carried on with the fighting. For example, Salvius acted as a iūridicus in the south of Britain while Agricola was busy campaigning in Scotland.

A governor appointed by the emperor was normally given instructions or **mandāta** about the work he was to do in the province. Pliny, for example, was instructed in his mandata to make a public announcement banning political clubs. It is likely that he was also under Trajan's orders to investigate the financing and construction of public

The Pont du Gard, an aqueduct built by the Romans in Gaul.



buildings in his province. The Bithynians had been spending large sums of money on schemes of this kind, often with disastrous results. Several of Pliny's letters deal with building projects; for example, he writes to Trajan about an aqueduct in Nicomedia, public baths at Prusa, a theater at Nicaea, and a smelly and unhygienic sewer at Amasris.

In the first century BC, Roman governors were often feared and hated for their greed and cruelty. This was, in part, due to the Roman system of taxation in the provinces. Tax collection was contracted out to the highest bidder. The **pūblicānus** (tax collector or publican) was required to make up, himself, any deficit to what his tax contract called for. On the other hand, he was allowed to keep for himself any surplus monies. The very system encouraged abuse: most publicans demanded high taxes from the provincials to ensure a surplus for themselves. No wonder the people of the provinces believed that the Romans were interested in their empire only for what they could get out of it.

A fair analysis of provincial government is difficult, since most of our information comes from the Romans themselves, rather than from the people being governed. By the time of Trajan, however, there seems to have been some improvement. The correspondence of Pliny and Trajan testifies to an interest in the health, safety, and financial accountability of the people of Bithynia. Pliny's letters often express concern for the Bithynians' well-being (e.g. in **incendium**, [pages 111–112](#)). Tacitus, in his account of Agricola's life, claims that a deliberate attempt was made to introduce the Britons to some benefits of the Roman way of life:

Agricola encouraged individuals and gave help to local communities for the building of temples, forums, and houses. He also provided an education for the sons of the chieftains. Those who had recently refused to use the Roman language were now eager to make speeches in it. Roman clothing became a sign of status, and togas were often to be seen.

Roman governors may have behaved in this way partly from kindness, partly from self-interest; if people are comfortable and contented, they are less likely to make trouble for their rulers. Tacitus follows his description of Agricola's policy with a cynical comment:

The Britons were gradually led astray by the temptations of idleness and luxury: colonnades, baths, and elegant dinner parties. In their innocence, the Britons referred to this as "civilization;" in fact it was part of their slavery.

Many people, however, were bitterly hostile to the Romans and their empire. In the following extract, Tacitus imagines the speech

which might have been made by a Scottish chieftain whose homeland was being invaded:

The Romans plunder the whole world; when there is no land left for them to devastate, they search the sea as well. If their enemy is rich, they are greedy for wealth; if he is poor, they are eager for glory. They describe robbery and slaughter with the deceptive name of "empire;" they make a desert and call it "peace."



Coins of Nicomedes III of Bithynia (above) and of Mithridates VI Eupator Dionysus of Pontus (below).



Vocabulary checklist 41

dīversus, dīversa, dīversum	different
factum, factī, n.	deed, achievement
glōria, glōriac, f.	glory
incendium, incendiū, n.	fire
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsus	play
merēō, merēre, meruī	deserve
nōndum	not yet
opus est (+ABL)	<i>there is need of</i>
peditēs, peditum, m. pl.	foot soldiers, infantry
perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus	waste, lose
sī quis	if anyone
sī quid	if anything
vīlis, vīle	cheap
vitiūm, vitī, n.	sin, fault, vice



Aureus of Trajan.



CARMINA

Stage 42

Phaedrus

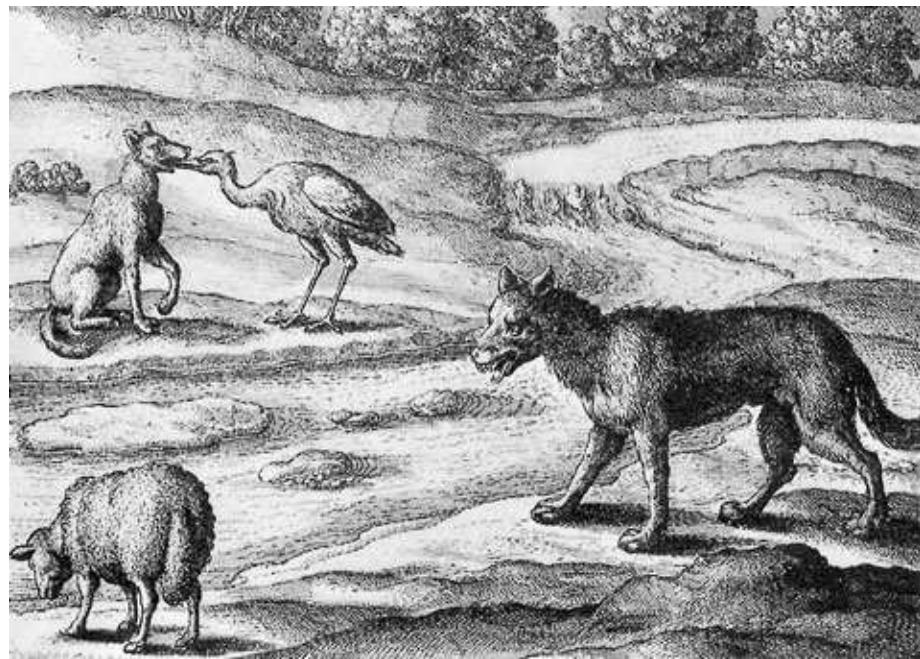
Phaedrus, who lived in the first half of the first century AD, was originally a slave of the emperor, and became a **libertus Augusti**. He composed five books of verse mainly based on the animal fables of Aesop, such as the following fable of the wolf and the lamb:

ad rīvum eundem lupus et agnus vēnerant
sītī compulſī; superior stābat lupus
longēque īnferior agnus. tunc fauce improbā
latrō incitātūs iūrgī causam intulit.
“quārē” inquit “**turbulentam** fēcistī mihi
aquam* bibentī?” lāniger contrā timēns:
“quī possum, quaeſō, facere quod quereris, lupe?
ā tē décurrit ad meōs haustūs liquor.”
repulsus ille vēritatis vīribus:
“ante hōs sex mēnsēs male” ait “dixistī mihi.”
respondit agnus: “equidem nātus nōn eram.”
“pater hercle tuus” ille inquit “male dīxit mihi;”
atque ita correptum lacerat, iniūstā nece.

5

10

rīvum: rīvus stream
sītī: sitis thirst
compulſī: compellere drive, compel
superior higher, farther upstream
īnferior lower, farther downstream
tunc then
fauce (ablative singular)
hunger (literally throat)
improbā: improbus wicked, relentless
latrō the robber, i.e. the wolf
iūrgī: iūrgium argument, dispute
causam intulit: causam īfere
make an excuse, invent an excuse
turbulentam: turbulentus disturbed, muddy
lāniger the woolly one, i.e. the lamb
contrā in reply
qui? how?
dēcurrīt: dēcurrere run down
haustūs: haustus drinking, drinking place
liquor water
repulsus repelled, taken aback
vīribus: vīrēs strength
male ... dīxitī: male dīcere insult
ait said
correptum: corripere seize
lacerat: lacerāre tear apart
iniūstā: iniūstus unjust
nece: nex slaughter



Aesop's fables

Questions

- 1 Where had the wolf and lamb come to, and why? Where did they stand?
- 2 Who started the argument? What excuse did he invent?
- 3 What reason did the lamb give for saying that the wolf must be wrong?
- 4 What accusation did the wolf then make? What was the lamb's reply?
- 5 How did the wolf then change his accusation? What did he do next?
- 6 Suggest a moral (or a title) for this fable. Then compare your moral with the one which Phaedrus wrote:

haec propter illōs scrīpta est hominēs **fābula**
qui fictis causis innocentēs opprimunt.

* Some noun-and-adjective phrases, in which an adjective is separated by one word or more from the noun which it describes, are shown in **boldface**.

Catullus

Gaius Valerius Catullus came from Verona in the north of Italy. He was born in about 84 BC and died not long after 54 BC. His poems, mostly short, vary from tender and loving to insulting and obscene. Stage 42 contains two poems by Catullus in very contrasting styles.

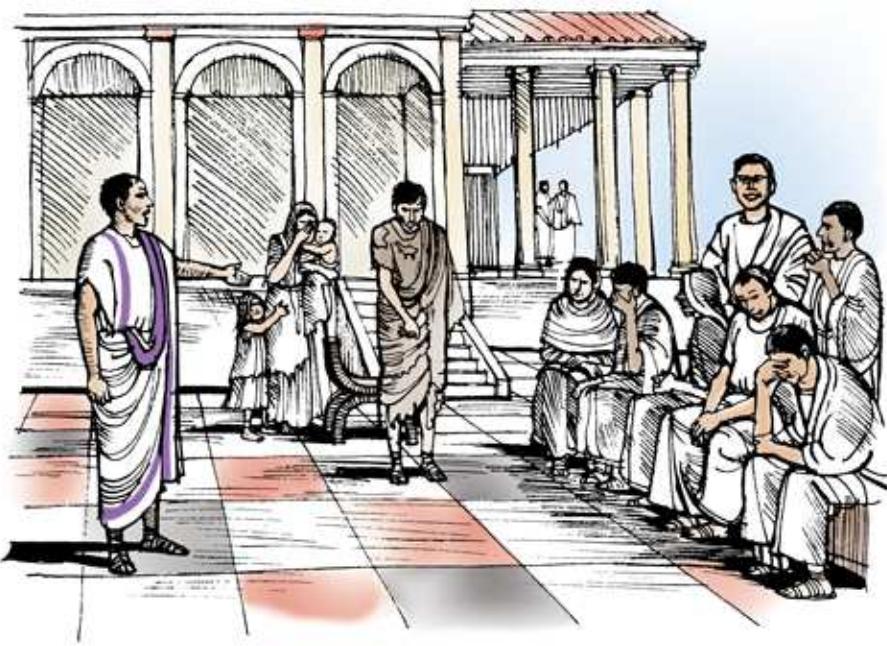
I

Egnātius, quod **candidōs** habet dentēs,
renīdet usque quāque. sī ad reī ventum est
subsellium, cum ḍrātor excitat flētūm,
renīdet ille; sī ad pīr rogum **fīlī**
lūgētur, **orba** cum flet ūnicum māter,
renīdet ille. quidquid est, ubicumque est,
quocumque agit, renīdet: hunc habet morbum,
neque ēlegantem, ut arbitror, neque urbānum.
quārē monendum est tē mihi, bone Egnātī.
sī urbānus essēs aut Sabīnus aut Tiburs
aut pinguis Umber aut obēsus Etruscus
aut quilibet, quī pūriter lavit dentēs,
tamen renīdēre usque quāque tē nōllem:
nam risū inēptō **rēs** inēptior **nūlla** est.

5

10

candidōs: candidus bright, gleaming white
renīdet: renīdēre grin, smirk
usque quāque on every possible occasion
reī: reus defendant
ventum est people have come (literally there has been an arrival)
subsellium bench (for prisoner in court)
ḍrātor speaker (in court), pleader
flētūm: flētus weeping, tears
pīr: pius good, pious
lūgētur mourning is taking place, mourning is in progress
orba: orbus bereaved
flet: flēre weep for
ūnicum: ūnicus (filius) one and only (son)
quidquid est whatever is happening
ubicumque wherever
arbitror: arbitrārī think
urbānum: urbānus (line 8) refined
quārē therefore
urbānus (line 10) a city-dweller, a man from Rome
Sabīnus a Sabine
Tiburs a man from Tibur
pinguis plump
Umber an Umbrian
Etruscus an Etruscan
quilibet anyone at all
pūriter decently, with clean water
nōllem I would not want
inēptō: inēptus silly



sī ad reī ventum est subsellium, cum ḍrātor excitat flētūm, renīdet ille.

Questions

- 1 Why, according to Catullus, does Egnatius grin so continually?
- 2 What is happening in lines 2–5 (a) in court and (b) at the funeral pyre? What does Egnatius do on each occasion? Suggest reasons why Catullus includes the words **cum ḍrātor excitat flētūm** (line 3) and **orba cum flet ūnicum māter** (line 5) in his description of the scenes.
- 3 Suggest a reason why the verb **renīdet** is repeated so often (lines 2, 4, 6, 7, and **renīdēre** in line 13).
- 4 How does Catullus describe Egnatius' habit in lines 7–8?
- 5 What does Catullus say he must do to Egnatius in line 9?
- 6 Study the long sentence in lines 10–13. Does Catullus imply that Egnatius in fact comes from any of these places? Does he imply that Egnatius cleans his teeth **pūriter**?
- 7 According to line 14, why would Catullus still object to Egnatius' smile, no matter where he came from?

II

multās per gentēs et multa per aquora vectus,
 adveniō **hās miserās**, frāter, ad **inferiās**,
 ut tē postrēmō dōnārem mūnere mortis
 et **mūtam** nēquīquam adloquerer **cinerem**.
 quandoquidem fortūna mihi tē abstulit ipsum,
 heu miser indignē frāter adēmpte mihi,
 nunc tamen intereā haec*, **prīscō** quae **mōre** parentum
 trādita sunt tristī mūnere ad **inferiās**,
 accipe* **frāternō** multum mānantia **fletū**,
 atque in perpetuum, frāter, avē atque valē.

10

aequora: aequor sea
vectus: vehī be carried (e.g. by horse or ship), travel
inferiās: inferiae tribute to the dead
postrēmō: postrēmus last
mūnere: mūnus gift
mūtam: mūtus silent
nēquīquam in vain
(ut) adloquerer (so that) I might speak to
quandoquidem seeing that, since
mihi from me
tētē = tē
heu = ēheu
indignē unfairly
adēmpte: adēmptus taken away
haec these things, these gifts
prīscō ... mōre by the ancient custom
parentum: parentēs ancestors, forefathers
tristī mūnere as a sad gift, by way of a sad gift
frāternō: frāternus of a brother, fraternal
multum mānantia drenched
avē atque valē hail and farewell

Questions

- How does Catullus emphasize the distance he has traveled?
- Why has he made this journey? Why do you think he emphasizes its length?
- Explain **nēquīquam** in line 4. How is your explanation supported by other words in the same line?
- What indications are there in the poem that Catullus believes or disbelieves in an afterlife?
- Where in the poem does the emotion seem to be most intense? What, in your opinion, is the mood of the final line?

* These two words go closely together.

Mārtiālis

A number of Martial's epigrams were included in Stage 36. Martial (Marcus Valerius Martialis) was originally a native of Spain, and lived from about AD 40 to about AD 104. Pliny said of him: "He was a talented man, sharp and shrewd, whose epigrams had plenty of salt and vinegar in them."

I

tū Sētīna quidem semper vel Massica pōnis,
 Pāpyle, sed rūmor tam bona vīna negat:
 dīceris hāc factus caelebs quater esse lagōnā.
 nec puto nec crēdō, Pāpyle, nec sitiō.

Sētīna = vīna Sētīna Setian wine
 (a good wine)

Massica = vīna Massica
 Massic wine (another good wine)
pōnis: pōnere serve
rūmor rumor
negat: negāre deny, say that ... not
 tam bona vīna negat = negat ea esse
 tam bona vīna
caelebs widower
quater four times
lagōnā: lagōna bottle
sitiō: sitiō be thirsty

II

Eutrapelus tōnsor dum circuit ūra Lupercī
 expingitque genās, altera barba subit.

Eutrapelus tōnsor dum = dum
Eutrapelus tōnsor
 circuit = circumit
expingit: expingere paint, put paint onto
 genās: genās cheek
 subit: subīre come up

III

nūbere Paula cupit nōbīs, ego dūcere Paulam
 nōlō: anus est. vellem, sī magis esset anus.

nōbīs = mihi
dūcere marry
vellem I would be willing

About the language 1: conditional sentences

1 From Unit 2 on, you have met sentences like these:

sī illud dixisti, errāvistū.

If you said that, you were wrong.

sī filius meus mortuus est, fundum libertīs lēgō.

If my son is dead, I leave the farm to the freedmen.

The group of words in **boldface** is known as a **conditional clause**, and sentences which contain a conditional clause are known as **conditional sentences**.

2 Translate the following examples, and pick out the conditional clause in each sentence:

a sī Marcō crēdis, īnsānus es.

b sī Salvius tālia facinora commīsit, pūniendus est.

c sī illam ancillam magnō pretiō ēmisi, vēnālīcius tē dēcēpit.

3 From Stage 33 on, you have met sentences in which a conditional clause refers to the future:

sī respexerit, aliquid mīrū vidēbit.

If he looks back, he will see something amazing.

sī tū dīligenter executiēs, mēnsōrēs inveniēs.

If you investigate carefully, you will find surveyors.

Notice again how the verb in the Latin conditional clause is put into either the future perfect tense (as in the first example, **respexerit**) or the future tense (as in the second example, **executiēs**). English, however, normally uses a present tense (looks back, investigate).

4 Further examples:

a sī pecūniām meām reppereritis, vōbīs praemium ingēns dabō.

b sī pompām spectābis, dēlectāberis.

c sī Virginēs Vestālēs ignēm sacrum neglēxerint, dī populum Rōmānum pūnient.

d sī tū mihi nocueris, ego tibi nocēbō.

5 Notice how the word **nisi** (“unless” or “if . . . not”) is used in conditional clauses:

nisi tacueritis, ē tabernā ēiciēminī.

Unless you are quiet, you will be thrown out of the inn.

Or, in more natural English:

If you aren't quiet, you'll be thrown out of the inn.

Further examples:

a nisi prīnceps mē līberābit, in exiliō reliquam vītam manēbō.

b nisi cāveris, custōdēs tē invenient.

6 In Stage 42, you have met a slightly different type of conditional sentence:

sī urbānus essēs, tamen renīdēre usque quāque tē nōllem.

If you were a city-dweller, I still wouldn't want you to be forever grinning.

sī magis esset anus, Mārtiālis eam dūcere vellet.

If she were older, Martial would be willing to marry her.

Notice that in these sentences, Latin uses the subjunctive and English uses the word “would.”

Horātius

Quintus Horatius Flaccus, the son of a freedman auctioneer, was a native of Venusia in southern Italy. He went to Athens to continue his education. Once he arrived in Rome, he became a literary success almost immediately, enjoying the patronage of Maecenas and the friendship of Virgil and the Emperor Augustus. Horace's poems cover a wide range of topics. The following has a philosophical theme.

tū nē quaeſierīs, ſcīre nefas, quem mihi, quem tibi
finē dī dederint, Leuconoē, nec Babylōniōs
temptāris numerōs. ut melius quidquid erit patī,
ſeu plūrēs hiemēs ſeu tribuit Iuppiter ultimam, 5
quae nunc oppoſitis dēbilitat pūmīcibus mare
Tyrrhēnum: sapiās, vīna liquēs, et ſpatiō brevī
ſpēm longam reſecēs. dum loquimur, fūgerit invida
aetās: carpe diem, quam minimum crēdula posterō.

nē quaeſierīs *do not ask* (nē + perfect subjunctive for a more polite form of command than nōlī quaerere)
nefas (est) *(it is) forbidden*

dī = deī

Leuconoē: Leuconoē *Leuconoe (Her name may mean clear-minded.)*

Babylōniōs . . . numerōs: Babylōniū
numerī *Babylonian calculations*
(This is an allusion to the mathematical calculations of Babylonian astrologers.)

nec . . . temptāris = et nōlī temptāre
and do not meddle with
ut melius (est) *how much better (it is)*
tribuit: tribuere *grant, allot, assign*
ultimam (hanc hiemem) *(this) final (winter)*

dēbilitat: dēbilitāre *weaken, exhaust, cripple*

pūmīcibus: pūmex *cliff, volcanic stone*
sapiās, liquēs, reſecēs

(present subjunctives for polite commands)

sapiās: sapere *be wise*

liquēs: liquāre *strain*

ſpatiō: ſpatium *space of time*

reſecēs: reſecāre *cut back, prune*

aetās *time*

carpe: carpere *seize, pluck*

crēdula: crēdulus *trusting*

Questions

- A 1 In lines 1–3, what two things does Horace warn Leuconoe not to do?
2 What advice does the poet give at the end of line 3?
3 In line 4, what image marks the passage of years? Who is seen as responsible for the granting of these years?
4 In the seasonal battle between the sea and its shoreline, which would be the expected winner? In lines 5–6, how does Horace reverse this image?
5 liquēs, reſecēs (lines 6–7): what advantage is gained by straining the wine? by pruning a shrub?
6 What is happening even while Leuconoe and Horace speak (lines 7–8)?
G 1 Write down and examine all the verbs with which Horace gives advice to Leuconoe. What philosophical school would applaud this advice?
2 In line 4, Horace uses the word hiemēs rather than annōs or aestātēs. Suggest why.
3 How do the images from nature in lines 4–7 prepare for the *carpe diem* image in the last line?
4 In lines 5–6, Horace uses the phrase mare Tyrrhēnum rather than just mare. Suggest why.
5 How does the rapid movement of the poem reinforce the theme of the poem?



About the language 2: *fīō*

1 Study the following pairs of sentences:

puerī clāmōrem faciunt.

The boys are making a noise.

clāmor fit.

A noise is being made.

Nerō multa et dīra faciēbat.

Nero was doing many terrible things.

multa et dīra fīēbant.

Many terrible things were being done.

The words in **boldface** are forms of the irregular verb ***fīō*** (“I am made”).

2 The verb ***faciō*** (“I make, I do”) has no passive forms in the present, future, and imperfect tenses. Instead, Latin uses the following forms of ***fīō***:

present indicative

fīō *I am made*

fīs *you (sing.) are made*

fit *s/he is made*

fīunt *they are made*

future indicative

fīam *I shall be made*

fīes *you (sing.) shall be made*

etc.

imperfect indicative

fīēbam *I was being made*

fīēbās *you (sing.) were being made*

For complete tables of the forms of ***fīō***, see [page 286](#) of the Language information section.

Translate the following pairs of sentences:

a mīlitēs impetum mox facient.
impetus mox fiet.

b servus nihil in cūlinā faciēbat.
nihil in cūlinā fīēbat.

c ignōrābāmus quid senātōrēs in cūriā facerent.
ignōrābāmus quid in cūriā fieret.

3 Notice some of the different ways in which ***fīō*** can be translated:

aliquid mīrī fīēbat.

Something strange was being done.

Or, *Something strange was happening.*

ecce! deus fīō.

Look! I'm being made into a god.

Or, *Look! I'm becoming a god.*

Further examples:

a crās nōs cōnsulēs fīēmus.

Marce! quid in fundō tuō hodiē fit?

c tam timidē hōstēs resistēbant ut peditēs nostrī audāciōrēs fierent.

peditēs *foot soldiers, infantry*

4 The perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect tenses of the passive of ***faciō*** are formed in the normal way. Study the following pairs of sentences and notice some of the different ways of translating ***factus est***, etc.:

a mīlitēs Claudiūm imperātōrem fēcērunt.
The soldiers made Claudius emperor.

b Claudiūs imperātor factus est.
Claudius was made emperor.
Or, *Claudius became emperor.*

c haruspex rem rīdiculam fēcerat.
The soothsayer had done a silly thing.

d rēs rīdicula facta erat.
A silly thing had been done.
Or, *A silly thing had happened.*

Ovidius

Stage 39 included a short extract from the Metamorphoses of Ovid (Publius Ovidius Naso, 43 BC–AD 17). The following lines are taken from Ovid's Ars Amatoria or Art of Love, of which the first two sections (or “books”) give advice to young men on how to find, win, and keep a girlfriend. Here, Ovid is telling his reader what to do if a girl ignores him and sends his love messages back without reading them:

sī nōn accipiet sc̄riptum inlēctumque remittet,
lēctūram sp̄rā p̄ōpositumque tenē.
tempore diffīclēs veniunt ad arātra iuvencī,
tempore lenta patī frēna docentur equī.

ferreus assiduō cōnsūmitur ānulus ūsū,
interit assiduā vōmer aduncus humō.
quid magis est saxō dūrum, quid mollius undā?
dūra tamen mollī saxa cavitur aquā.

Pēnelopēn ipsam, perstā modo, tempore vincēs:
capta vidēs sērō Pergama, capta tamen.

5

10

inlēctum: inlēctus *unread*

lēctūram sp̄rā = sp̄rā eam id

lēctūram esse

p̄ōpositum: p̄ōpositum *intention, resolution*

tenē: tenēre *keep to, hold on to*

diffīclēs: diffīcīlis *obstinate*

arātra: arātrum *plow*

iuvencī: iuvencus *bullock, young ox*

lenta: lēntus *supple*

frēna reīns

ferreus *iron, made of iron*

assiduō: assiduus *continual*

interit: interīre *wear away, wear out*

vōmer *plowshare*

Pēnelopēn *(Greek accusative) Penelope*

sērō *late, after a long time*

Questions

- What is Ovid's advice to the young man? What arguments does he use to support his advice? Do these arguments actually prove Ovid's point? If not, why does he include them?
- Using a classical dictionary or the Internet if necessary, find out what or where Pergama (line 10) was, and how long a time is referred to by sērō (line 10). Then (using the dictionary again if needed) find out who Penelope was, and suggest reasons why Ovid uses her as his example in line 9.

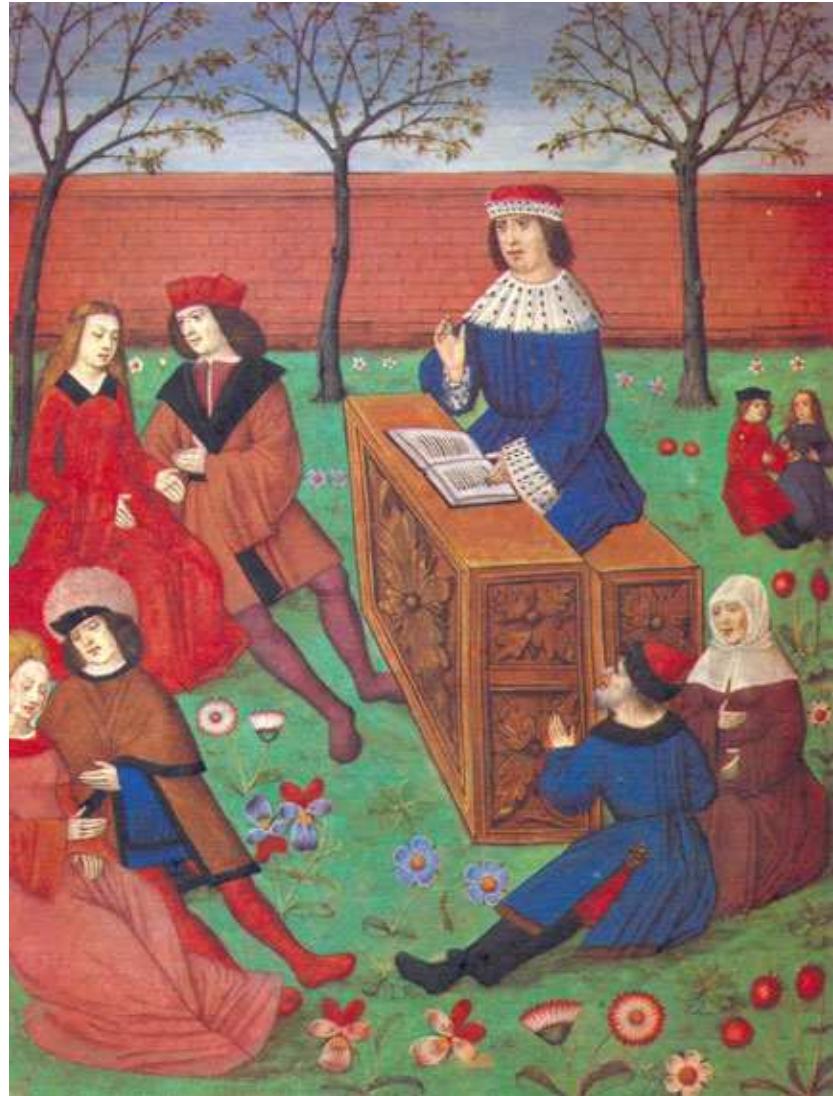
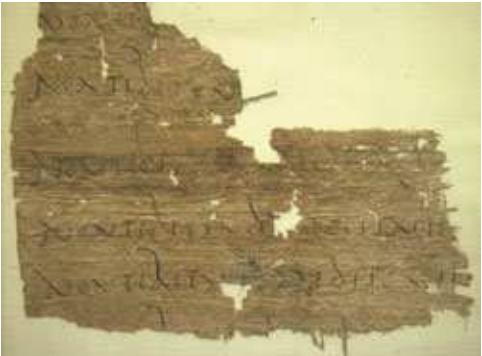


Illustration from a medieval manuscript showing Doctor Ovid lecturing in a Garden of Lovers.

Vergilius



Writing exercise on papyrus, containing a line from Virgil.

Publius Vergilius Maro (70–19 BC) was born in northern Italy near Mantua. His chief work was the *Aeneid*, an epic poem in nearly ten thousand lines, which related the adventures of Aeneas, the legendary ancestor of the Romans. The following lines form a tiny but complete episode in this huge poem; Aeneas, who is describing his earlier wanderings to Dido, Queen of Carthage, tells of a storm that hit him and his Trojan companions as they sailed westwards from the island of Crete.

postquam altum tenuere ratēs nec iam amplius ullae
apparent terrae, caelum undique et undique pontus,
tum mihi **caeruleus** suprā caput adstitit **imber**
noctem hiememque ferēns, et inhorruit unda tenebris.
continuō ventī volvunt mare magna que surgunt
aequa, dispersi iactāmūr gurgite vāstō;
involvēre diem nimbi et nox ūmida caelum
abstulit, ingeminant abruptis nūribus ignēs.
excutimur cursū et **caecis** errāmus in **undis**.
ipse* diem noctemque negat discernere caelō
nec meminisse viae **media** Palinūrus* in **undā**.
tres adeo incertos caeca cālgine **sōles**
errāmus pelagō, totidem sine sidere noctēs.
quārtū terra dīē p̄fīmū sē attollere tandem
vīsa, aperīre procul montēs ac volvere fūmum.

altum *deep sea, open sea*
tenuēre = **tenuērunt**: **tenēre** *occupy, be upon*

ratēs: *ratis boat*
amplius *any more*
caeruleus *dark*
adstitit: *adstāre stand*
imber *storm cloud*
noctem: **nox** *darkness*
hiemem: **hiems** *storm*
inhorruit: *inhorrēscere shudder*
continuō *immediately*
volvunt: *volvere* (line 5) *set rolling, turn to billows*
dispersi: *dispergere scatter*
gurgite: *gurges whirlpool, swirling water*
involvēre = **involvērunt**: *involve envelop, swallow up*
ūmida: **ūmidus** *rainy, stormy*
ingeminant: *ingeminare redouble*
abruptis: *abrumpere split, tear apart*
ignēs: *ignis lightning*
executimur: *executere shake off, drive violently off*
caecis: **caecus** (line 9) *unseen (literally blind)*
negat = **negat sē posse**
discernere *distinguish*
Palinūrus *Palinurus (the Trojans' helmsman)*
5 **trēs adeō** *as many as three, three entire*
caecā: **caecus** (line 12) *impenetrable*
cāligine: **cāligō** *darkness, gloom*
10 **sōles**: **sōl** *day*
pelagō: *pelagus sea*
totidem *the same number*
primum *for the first time*
sē attollere *raise itself, rise up*
15 **aperīre** *reveal*
volvere (line 15) *send rolling upwards*

Questions

- A 1 Where were the boats when the storm broke? What surrounded them?
2 What was the first sign of trouble? Where was it? What did it bring with it?
3 What did the winds do to the ocean (line 5)? What happened to the Trojans?
4 What was the effect of the rain clouds (line 7)? What further detail of the storm does Virgil give in line 8?
5 What was the next thing that happened to the Trojans?
6 What did Palinurus say he could not do (line 10)? What other difficulty was he having?
7 For how long did the Trojans wander? What was unusual about the **noctes** (line 13)?
8 When did the Trojans finally catch sight of land?
9 List the three stages in which they got an increasingly detailed view of land in lines 14–15.



Mosaic of ships

* These two words go closely together.

B 1 What idea is most strongly emphasized in lines 1–2? In what way is it relevant to the storm that follows?

2 What does Virgil suggest in line 4 about the appearance of the sea?

3 Compare the following translations of **continuō venti volvunt mare magnaque surgunt aequora** (lines 5–6):

1 “The ruffling winds the foamy billows raise.”

(John Dryden, 1697)

2 “The winds quickly set the sea-surface rolling and lifted it in great waves.”

(W.F. Jackson Knight, 1956)

3 “Winds billowed the sea at once, the seas were running high.”

(C. Day Lewis, 1952)

4 “The winds roll up the sea, great waters heave.”

(Allen Mandelbaum, 1981)

5 “Soon the winds

Made the sea rise and big waves came against us.”

(Robert Fitzgerald, 1983)

Which of the translations is most successful in conveying the feeling of Virgil’s words?

Which gives the most vivid picture?

4 What is the point of **ipse** (line 10)?

5 Compare the following translations of lines 12–13:

1 “Three starless nights the doubtful navy strays
Without distinction, and three sunless days.”

(Dryden)

2 “For three whole days, hard though they were to reckon, and as many starless nights,
we wandered in the sightless murk over the ocean.”

(Jackson Knight)

3 “Three days, three days befogged and unsighted by the darkness,
We wandered upon the sea, three starless nights we wandered.”

(Day Lewis)

4 “We wander for three days in sightless darkness and for as many nights without a star.”

(Mandelbaum)

5 “Three days on the deep sea muffled in fog,
Three starless nights we wandered blind.”

(Fitzgerald)



The storm.

About the language 3: more about word order

- 1 In Stage 39, you met sentences in which one noun-and-adjective phrase is placed inside another one:

cōnstituit ante oculōs pulchra puella meōs.
A beautiful girl stood before my eyes.

- 2 In Stage 42, you have met sentences like this, in which two noun-and-adjective phrases are intertwined with each other:

dūra tamen molli saxa cavantur aquā.
Nevertheless, hard stones are hollowed out by soft water.

Further examples:

- a parva necat morsū spatiōsum vīpera taurum. (Ovid)
b frīgidus ingēnēs irrigat imber agrōs.

morsū: morsus *bite, fangs*
spatiōsum: spatiōsus *huge*
vīpera *viper*
frīgidus *cold*
irrigat: irrigāre *to water*

- 3 In each of the following examples, pick out the Latin adjectives and say which nouns they are describing:

- a impiaque aeternam timuērunt saecula noctem. (*Virgil*)
The evil generations were in fear of endless night.
- b molliaque immītēs fixit in ūra manūs. (*Propertius*)
And it fastened its cruel hands on her soft face.

- 4 Translate the following examples:

- a Poets and poverty:
Maeonidēs nūllās ipse reliquit opēs. (*Ovid*)
- b A poet's epitaph on himself:
hīc iacet immītī cōnsūmptus morte Tibullus. (*Tibullus*)
- c Ovid congratulates Cupid on his forthcoming victory procession:
haec tibi magnificus pompa triumphus erit. (*Ovid*)
- Maeonidēs *Homer (the greatest of Greek poets)*

Practicing the language

- 1 Notice again that there are often several different ways of translating a Latin word, and that you always have to choose the most suitable translation for the particular sentence you are working on.

For example, the Vocabulary section at the end of the book gives the following meanings for **ēmittō**, **petō**, and **referō**:

ēmittō *throw, send out*
petō *head for; attack; seek, beg for; ask for*
referō *bring back, carry, deliver, tell, report*

Translate the following sentences, using suitable translations of **ēmittō**, **petō**, and **referō** chosen from the above list:

- a dux trīgintā equitēs ēmīsit.
b duo latrōnēs, fūstibus armātī, senem petīvērunt.
c uxor tōtam rem rettulit.
d nautae, tempestāte perterritī, portum petēbant.
e subītō mīlitēs hastās ēmittere coepērunt.
f mercātor nihil ex Āfricā rettulit.
g captīvus, genibus ducis haerēns, libertātem petīvit.

- 2 Complete each sentence with the correct word and then translate.

- a corpora mīlitūm mortuōrum crās (sepeliētur, sepelientur)
b nōlīte timēre, cīvēs! ā vestrīs equitibus (dēfendēris, dēfendēminī)
c sī custōdēs mē cēperint, ego sine dubiō (interficiar, interficiēmur)
d fabula nōtissima in theātrō (agētur, agentur)
e diffīcile erit tibi nāvigāre; nam ventīs et tempestātibus (impediēris, impediēminī)
f nisi fortiter pugnābimus, ab hostibus (vincar, vincēmur)

- 3 Translate the first sentence. Then change it from a direct statement to an indirect statement by completing the second sentence. Finally, translate the second sentence.

For example: equī hodiē exercētūr.
audiō equ... hodiē exerc....

Translated and completed, this becomes:

equī hodiē exercētūr.
The horses are being exercised today.
audiō equōs hodiē exercētī.
I hear that the horses are being exercised today.

In sentences **a–c**, a *present passive* infinitive is required. For examples of the way in which this infinitive is formed, see [page 294](#), paragraph 1.

- a** patrōnūs ā clientib⁹ cot̄diē salūtātur.
scio patrōn⁹ . . . ā clientib⁹ cot̄diē salūt⁹ . . .
- b** duae puellae in hōc carcere retinēt⁹.
centuriō putat du⁹ . . . puell⁹ . . . in hōc carcere retin⁹ . . .
- c** vīlla nova prope montem aedificātur.
agricola dicit . . . prope montem . . .

In sentences **d–f**, a *future active* infinitive is required. For examples of the way in which it is formed, see [page 295](#), paragraph 1. Note that the first part of this infinitive (e.g. **parātūrus** in **parātūrus esse**) changes its ending to agree with the noun it describes.

For example: puer⁹ ad nōs scr̄ibet.
spērō puer⁹ . . . ad nōs scr̄ip⁹ . . .

Translated and completed, this becomes:

- puer⁹ ad nōs scr̄ibet
The girl will write to us.
- spērō puellam ad nōs scriptūram esse
I hope that the girl will write to us.

- d** gladiātor crās pugnābit.
ex̄stīmō gladiāt⁹ . . . crās pugnā . . .
- e** nostrī mīlitēs vincent.
dux crēdit nostr⁹ . . . mīl⁹ . . . vic⁹ . . .
- f** discipulī crās recitābunt.
rhētor pollicētur . . . crās . . .

Latin poetry

Quintilian, the instructor engaged by Domitian to teach his adopted sons (Stage 39), had them learning poetry. This was not unusual. In his book, *Institutio Oratoria* (*The Training of an Orator*), Quintilian rated poetry above all other forms of literature as being suitable for future Roman leaders to study.

It is to the poets that we must turn for inspiration, for elevation of language, for stirring all our emotions, and for appropriateness in delineating character.

However, Quintilian was writing as a teacher of rhetoric, and he felt that poetry, with (in his opinion) its emphasis only on entertainment, its many unrealistic images, and the constraining effect of its rules for rhythm and structure, was at best an imperfect model for the courtroom. For a poet's view of poetry, we could turn to Horace, whose lyric poetry, written a century before Quintilian's time, won justified praise from the rhetor. In a long poem which has come to be known as the *Ars Poetica* (*The Art of Poetry*), he wrote,

Poets want either to be of use or to give pleasure or to say things which are both pleasing and useful for life at the same time . . . The poet who has mixed the useful (*ūtile*) with the pleasurable (*dulce*) is superior, because he delights and advises the reader at one and the same time.

But what of the average Roman? Where did poetry rate in his or her life? Consider this famous graffito from Pompeii:

**ADMIROR, O PARIES, TE NON CECIDISSE (RVINIS),
QVI TOT SCRIPTORVM TAEDIA SVSTINEAS.**
I wonder, o wall, that you have not collapsed (in ruins), since you bear the boring weight of so many writers.

This commentary, scratched on the walls of Pompeii, is, in fact, in Latin verse. Its structure and rhythm are those of an elegiac couplet, the same form that Martial used for the epigrams we read in Stage 36. (For basic meters and rhythmical patterns, see the Language information, [pages 303–306](#).) Latin poets also deliberately used stylistic or rhetorical devices. In the two lines of the graffito, the writer personifies the wall, chooses the word **taedia** to refer to the scrawlings on the walls and metaphorically to compare them to heavy and boring items of baggage, and uses humor to condemn the habit of writing on walls while self-deprecatingly adding to the “baggage.” This average Roman, in short, was well aware of the characteristics of Latin poetry and able to use them effectively.

Let us examine some of these characteristics in more detail.

A line of Latin poetry is distinguished by its meter or repetitive pattern of sound. Prose normally has no such regular rhythm. The repetition of rhythmic

patterns takes various forms in different literary traditions. English metrical poetry relies on the natural word accent to give stressed and unstressed syllables. Latin meter, unlike English poetry, does not rely on accent but on quantity, that is, on the number of long and short syllables in a line.

The Romans initially considered Greek as the language of literature. Greek poetry was originally closely allied to music and the long or short quantity of a syllable represented the musical time allowed (like half notes and quarter notes) for the pronunciation of the syllable. Latin poets very early borrowed the Greek system of quantitative meter as part of their general imitation of Greek literary forms and techniques, even though Latin poetry was not meant to be sung. By the time of Augustus, Latin poets had adapted Greek meters to Latin and had vindicated Latin as a great literary language in itself.

It is not only meter, however, that characterizes Latin poetry. It is in poetry that the effects of rhetorical training and the striving for originality and style are most strongly felt. Roman poets make an abundant use of rhetorical devices such as connotations, antithesis, parallelism, sound effects, word choices, imagery, figures of speech, effective use of proper names, and many other stylistic features. (See [pages 301–302](#) for examples and definitions of these stylistic terms.)

Among the stylistic devices used in Latin poetry, word order is a distinctive feature. Latin is an inflected language: it is the ending of the word not the order of the words that provides the meaning. This fact enables the poet to vary the order of his words. For example, an important word may be placed in the emphatic first word or last word position in a line of verse, a word may be placed out of its usual order and framed by a pair of related words, words of one noun-and-adjective phrase may interlock with those of another, one word may be juxtaposed with another, and so on. From their position and their relation, the poet's words take on added point and significance.

Roman poets frequently use allusions, brief references to details the writers expect their readers to recognize. Through the fabric of Latin poetry runs the thread of classical mythology. A knowledge of the myths is part of the equipment of the Roman poet. Sometimes he (or – very occasionally perhaps – she) uses a passing reference to a myth, sometimes he bases a whole work on a familiar story. Besides mythological allusions, Roman poets often use historical or geographical references which the readers must know if they are to participate fully in the poem.

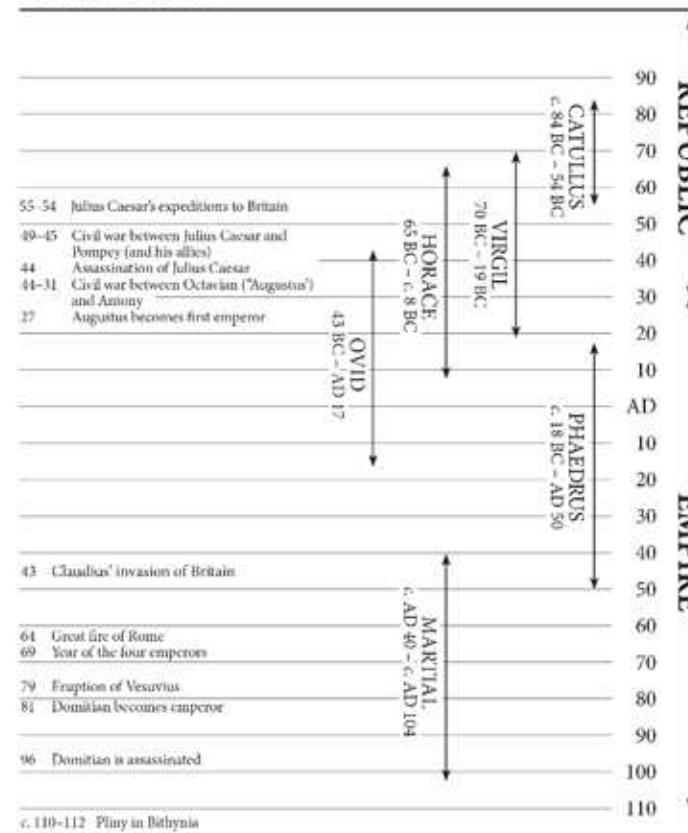
A scrupulous and detailed examination of a poem or a passage ideally will allow you to say what elements give a work its peculiar quality, to analyze the poetic craftsmanship or artistic expression, and to explain clearly your considered reaction to it. There are various stylistic terms which are the common currency of literary criticism. It is not enough, however, merely to recognize and label poetic devices. It is more important to examine how the poet uses



each stylistic device and what effect is achieved by its use in its context, and to consider the blending of the different elements in the creation of the poetic whole.

This time chart shows the dates of the six Roman poets represented in Stage 42, together with some events in Roman history.

Time chart



Vocabulary checklist 42

adloquor, adloqui, adlocūtus sum	speak to, address
caecus, caeca, caecum	blind; invisible, unseen
genū, genūs, n.	knee
longē	far, a long way
lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxī	lament, mourn
meminī, meminisce	remember
mollis, molle	soft
neque	and not, nor
nec ... nec	neither ... nor
quicunque, quaecumque, quodcumque	whoever, whatever
reperiō, reperīre, repertī, repertus	find
sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī, sepultus	bury
sīdus, sīderis, n.	star



"ut ... mūtam nēquīquam adloquerer cinerem." A cinerary urn.



UNIVIR
Stage 43

mātrōna Ephesia

Versions of the following story have been found all over the world. Its first appearance in Latin is in the fables of Phaedrus, and it was particularly popular in the Middle Ages; numerous versions exist in Latin, French, Italian, English, German, Russian, Chinese, and Hebrew; and it was turned into a stage play (*A Phoenix Too Frequent*) by twentieth-century writer Christopher Fry. The following version is based closely on the *Satyricon* by Petronius, who is probably the same man as Gaius Petronius Arbiter, Nero's **arbiter elegantiae** (adviser on taste and fashion) who was eventually ordered by Nero to commit suicide in AD 66.



Facades of Roman
“house” tombs.

I

mātrōna quaedam, quae Ephesī habitābat, ita nōta erat propter pudīcītiam ut ab omnībus fēmīnīs illīs locī laudārētur. haec ergō, marītō mortuō, tantō dolōrē affecta est ut sine eō vīvēre nōllet; nōn modo fūnus eius, ut mōs erat, passīs crīnibus et veste scissā prōsecūta est, sed etiam servīs imperāvit ut ipsa in sepulcrō eōdem ūnā cum corpore marītū clauderētur. ibi corpus eius custōdīre ac flēre totās noctēs diēsque coepit; neque cibum neque vīnum accipere volēbat; precēs parentū, propinquōrum, etiam magistrātū, repudiāvit; cōstituerat enim mortem inediā iuxtā corpus marītū obire.

Ephesī: Ephesus
Ephesus (city in Asia Minor)

ita so

pudīcītiam: pudīcītia
chastity, virtue, purity

fūnus *funeral procession*

passīs: *passus loose, disheveled*
prōsecūta est: prōsequī *follow, escort*

propinquōrum: propinquus
relative

repudiāvit: repudiāre *reject*
inediā: inedia *starvation*

quīntum iam diem mātrōna sine cibō agēbat, cīvibus affirmantibus eam vērum pudīcītiae amōrisque exemplum omnībus uxōribus praestis̄se.

interim lēgātūs prōvinciae trēs latrōnēs iussit crucib⁹ affīgī prope illud sepulcrum ubi mātrōna lūgēbat. proximā ergō nocte, mīles quīdam, ad crucēs custōdiendās élēctus, nē corpora ad sepultūram ā propinquis latrōnum dētraherentur, lūmine inter sepulcra cōspectō et gemītū lūgentis audītō, statim contendit ad cognōscendum quid ibi fieret. sepulcrum ingressus, vīsāque mātrōna pulcherrimā, attōnitus cōstītit; deinde, cum corpus marītū vīdisset lacrimāsque mātrōnae, intellēxit eam dēsiderium mortuī nōn posse patī; ad sepulcrum igitur cēnulam suam attulit, coepitque hortārī lūgentem nē in dolōre inānī persevērāret; omnībus enim mortālibus tandem pereundum esse. “quid tibi prōderit?” inquit “sī inediā perieris, sī tē vīvām seplēveris?” et cibūm vīnumque mātrōnae obtulit. quae, inediā paēne cōfēcta, tandem passa est superārī pertināciā suām.

at mīles, quī mātrōnam esse pulcherrimam prius animadverterat, in sepulcrō multās hōrās manēbat, et eīsdem blandītīs pudīcītiam eius aggredī coepit, quibus eam anteā incītāverat ut cibūm acciperet. multa dē pulchritūdine eius locūtus est, multa dē amōre suō. postrēmō mīles mātrōnae persuāsūt ut illam noctem ibi in sepulcrō sēcum iacēret.

II



mātrōnae quid accidisset exposuit. (line 7)

crucib⁹: crux cross
15 crucib⁹ affīgī: crucī
affigere *nail to a cross, crucify*
sepultūram: sepultūra *burial*
lūmine: lūmen *light*

20 **dēsiderium** *loss*
cēnulam: cēnula *snack, little supper*
quid ... prōderit? *what good will it do?*

25 **passa est: patī** *allow*
pertināciā: pertinācia *obstinacy, determination*

30 **aggredī** *assail, make an attempt on*

mediā autem nocte, cum mīles et fēmina in sepulcrō ūnā iacērent, parentēs ūnū latrōnum crucib⁹ affixōrum, ubi vīdērunt nēminem crucēs custōdīre, corpus clam dē cruce dētractum ad rīte sepeliendum abstulērunt.

postrīdiē māne mīles, ē sepulcrō ēgressus, ubi vīdit ūnam sine corpore crucem esse, supplicium ultimum sibi verēbātur. mātrōnae quid accidisset exposuit; negāvit sē iūdicis sententiam exspectatūrum esse; potius sē ipsum neglegentiam suam pūnitūrum esse. “trāde mihi pugīōnem” inquit “ut ego hīc in marītū tuī sepulcrō moriar atque sepeliar.” mātrōna tamen, quae nōn minus misericors quam pudīca erat, “nē illud deī sinant” inquit “ut eōdem tempore corpora duōrum mihi cārissimōrum hominum spectem. mālō mortuum impendere quam vīvum occīdere.” quibus verbīs dictīs, imperāvit ut ex arcā corpus marītū suī tollerētur atque illi quae vacābat crucī affigerētur. itaque mīles cōnsiliō prūdentissimae mātrōnae libenter ūsus est, et postrīdiē populus mīrabātur quō modō mortuus in crucem ascendisset.

Questions

- 1 What happened outside the tomb in the middle of the night?
- 2 What did the soldier see next morning when he came out of the tomb? What did he fear would happen to him? Rather than wait for this fate, what did he say he would do?
- 3 What did he ask the lady to do? What were his intentions?
- 4 What reason did the lady give for objecting violently to the soldier's request?
- 5 Whom did she mean by **mortuum** and **vīvum** (line 13)?
- 6 What did she tell the soldier to do?
- 7 Why were the people puzzled next day?
- 8 Do you approve of the lady's decision?
- 9 Why do you think this story has been so popular and been retold so often?

	rīte	properly
5	neglegentiam:	neglegentia carelessness
	minus	less
	misericors	tender-hearted, full of pity
10	pudīca:	pudīcus chaste, virtuous
	nē illud deī sinant!	heaven forbid! (literally may the gods not allow it!)
15	impendere	make use of
	arcā:	arca coffin
	vacābat:	vacāre be empty, be unoccupied

About the language 1: imperfect subjunctive (passive and deponent)

1 Study the following examples:

lēgātūs prōvinciam tam bene regēbat ut ab omnībus **diligerētur**.

The governor ruled the province so well that he was loved by everybody.

nesciēbāmus utrum ā sociīs nostrīs **adiuvārēmur** an **impedīrēmur**.

We did not know whether we were being helped or hindered by our companions.

The form of the verb in **boldface** is the **imperfect subjunctive passive**.

Further examples:

a intellegere nōn poteram quārē fēminaē līberīque in oppidō relinquerētur.

b tam ignāvus erat coquus ut ā cēterīs servīs contemnerētur.

c ferōciter resistēbāmus nē ā barbarīs superārēmur.

2 Compare the active and passive forms of the imperfect subjunctive of **portō**:

<i>imperfect subjunctive active</i>	<i>imperfect subjunctive passive</i>
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

<i>imperfect subjunctive active</i>	<i>imperfect subjunctive passive</i>
portārem	portārer
portārēs	portārēris
portāret	portārētur
portārēmus	portārēmur
portārētis	portārēminī
portārent	portārentur

The imperfect subjunctive passive of all four conjugations is set out in full on [page 273](#) of the Language information section.

3 Study the following examples:

tantus erat fragor ut omnēs nautae **verērentur**.

So great was the crash that all the sailors were afraid.

iūdex mē rogāvit num **mentīrētur**.

The judge asked me whether I was lying.

The verbs in **boldface** are imperfect subjunctive forms of deponent verbs.

Further examples:

a cum ēgrederēmur, amīcus meus subitō cōstituit.

b pontifex cīvibus imperāvit ut deōs immortālēs precārentur.

Imperfect subjunctive forms of deponent verbs are set out in full on [page 278](#).

Tūria

The funeral ceremony of a Roman noble often included a **laudatiō** or speech in praise of the dead person, which might later be inscribed on the tomb. The following passages are based on one of these speeches, which survives (in an incomplete form) on a number of stone fragments. It is not known who the speaker was but we refer to him in this Stage as "Vespillo," and to his wife (the subject of the inscription) as "Turia." As often in such speeches, the dead woman is addressed directly by her husband as "you," as if her **mānes** (departed spirit) could hear the speech or read it on the inscription.

I

Vespillo and Turia lived through a time of great violence, when the Romans' system of Republican government was collapsing in ruins, and Italy was torn by a series of horrific civil wars. The laudatio mentions three separate incidents which reflect the violence of the period. The first occurred on the eve of Vespillo and Turia's wedding:

orba repente facta es ante nūptiārum diem, utrōque parente
in rūsticā sōlitūdine occīsīs. per tē maximē (quod ego in
Macedoniā abieram) mors parentum nōn inulta mānsit. tū
officium tuum tantā diligentiā et tantā pietātē ēgisti, efflāgitandō
et investīgandō et ulcīscendō, ut ego ipse, sī adfuisse, nōn
amplius efficere potuisse.

In 49 BC, civil war broke out between Julius Caesar and Pompey the Great. Vespillo had to flee for his life, and he describes the help he received from Turia on that occasion:

mihi fugientī tū maximō auxiliō fūstī; omne aurum
margaritaque corporī tuō dētracta trādidistī quae ferrem mēcum;
callidē dēceptis inimicīs nostrīs, mihi absentī servōs et pecūniām
et alia bona subinde praebusītī.

In 43 BC, civil war was again raging and Vespillo was in still greater danger; his name was published in a list of "public enemies," and a reward was offered for killing him. Vespillo evidently wanted to make a bold dash for escape, but Turia persuaded him otherwise:

ubi amicī nostrī mē ad imminentia pēcula vītanda excitābant,
tuō cōnsiliō servātus sum. tū enim mē audaciā meā efferrī nōn
passa es, sed latebrās tūtās parāvīstī; mē inter cameram et tēctum
cubiculī cēlātum ab exītō servāvīstī. tanta erat virtūs tua ut mē
dēfendere assiduē cōnārēris, nōn sine magnō pēculō tuō.

5 **orba** orphan
sōlitūdine: sōlitūdō lonely place
pietātē: pietās piety, family feeling
efflāgitandō: efflāgitāre demand justice
investīgandō: investīgāre investigate
ulcīscendō: ulcīscī take vengeance
nōn ... potuisse would not have been able

10 **margarīta**: margarītūm pearl
dētracta: dētrahere take off
callidē cleverly
subinde regularly

15 **efferrī**: efferre carry away
cameram: camera ceiling



Woman using a drop spindle.



tanta erat virtūs tua ut mē dēfendere assiduē cōnārēris.

II

After the civil wars were over, Vespillo and Turia could at last enjoy peace and prosperity. But in their private life, they had one cause of great unhappiness:

pācātō orbe terrārum, restitūtā rēpūblicā, tandem contigit nōbīs
ut temporibus quiētīs fruerēmur. magis ac magis līberōs optābāmus,
quōs diū sors nōbīs invīderat. sī precibus nostrīs fortūna fāisset,
quid ultrā cupīvīssēmus? annīs tamen lābentib⁹, spēs nostrarē
ēvānēscēbānt.

diffidēns fēcunditātē tuae et dolēns orbitātē mēā, timēbās nē ego,
tenendō tē in mātrīmōniō, spēm habēndī līberōs dēpōnerem atque
ideō fierem īfēlix; dīvōrtūm igitur prōpōnere ausa es. dīxīstī tē
vacuām domūm nostrām alicui fēminaē fēcundiōrī trādītūram esse;
tē ipsam mihi dignām uxōrem quaesītūram, ac futūrōs līberōs prō
tuīs habitūram esse.

quibus verbīs audītīs, adeō cōnsiliō tuō incēnsus sum ut vix
redderer mihi. num mihi erat tanta mihi cupiditās aut necessitās
habēndī līberōs, ut proptereā fidēm fallerem, mūtārem certa dubītīs?
sed quid plūra? mānsistī apud mē; nōn enim cēdere tibi sine
dēdecōre meō et commūnī dolōre poteram.

pācātō: pācāre make peaceful
républica: républica
the republic (i.e. republican government, which Augustus, the first Roman emperor, claimed to have restored)
contigit nōbīs ut
it was our good fortune that..., we had the good fortune that...

optābāmus: optāre pray for, long for

sors fate, one's lot
invīderat: invīdēre begrudge
ultrā more, further
cupīvīssēmus would have wanted

lābentib⁹: lābī pass by, slide by
ēvānēscēbānt: ēvānēscere
die away, vanish

fēcunditātē: fēcunditās fertility
orbitātē: orbitās childlessness
dēpōnerem: dēpōnere give up, abandon

divōrtūm divorce
fēcundiōrī: fēcundus fertile
futūrōs: futūrus future
prō as
habitūram esse: habēre
regard, consider

redderer mihi: sibi reddī
be restored to one's senses, be restored to oneself

5 **cupiditās** desire
necessitās need
proptereā for that reason
fidēm fallerem: fidēm
fallere break one's word

dubītīs: dubius uncertain
quid plūra? why say more?
dēdecōre: dēdeccus disgrace
commūnī: commūnīs shared (by both of us)

10 15

III

Vespillo praises Turia for being faithful, obedient, and loving; he says she was conscientious in her weaving and spinning (two traditional tasks of Roman wives), elegant without being showy, and religious without being superstitious. Finally, he speaks of Turia's death and his own bereavement:

contigit nōbīs ut ad annum XXXXI sine ūllā discordiā
mātrimōnium nostrum perdūcerētur. iūstius erat mihi, ut maiōrī
annīs, priōrī mortem obīre. tū tamen praecucurristī; mihi dolōrem
dēsideriumque lēgāvistī. aliquāndō dēspērō; sed exemplō tuō
doctus, dolōrī resistere cōnor. fortūna mihi nōn omnia ēripuit;
adhūc enim est mihi memoria tuī.
optō ut dī mānēs tē quīetam iacēre patientur atque tueantur.

5

perdūcerētur: perdūcere	<i>continue</i>
iūstius erat	<i>it would have been fairer, more proper</i>
praecucurristī: praecurrere	<i>go on ahead, run ahead</i>
dī mānēs	<i>the spirits of the dead</i>
tueantur: tuērī	<i>watch over, protect</i>



Part of the inscription on which the story of Vespillo and Turia is based.

About the language 2: more about gerunds

1 In Stage 41, you met the gerund used with **ad** meaning “for the purpose of ...” in sentences like this:

ego et frāter meus ad **certandū** missī sumus.

My brother and I were sent for the purpose of competing.

Or, in more natural English:

My brother and I were sent to compete.

In this example, the gerund is in the **accusative** case, because it is being used with the preposition **ad**.

2 In Stage 43, you have met the **genitive** and **ablative** cases of the gerund, used in sentences like these:

genitive nūlla spēs **habendī** līberōs iam manet.
No hope of having children remains now.

in omnibus āthlētīs ingēns cupīdō **vincendī** inest.
In all athletes, there is an immense love of winning.

ablative **investigandō** Tūria cognōvit quid accidisset.
By investigating, Turia found out what had happened.

nūntius, celerrimē **currendō**, Rōmam prīmā lūce pervēnit.
The messenger, by running very fast, reached Rome at dawn.

The cases of the gerund are listed in full on [page 275](#).

3 Further examples of the gerund used in the accusative, genitive, and ablative cases:

- a cōnsul ōs ad respondentum aperuit; nihil tamen dīcere poterat.
- b optimam occāsiōnem effugiendī nunc habēmus.
- c ad bene vīendum, necesse est magnās opēs possidēre.
- d cantandō et saltandō, puellae hospitēs dēlectāvērunt.
- e poētae nihil dē arte nāvigandī sciunt.
- f et Agricola et mīlitēs magnam glōriam adeptī sunt, ille imperandō, hī pārendō.

Practicing the language

- 1 Match each word in the top list with a word of similar meaning taken from the bottom list.

For example: aedificāre exstruere

aedificāre, epistula, festīnare, fidus, igitur, metus, nihilōminus, occīdere, poena, rūrsus, sermō, uxor

ergō, supplicium, autem, colloquium, interficere, litterae, exstruere, iterum, contendere, coniūnx, timor, fidēlis

- 2 Complete each sentence with the most suitable word from the box below, and then translate.

erit reperiēmus necābunt gaudēbit poteritis dabit

- a sī mēcum domum revēneris, frāter meus
- b sī dīligerter quaeſīverimus, equum āmissum mox
- c sī mea fīlia huic senī nūpsert, semper miserrima
- d mīlitēs sī urbem oppugnāvērunt, multōs cīvēs
- e sī patrōnus meus tē ad cēnam invitāverit, vīnum optimum tibi
- f sī ad forum hodiē ieritis, pompam spectāre

- 3 Translate each sentence into Latin by selecting correctly from the list of Latin words.

- a We were being hindered by shortage of water:

inopiae aquae impediēmur
inopiā aquā impediēbāmur

- b They were afraid that the robbers would return next day.

timēbant nōn latrōnī postrīdiē revenīrent
timēbunt nē latrōnēs cotīdiē revenīebant

- c As the enemy approached, I heard strange noises.

hostibus appropīquantibus sonitum mīrōs audītī
hostēs appropīquantēs sonitūs mīrum audīvī

- d We tried to set out at first light.

prīmam lūcem proficīscī cōnātus erāmus
prīmā lūce proficīscimur cōnātī sumus

- e Why do you promise what you cannot carry out?

cūr pollicēmur id quod suscipere nōn vultis?
ubi pollicēminī is quī efficere nusquam potestis?

About the language 3: more about indirect speech

- 1 Study the following examples:

dīcō testem mentīrī.

I say that the witness is lying.

rogāvīmus quis cibum reliquum cōnsūmpsisset.

We asked who had eaten the rest of the food.

duxnūntiāvit sociōs nōbīs mox subventūrōs esse.

The leader announced that our companions would soon come to our aid.

Each sentence contains

- a a verb of speaking, asking, etc., e.g. **dīcō**, **rogāvīmus**;
- b an indirect statement or indirect question.

Notice that in each example, the verb of speaking, asking, etc. is placed at the *beginning* of the sentence.

- 2 Compare the examples in paragraph 1 with the following sentences:

multōs barbarōs **dīcīmus** in proeliō cecidisse.

We say that many barbarians fell in the battle.

quid prīnceps cupiat, numquam **scīo**.

I never know what the emperor wants.

haruspex deōs nōbīs favēre **affīrmāvit**.

The soothsayer declared that the gods favored us.

In these examples, the verb of speaking, asking, knowing, etc. is placed in the *middle* or at the end of the sentence.

- 3 Read through each of the following sentences, noticing the position of the verb of speaking, asking, etc.; then translate the sentence.

a nūntiōs hostēs in eōdem locō manēre dīcit.

b quārē familiām convocāverīs, omnīnō ignōrō.

c togam tuam yīdī scissam esse.

d fabrōs opus iam perfēcissee audīvīmus.

e ubi rēs exercitūm suūm collocāvīset, incertum erat.

f ego vērō et gaudēo et gaudēre mē dīcō. (*Pliny*)

convocāverīs: convocāre call together

Divorce and remarriage

The Romans believed that the first divorce in Rome took place in about 230 BC, when the senator Spurius Carvilius, although he loved his wife deeply, divorced her because she was unable to have children.

The story of Carvilius' divorce may be partly or entirely fiction; it certainly cannot have happened in 230 BC, because laws about divorce appear as early as the Twelve Tables of 451 BC (see [page 97](#)). But the reason for Carvilius' divorce is a very typical one; it is the same reason as the one put forward by Turia on [page 155](#). Roman marriage was supposed to produce children. When a marriage ended in divorce, childlessness was the reason in many cases.

There were, of course, many other reasons why a husband or wife, or both, might decide to end a marriage. Continual bickering and disagreement, or objectionable behavior such as unfaithfulness or brutality, could all lead to divorce. Divorces were sometimes arranged for political reasons, especially in the first century BC; for example, an ambitious man might divorce his wife in order to remarry into a wealthier or more powerful family. In fact, however, no cause had to be given by either party for a marriage to be dissolved.

If a wife was under the legal control (**manus**) of her husband, he could divorce her but she could not divorce him. But if the marriage had taken place **sine manū** (see [pages 60–61](#)), the wife was free from her husband's legal control, and husband and wife each had the power to divorce the other (although if either of their fathers was alive they may have required his consent). In law, the child of a marriage belonged to the father and after divorce children remained in the household of the father.

There was no religious ban on divorce and no social stigma was attached to a divorced spouse. The only thing necessary for divorce, in the eyes of the law, was that the husband or wife, or both, had to demonstrate that they regarded the marriage as finished and intended to live separately in future; if one partner moved out of the marital house and began to live somewhere else, nothing else was legally required. But the husband and wife could also follow certain procedures, in action or in writing, to emphasize that they intended their separation to be permanent. In the early years of Rome's history, a husband could divorce his wife by addressing her, in front of witnesses, with the phrase **tuās rēs tibi habētō** (take your things and go)



A Roman couple.

or by demanding the return of the keys of the house. By the first century AD, these picturesque customs were no longer in common use; instead, one partner might send the other a written notification of divorce, or the husband and wife might make a joint declaration, either spoken before witnesses or put in writing, as in the following agreement, which was discovered on an Egyptian papyrus:

Zois, daughter of Heraclides, and Antipater, son of Zeno, agree that they have separated from each other, ending the marriage which they made in the seventeenth year of Augustus Caesar, and Zois acknowledges that she has received from Antipater by hand the goods which he was previously given as dowry, namely clothes to the value of 120 drachmas and a pair of gold earrings. Hereafter it shall be lawful both for Zois to marry another man and for Antipater to marry another woman without either of them being answerable.

It is difficult to discover how common divorce was in Rome. Among the richer classes, it may perhaps have reached

a peak in the first century BC, and then declined during the following century. (Nothing is known about the divorce rate of Rome's poor.) Some Roman writers speak as if divorce was rare in early Roman history but common in their own times. Juvenal says of one woman that she "wears out her wedding veil as she flits from husband to husband, getting through eight men in five years." But it is impossible to tell how much truth there is in Juvenal's description and how much is satirical exaggeration; nor do we know how typical such women were.

Any husband who was thinking of divorcing his wife had to bear in mind that he would have to return all or part of her **dōs**, or dowry, as in the papyrus document quoted above. This may have made some husbands have second thoughts about going ahead with a divorce.

Remarriage after divorce was frequent. "They marry in order to divorce; they divorce in order to marry," said one Roman writer. Remarriage was also common after the death of a husband or wife, especially if the surviving partner was still young. For example, a twelve-year-old girl who married an elderly husband might find herself widowed in her late teens, and if a wife died in childbirth, a man might become a widower within a year or two of the marriage, perhaps while he himself was still in his early twenties; in this situation, the idea of remarriage was often attractive and sensible for the surviving partner.

Nevertheless, the Romans had a special respect for women who married only once. They were known as **univirae** and had certain religious privileges; for a long time, they were the only people allowed to worship at the temple of Pudicitia (*Chastity*) and it was a Roman tradition for a bride to be undressed by univirae on her wedding night. Some women took great pride in the idea that they were remaining faithful to a dead husband, and the description *univira* is often found on tombstones.

The idea of being univira is sometimes used by Roman authors for the purposes of a story or poem. For example, the lady in the story on [pages 150–151](#) is so determined to remain loyal to her dead husband that she refuses to go on living after his death, until a twist in the story persuades her to change her mind. A similar idea provides the starting point of Book Four of Virgil's poem, the *Aeneid*. In an earlier part of the poem, the Trojan prince Aeneas had landed in Africa and been hospitably received by Dido, Queen of Carthage. The two are strongly attracted to each other, and Dido is very much moved by Aeneas' account of his adventures. Aeneas, however,



The death of Dido

is under orders from the gods to seek a new home in Italy, while Dido has sworn an oath of loyalty to her dead husband, binding herself like a Roman univira never to marry again; and so, although a love affair quickly develops between Dido and Aeneas, it ends in disaster and death.

Vocabulary checklist 43

aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum	<i>attack, make an attempt on</i>
bona, bonōrum, n. pl.	<i>goods, property</i>
contemnō, contemnere, contemp̄sī, contemptus	<i>despise, disregard</i>
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus	<i>carry out, carry away</i>
fidus, fida, fidum	<i>loyal, trustworthy</i>
inopia, inopiae, f.	<i>shortage, scarcity, poverty</i>
iuxta	<i>next to</i>
magistrātus, magistrātūs, m.	<i>elected government official</i>
negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus	<i>deny, say . . . not</i>
possideō, possidēre, possēdī, possessus	<i>possess</i>
propter (+ACC)	<i>because of</i>
repente	<i>suddenly</i>
mēnsis, mēnsis, m.	<i>month</i>
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum	<i>avenge, take revenge on</i>



Statue of a mourning woman.



DAEDALUS ET ICARUS

Stage 44

The following story is taken from Ovid's poem, the *Metamorphoses*, an immense collection of myths, legends, and folktales which begins with the creation of the world and ends in Ovid's own day.

I

Daedalus, who was famous as a craftsman and inventor, came from Athens to the island of Crete at the invitation of King Minos. The king, however, quarreled with him and refused to allow him and his son Icarus to leave the island.



Daedalus interea Crētēn longumque perōsus exilium, tāctusque locī nātālis amōre, clausus erat pelagō. “terrās licet” inquit “et undās obstruat, at caelum certē patet; Ibumus illāc! omnia possideat, nōn possidet āera Mīnōs.” dīxit et ignōtās* animū dīmittit in artēs, nātūramque novat. nam pōnit in ḍordine pennās, ut clīvō crēvisse putēs; sīc rūstica quondam fistula pipe disparibus paulātim surgit avēnīs.

*Some noun-and-adjective phrases, in which an adjective is separated by one word or more from the noun which it describes, are shown in boldface.

Crētēn (Greek accusative) *Crete*
perōsus *hating*
tāctus: tangere *touch, move*
locī nātālis: locus nātālis
place of birth, native land
clausus erat: claudere *cut off*
licet *although*
obstruat *he (i.e. Minos) may block my way through*
at *yet*
certē *at least*
patet: patēre *lie open*
illāc *by that way*
omnia possideat *he may possess everything (else)*
āera (accusative of āer) *air*
dīmittit: dīmittere *turn, direct*
novat: novāre *change, revolutionize*
pennās: penna *feather*
clīvō: clīvus *slope*
crēvisse: crēscere *grow*
crēvisse = pennās crēvisse
putēs *you would think*
sīc *in the same way*
rūstica: rūsticus *of a countryman*
quondam *sometimes*
fistula *pipe*
disparibus: dispār *of different length*
surgit: surgere *grow up, be built up*
avēnīs: avēna *reed*

Questions

- 1 Why was Daedalus eager to leave Crete?
- 2 Why was it difficult for him to get away?
- 3 What method of escape did he choose?
- 4 How did he set about preparing his escape?
- 5 What did the arrangement of feathers resemble?



Crete and the Greek Islands.

II

tum līnō mediās et cēris adligat īmās,
 atque ita compositās parvō curvāmine flectit,
 ut vērās imitētur avēs. puer Icarus ūnā
 stābat et, ignārus sua sē tractāre perīcla,
 ūre renīdentī modo, quās vaga mōverat aura,
 captābat plūmās, flāvam modo pollice cēram
 mollībat, lūsūque suō mīrabile patris
 impediēbat opus. postquam manus ultima coeptō
 imposta est, geminās opifex librāvit in ālās
 ipse suum corpus mōtāque peperdit in aurā.

5

10

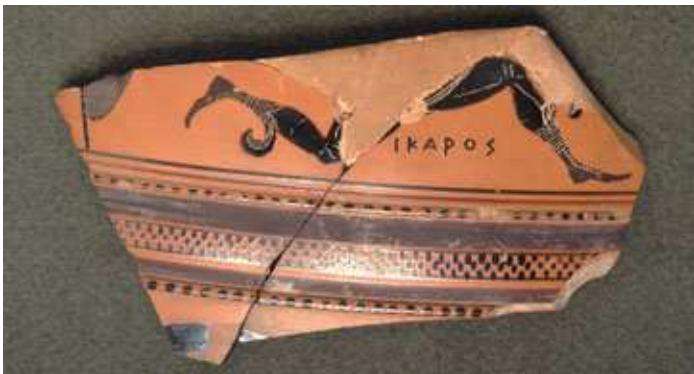
līnō: līnum *thread*
mediās (pennās) *the middle (of the feathers)*
īmās (pennās) *the bottom (of the feathers)*
curvāmine: curvāmen *curve*
flectit: flectere *bend*
ūnā *with him*
sua ... perīcla *cause of danger for himself (literally his own danger)*
tractāre *handle, touch*
ūre renīdentī *with smiling face*
modo ... modo *now ... now; sometimes ... sometimes*
aura *breeze*
plūmās: plūma *feather*
flāvam: flāvus *yellow, golden*
mollībat = molliēbat: mollīre *soften*
lūsū: lūsus *play, games*
manus ultima *final touch*
coeptō: coeptum *work, undertaking*
geminās ... ālās *the two wings*
opifex *inventor, craftsman*
librāvit: librāre *balance*
mōtā: mōtus *moving (literally moved, i.e. by the wings)*

Questions

- What materials did Daedalus use to fasten the feathers together? Where did he fasten them? What did he then do to the wings?
- In line 4, what was Icarus failing to realize?
- How did Icarus amuse himself while his father was working? Judging from lines 5–8, what age would you imagine Icarus to be?
- What actions of Daedalus are described in lines 9–10? Has the journey begun at this point?



"Daedalus Winged" by Michael Ayrton.



Fragment of a Greek painted vase.

III

Instruit et nātūm, “mediō” que “ut līmite currās, īcare,” ait “moneō, nē, sī dēmissior ībis, unda gravet pennās, sī celsior, ignis adūrat. inter utrumque volā! nec tē spectāre Boōtēn aut Helicēn iubeō strictumque Ōrionis ēensem: mē duce carpe viam!” pariter praecepta volandī trādit et ignōtās umerīs accommodat ālās.

- 5 **Instruit:** **instruere** equip, fit (with wings)
nātūm: **nātūs** son
Instruit et nātūm = et instruit nātūm
mediō ... līmite middle course
currās: **currere** go, fly
ait says
dēmissior lower; too low
pennās: **penna** wing
celsior higher, too high
ignis fire, heat of sun
adūrat: **adūrere** burn
volā: **volare** fly
Boōtēn (accusative of **Boōtēs**)
Herdsman (constellation)
Helicēn (accusative of **Boōtēs**) *Great Bear*
strictum: **stringere** draw, unsheathe
Ōrionis: **Ōrion** Orion, the Hunter
ēensem: **ēnsis** sword
carpe: **carpere** hasten upon
pariter at the same time
praecepta: **praeceptum** instruction
accommodat: **accommodāre** fasten

About the language 1: historical present

1 Study the following example:

fūr per fenestram intrāvit. circumspectavit; sed omnia tacita erant. subitō sonitū **audit;** ē tablīnō canis **sē praecipitat.** fūr effugere **cōnātur;** lātrat canis; **irrumpunt** servī et fūrem **comprehendunt.**

A thief entered through the window. He looked around; but all was silent. Suddenly he **hears** a noise; a dog **hurts** out of the study. The thief **tries** to escape; the dog **barks**; the slaves **rush in** and **seize** the thief.

2 Notice that all the verbs in the above example, after the first two sentences, are in the *present* tense, even though the event obviously happened in the past. This is known as the historical use of the present tense (**historical present** for short); it is often used by Roman writers to make the narration rather more lively and vivid, as if the action were happening before the reader's (or listener's) eyes.

3 The historical present in Latin can be translated *either* by an English present tense (as in the example in paragraph 1), *or* by a past tense.

4 Look again at lines 6–7 of Part 1 on [page 166](#). Which verbs in these two lines are in the historical present tense, and which in the perfect tense?

5 You have already met examples of the historical present in sentences containing the word **dum** (meaning *while*):

dum equitēs **morantur**, nūntius pīncipia irrūpit.

While the cavalry were delaying, a messenger burst into headquarters.

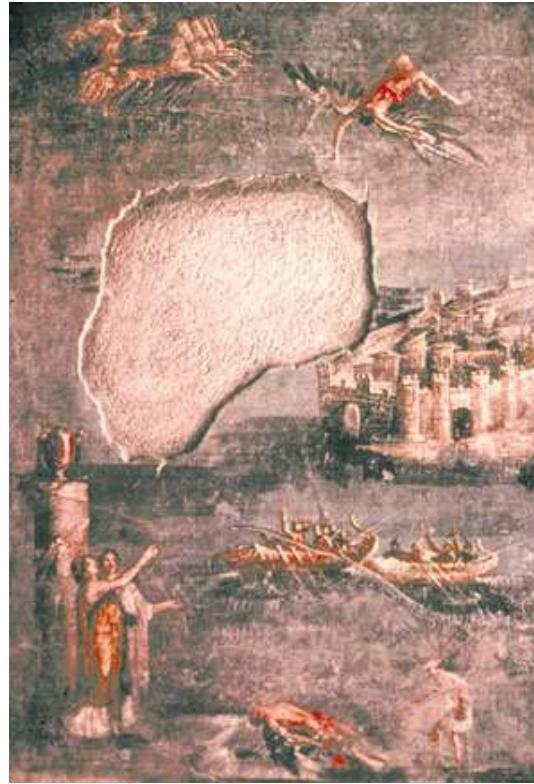
IV

inter opus monitūsque genae maduēre senīlēs,
et patriae tremuēre manūs. dedit ōscula nātō
nōn iterum repetenda suō pennīsque levātus
ante volat, comitīque timet, velut āles, ab altō
quae teneram prōlem prōdūxit in āera nīdō;
hortāturque sequī, damnōsāsque ērudit artēs,
et movet ipse suās et nātī respicit ālās.
hōs* aliquis, tremulā dum captat harundine piscēs,
aut pāstor baculō stīvāve innīxus arātor
vīdit* et obstipuit, quīque aethera carpere possent
rēdidit esse deōs.

5

inter during
monitūs: monitus warning, advice
genae: gena cheek
maduēre = maduērunt:
 madēscere become wet
senīlēs: senīlis old
patriae: patrius of the father
tremuēre = tremuērunt
nōn iterum repetenda never to be
 repeated, never to be sought
 again
levātus: levāre raise, lift up
ante in front
velut like
āles bird
teneram: tener tender, helpless
prōlem: prōlēs offspring, brood
prōdūxit: prōducere bring forward,
 bring out
damnōsās: damnōsus ruinous, fatal
ērudit: ērudire teach
tremulā: tremulus quivering
harundine: harundō rod
baculō: baculum stick, staff
stīvā: stīva plow handle
-ve or
innīxus: innītī lean on
obstipuit: obstipēscere gape in
 amazement
carpere hasten through, fly through

10



Wall painting of Daedalus and Icarus from Pompeii.

Questions

- A 1 What signs of emotion did Daedalus show while speaking to Icarus?
2 What was his last action before the journey began?
3 What is Daedalus compared to as he sets out on his flight?
- 4 Who witnessed the flight? What did they think of Daedalus and Icarus, and why?
- E 1 What do you think caused Daedalus' agitation in lines 1–2?
2 In what ways is the comparison in lines 4–5 appropriate?
3 Does Ovid suggest in any way that the journey will end in disaster?

*These two words go closely together.

V

et iam Iūnōnia laevā
 parte Samos (fuerant Dēlosque Parosque relictæ),
 dextra Lebinthos erat fēcundaque melle Calymne,
 cum puer audācī coepit gaudēre volātū
 dēseruitque ducem, caelique cupīdine tractus
 altius ēgit iter. rapidī vīcīnia sōlis
 mollit odōrātās, pennārum vincula, cērās.
 tābuerant cērae; nūdōs quatit ille lacertōs,
 rēmigīoque carēns nōn ullās percipit aurās.
 ūraque caeruleā patrium clāmantia nōmen
 excipiuntur aquā, quae nōmen trāxit ab illō.
 at pater īnfelīx nec iam pater “Icare,” dixit;
 “Icare,” dīxit, “ubi es? quā tē regiōne requīram?
 Icare,” dīcēbat; pennās aspexit in undīs,
 dēvōvitque suās artēs corporusque sepulcrō
 condidit, et tellūs ā nōmine dicta sepultū.

Iūnōnia: Iūnōius *sacred to Juno*
 laevā parte *on the left hand*
 -que ... -que *both ... and*
 dextra: dexter *on the right*
 fēcunda ... melle *rich in honey*
 gaudēre *be delighted*
 volātū: volātū *flying, flight*
 tractus: trahere *draw on, urge on*
 altius *higher, too high*
 ēgit iter: iter agere *make one's way, travel*
 rapidī: rapidus *blazing, consuming*
 vīcīnia *nearness*
 odōrātās: odōrātūs *sweet-smelling*
 vincula: vincula *fastenings*
 tābuerant: tābescere *melt*
 nūdōs: nūdus *bare*
 quatit: quatere *shake, flap*
 lacertōs: lacertus *arm*
 rēmigīo: rēmigium *wings (literally oars)*
 carēns: carēre *lack, be without*
 percipit: percipere *take hold of, get a grip on*
 ōra: ōs *mouth*
 caeruleā: caeruleus *dark blue, dark green*
 trāxit: trahere *draw, derive*
 nec iam *no longer*
 requīram: requīrere *search for*
 aspexit: aspicere *catch sight of*
 dēvōvit: dēvōvēre *curse*
 condidit: condere *bury*
 dicta = dicta est: dicere *call, name*
 sepultū: sepultus *the one who was buried*



“The Fall of Icarus” by Allegri.

Questions

- A 1 On the map on [page 167](#), find the point reached by Daedalus and Icarus in lines 1–3.
- 2 What mistake did Icarus make?
- 3 What effect did this have on his wings?
- 4 Where did he fall? What was he doing as he fell?
- 5 How did Daedalus learn of his son’s fate? What did he do then?
- F 1 Why did Icarus not obey his father’s instructions?
- 2 What effect is gained by describing Daedalus as **pater ... nec iam pater** in line 12?
- 3 After reading this story, what impression do you have of the different personalities of Daedalus and Icarus?

About the language 2: ellipsis

1 From Stage 13 on, you have met sentences like this:

Britannī cibum laudāvērunt, Rōmānī vīnum.

The Britons praised the food, the Romans (praised) the wine.

2 From Stage 15 on, you met a slightly different type of sentence:

Britannī cibum, Rōmānī vīnum laudāvērunt.

3 Compare the examples in paragraphs 1 and 2 with a longer way of expressing the same idea:

Britannī cibum laudāvērunt, Rōmānī vīnum laudāvērunt.

This kind of sentence is grammatically correct, but is not often used in Latin; the Romans would normally prefer the shorter versions in paragraphs 1 and 2, to avoid repeating the word **laudāvērunt**.

4 Sentences similar to the ones in paragraphs 1 and 2 are very common in Latin.

Study the following examples, which you have met in Stages 36 and 44:

Thāis habet nigrōs, niveōs Laecānia dentēs.

Thais has black teeth, Laecania has white ones.

(Compare this with a longer way of expressing the same idea:

Thāis dentēs nigrōs habet, Laecānia dentēs niveōs habet.)

et movet ipse suās et nātī respicit ālās.

He both moves his own wings himself and looks back at the wings of his son.

(Compare: et ipse suās ālās movet et ālās nātī respicit.)

The omission of words seen in the above examples is known as **ellipsis**.

5 Further examples:

a centuriō gladium, mīles hastam gerēbat.

(Compare: centuriō gladium gerēbat, mīles hastam gerēbat.)

b hic caupō vēndit optimum, ille vīnum pessimum.

(Compare: hic caupō vīnum optimum vēndit, ille caupō vīnum pessimum vēndit.)

c nōs in urbe, vōs prope mare habitātis.

d altera fēmina quīnque līberōs habēbat, altera nūllōs.

e dīvitīas quaerit senex, spernit iuvenis.

f ēnumerat mīles vulnera, pāstor ovēs. (*Propertius*)

g culpāvit dominus, laudāvit domina vīlicum.

h nōn semper viātōrēs ā latrōnibus, aliquandō latrōnēs ā viātōribus occīduntur.

ēnumerat: ēnumerāre *count*

viātōrēs: viātor *traveler*

Practicing the language

1 In Stage 42, the different ways of translating **ēmittere**, **petere**, and **referre** were practiced. Another verb with a wide variety of translations is **solvere**, which you have often met with the meaning “untie” but which can be translated in many other ways as well. Match each of the phrases in the left-hand column with the correct English translation from the right-hand column.

nāvem solvere	<i>relaxed by the wine</i>
catēnās ex aliquō solvere	<i>to discharge a promise made to the gods</i>
vīnō solūtus	<i>to set out on a voyage</i>
aenigma solvere	<i>to settle a debt</i>
margarītam in acētō solvere	<i>to free somebody from chains</i>
pecūniā solvere	<i>to solve a puzzle</i>
vōtum solvere	<i>to dissolve a pearl in vinegar</i>

Suggest reasons why the Romans used **solvere** in all these phrases: is there any connection in meaning between them?

2 In each pair of sentences, translate the first sentence; then with the help of [pages 258–259](#) and [270](#) express the same idea in a passive form by completing the noun and verb in the second sentence in the correct way, and translate again.

For example: hostēs nōs circumveniēbant.
ab host. . . circumveni. . .

Translated and completed, this becomes:

hostēs nōs circumveniēbant.
The enemy were surrounding us.
ab hostibus circumveniēbāmūr.
We were being surrounded by the enemy.

- a cūr artifex tē culpābat?
cūr ā artif. . . culp. . . ?
- b optimē labōrāvistis, puerī; vīlicus vōs certē laudābit.
optimē labōrāvistis, puerī; ā vīlic. . . certē laud. . .
- c moritūrus sum; amīcī mē in hōc locō sepelient.
moritūrus sum; ab amīc. . . in hōc locō sepel. . .
- d soror mē cotidiē vīsitat.
ā sorōr. . . cotidiē vīsit. . .
- e barbarī nōs interficient.
ā barbar. . . interfici. . .

3 Complete each sentence by describing the word in **boldface** with the correct form of a suitable adjective from the box below. Refer to [page 260-261](#) if necessary. Do not use any adjective more than once.

īrātus	ingēns	fortis	pulcher	magnus
fēlīx	longus	audāx	gravis	

- a dominus **ancillās** arcessīvit.
- b iuvenis pecūniām **senī** reddidit.
- c sacerdōtēs **templum** intrāvērunt.
- d dux virtūtem **militum** laudāvit.
- e cīvēs **spectāculo** dēlectātī sunt.
- f centuriō, **hastā** armātus, extrā carcerem stābat.

4 Complete each sentence with the correct infinitive or group of words from the list below, and then translate.

nūllam pecūniām habēre
per hortūm suūm flūxisse
scrīptam esse
aedificārī
equum occīsūrōs esse

- a nūntius sciēbat epistolam ab Imperātōre
- b senex affirmāvit sē
- c rēx crēdēbat leōnēs
- d agricola querēbāt multam aquam
- e puer dīxit novum templum

About the language 3: syncope

1 In Stage 6, you met the 3rd person plural of the perfect tense:

cīvēs gladiātōrem **incitāvērunt**.

The citizens urged the gladiator on.

2 From Stage 36 on, you have met examples like this:

centū mē **tetigēre** manū.

A hundred hands touched me.

clientēs patrōnum **salūtāvēre**.

The clients greeted their patron.

In these examples, the 3rd person plural of the perfect tense ends in **-ēre** instead of **-ērunt**. The meaning is unchanged. This way of forming the 3rd person plural is especially common in verse, and is called **syncope**.

3 Translate the following:

- a servī contrā dominū coniūrāvēre.
- b in illō proeliō multī barbarī periēre.
- c coniūnxēre; ēriputēre; perdiidēre; respexēre; studuēre.



"Icarus at the Climax"
by Michael Ayrton..

Icarus in art

The story of Daedalus and Icarus has inspired many artists. The oldest surviving version of the story in picture form comes from Greece: a small fragment of a painted vase (see [page 170](#)) shows the lower edge of a tunic, two legs wearing winged boots, and the inscription I K A P O Σ (*Ikaros*). The vase was made in the middle of the sixth century BC, more than five hundred years earlier than Ovid's version of the story.

Daedalus and Icarus also appear in wall paintings excavated at Pompeii. One of these paintings is shown on [page 173](#). The figure of Daedalus flying in the center has been almost entirely lost because of the hole in the painting, and only the wing tips are visible. Icarus, however, appears twice, once at the top near the sun, and again at the bottom where Daedalus is shown burying his son. The bystanders gaze skywards in wonder, as in Ovid's account (**Part IV**, line 10). The sun is shown not as a ball of fire but as a god driving his chariot and horses across the sky.

The works reproduced on pages [169](#) and [180](#) are by the twentieth-century artist Michael Ayrton. Ayrton was fascinated by the story of Daedalus and Icarus, and came back to it again and again during a period of several years. He created a large number of drawings, reliefs, and sculptures dealing not only with the making of the wings and the fall of Icarus, but also with other details of the Daedalus story, such as the maze that Daedalus built in Crete, and the monstrous half-man, half-bull known as the Minotaur, who lived at the center of the maze. Ayrton also retold the Daedalus story in his own words in two novels.

"The Fall of Icarus," reproduced on [page 177](#), is by Allegri (1491–1534), a Renaissance painter. Here, against a strong atmospheric sky, Daedalus looks back in horror at the sight of Icarus tumbling headlong. Like the onlookers in Ovid's version (**Part IV**, line 10), the people in the foreground gape in consternation, but, unlike the onlookers in Ovid's version, these people are witnesses of the tragedy and gesticulate in dread.

In the middle of the sixteenth century, Pieter Bruegel (1525–1569), a Flemish artist, painted the picture which is reproduced on [page 183](#). Some of the details of Bruegel's "Landscape with the Fall of Icarus" are very close to Ovid's account; the plowman leaning on his plow, the shepherd with his staff, and the fisherman (**Part IV**, lines 8–9) are all there. In other ways, however, Bruegel's treatment of the story is unusual

and at first sight surprising. Bruegel's bystanders, for example, are behaving very differently from those in Ovid's account. As the legs of Icarus disappear into the water, Bruegel's people are either unaware of or indifferent to the tragedy. In the face of the vastness of nature and the indifference of people, human aspirations are futile.

Just as the story of Daedalus and Icarus, as told by Ovid and other writers, became a subject for many artists, so Bruegel's painting, in turn, inspired the following poem by W. H. Auden. Auden's title, *Musée des Beaux Arts*, refers to the gallery in Brussels (Belgium) where Bruegel's painting is hung.

Musée des Beaux Arts

About suffering they were never wrong,
The Old Masters: how well they understood
Its human position; how it takes place
While someone else is eating or opening a window or just
 walking dully along;
How, when the aged are reverently, passionately waiting
For the miraculous birth, there always must be
Children who did not specially want it to happen, skating
On a pond at the edge of the wood:
They never forgot
That even the dreadful martyrdom must run its course
Anyhow in a corner, some untidy spot
Where the dogs go on with their doggy life and the
 torturer's horse
Scratches its innocent behind on a tree.

In Bruegel's Icarus, for instance: how everything turns away
Quite leisurely from the disaster; the ploughman may
Have heard the splash, the forsaken cry,
But for him it was not an important failure; the sun shone
As it had to on the white legs disappearing into the green
Water; and the expensive delicate ship that must have seen
Something amazing, a boy falling out of the sky,
Had somewhere to get to and sailed calmly on.



"Landscape with the Fall of Icarus" by Bruegel.

Vocabulary checklist 44

aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectus	look towards, catch sight of
coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus	join
coniūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī	plot
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī	grow
cupīdō, cupidinis, f.	desire
fēlix, gen. fēlicis	lucky, happy
licet, licēre	be allowed
mīhi licet	I am allowed
paulātīm	gradually
studeō, studēre, studūt	study
tellūs, tellūris, f.	land, earth
ūnā cum	together with
uterque, utraque, utrumque	both, each of two
vinculum, vinculūt, n.	fastening, chain



A fisherman.



LESBIA

Stage 45

Some of Catullus' most famous poems are concerned with a woman to whom he gave the name "Lesbia." Stage 45 contains eight of the Lesbia poems.

I

ille mī pār esse deō vidētur,
ille, sī fās est, superāre dīvōs,
quī sedēns adversus identidem tē
spectat et audit

dulce rīdentem, **miserō*** quod omnēs
ēripit sēnsūs **mihi**: nam simul tē,
Lesbia, aspexī, nihil est super mī
vōcis in ōre,

lingua sed torpet, tenuis sub artūs
flamma dēmānat, sonitū suōpte
tintinant aurēs, **geminā** teguntur
lūmina nocte.

ōtium, Catulle, tibi molestum est:
ōtio exsultās nimiumque gestīs:
ōtium et rēgēs prius et bēatās
perdidit urbēs.

mī = mihi

fās right

superāre surpass

adversus opposite

dulce sweetly

5 quod (a thing) which

sēnsūs: sēnsus sense

simul = simulac

nihil ... vōcis no voice

est super = superstes: superesse

remain, be left

10 torpet: torpēre be paralyzed

tenuis thin, subtle

sub to the depths of

artūs: artus limb

dēmānat: dēmānare flow down

suōptē = suō

15 tintinant: tintināre ring

geminā: geminus twofold, double

teguntur: tegere cover

lūmina eyes

exsultās: exsultāre get excited

gestīs: gestīre become restless

prius before now

bēatās: bēatus prosperous, wealthy

Questions

- 1 Why does Catullus regard **ille** (lines 1 and 2) as fortunate? Why does he regard himself as **miserō** (line 5)?
- 2 **omnēs ēripit sēnsūs** (lines 5–6): give an example of this from lines 7–12.
- 3 What warning does Catullus give himself in lines 13–16? Do you think these lines follow on naturally from lines 1–12, or are they a separate topic?

* Some noun-and-adjective phrases, in which an adjective is separated by one word or more from the noun which it describes, are shown in **boldface**.



A girl picking flowers.

III

vīvāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus,
rūmōrēsque senum sevēriōrum
omnēs ūnius aestimēmus assis!
sōlēs occidere et redire possunt:
nōbīs, cum semel occidit brevis lūx,
nox est perpetua ūna dormienda.
dā mī bāsia mīlle, deinde centum,
dein mīlle altera, dein secunda centum,
deinde usque altera mīlle, deinde centum,
dein, cum mīlia multa fēcerīmus,
conturbābimus illa, nē scīāmus,
aut nē quis malus invidēre possit,
cum tantum sciat esse bāsīōrum.

vīvāmus *let us live*
 rūmōrēs *gossip*
sevēriōrum: sevērior *over-strict*
 ūnius ... assis *at a single as (smallest*
 5 *Roman coin)*
aestimēmus: aestimāre *value*
 semel *once*
 est ... dormienda *must be slept*
through
 10 bāsia: bāsium *kiss*
 dein = deinde
 usque altera *yet another*
 conturbābimus: conturbāre
mix up, lose count of
 nē quis *in case anyone*
 invidēre *cast an evil eye*
 tantum *so much, such a large number*

Questions

- Who, according to Catullus, might be making comments about him and Lesbia? What does he think he and Lesbia should do about these comments?
 - What contrast does Catullus draw between **sôles** (line 4) and **nôs (nôbîs**, line 5)?
 - What have lines 7–9 got to do with lines 4–6?
 - Why does Catullus suggest in line 11 that he and Lesbia should deliberately lose count?



vīvāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus!

About the language 1: more about the subjunctive

1 Study the following examples:

vīvāmus atque amēmus! *Let us live and let us love!*

nē dēspērēmus! *Let us not despair!*

aut vincāmus aut vincāmur! *Let us either conquer or be conquered!*

In these sentences, the speaker is ordering or encouraging himself and one or more other people to do something. The 1st person plural form (“we”) is used, and the verb is in the present tense of the subjunctive. This is known as the **hortatory** use of the subjunctive.

Further examples:

- a in mediā pugnam ruāmus!
- b nē haesitēmus!
- c sociōs nostrōs adiuvēmus.
- d opus perficiāmus.
- e gaudeāmus igitur, iuvenēs dum sumus.
- f flammās extingue cōnēmur!

2 The subjunctive can also be used in a 3rd person form of the verb (“he,” “she,” “it,” or “they”):

omnēs captīvi interficiantur!

Let all the prisoners be killed!

Or,

All the prisoners are to be killed.

Let him not look back!

Or,

He is not to look back.

This is known as the **jussive subjunctive**.

Further examples:

- a statim redeat!
- b sit amīctia inter nōs et vōs.
- c pŕimum taurus sacrificētur; deinde precēs Iovī adhibeantur.

3 Occasionally, the jussive subjunctive is used in a 2nd person command (“you”):

dēsinās querī. *You should stop complaining.*

But it is far more common for Latin to use the imperative:

dēsine querī! *Stop complaining!*

III

lügēte, ð Venerēs Cupīdinēsque,
et quantum est hominū venustiōrum!
passer mortuus est meae puellae,
passer, dēliciae meae puellae,
quem plūs illa oculī suīs amābat.
nam mellitus erat suamque nōrat
ipsam tam bene quam puella mātrem,
nec sēs ā gremiō illius movēbat,
sed circumsiliēns modo hūc modo illūc
ad sōlam dominam usque pīpiābat;
quī nunc it per iter tenebricōsum
illūc, unde negant redire quemquam.
at vōbīs male sit, malaē tenebrae
Orcī, quae omnia bella dēvorātis:
tam bellum mihi passerem abstulistis.
ð factum male! ð miselle passer!
tuā nunc operā, meae puellae
flendō turgidulī rubent ocellī.

5

10

15



Venerēs Cupīdinēsque

gods and goddesses of love,
Venus and Cupids

quantum est all the company
(literally as much as there is)

venustiōrum: venustus tender, loving
passer sparrow

mellitus sweet as honey

nōrat = nōverat

ipsam: ipsa mistress

tam ... quam as ... as

sēsē = sē

gremiō: gremium lap

circumsiliēns: circumsilire hop around

usque continually

tenebricōsum: tenebricōsus

dark, shadowy

quemquam: quisquam anyone

vōbīs male sit curses on you

Orcī: Orcus the underworld, Hell

ð factum male! Oh dreadful deed!

(literally Oh dreadfully done!)

miselle: misellus wretched little

tuā ... operā by your doing, because of you

turgidulī: turgidulus swollen

rubent: rubēre be red

ocellī: ocellus poor eye, little eye

Questions

- 1 What has happened?
- 2 Who are asked to mourn in line 1? Why are they appropriate mourners on this occasion?
- 3 Is Catullus chiefly concerned about the death, or about something else?
- 4 Why does he speak as if he had been bereaved (**mihi**, line 15)?
- 5 Compare the two descriptions of the sparrow in (a) lines 8–10, (b) lines 11–12. Do they sound equally serious, or is one of the descriptions slightly comic? How serious is the poem as a whole?

IV

nūlli sē dīcit mulier mea nūbere mālle
 quam mihi, nōn sī sē Iuppiter ipse petat.
 dīcit: sed mulier **cupidō** quod dīcit **amantī**,
 in ventō et rapida scribere oportet aquā.

Questions

- What does Lesbia say in lines 1–2? Why does the mention of Jupiter imply a compliment to Catullus?
- What would be the best translation for the first **dīcit** in line 3?
 - a “She says”
 - b “She says so”
 - c “That’s what she says”
 - d “That’s what she says” or none of these?
- What comment does Catullus then make about Lesbia’s remark?
- What does he mean? Does he mean, for example, that women can’t be trusted? Or is he suggesting something more precise than that? Is he being cynical or fair-minded?



Wall painting of lovers.

nūlli used as dative of **nēmō**
mulier woman
nōn sī not even if
sed mulier ... quod dīcit = sed quod
mulier ... dīcit
cupidō: cupidus eager, passionate
amantī: amāns lover
rapida: rapidus rushing, racing

V

dīcēbās quondam **sōlum** tē nōsse **Catullum**,
 Lesbia, nec prae mē velle tenēre lovem.
 dīlēxī tum tē nōn tantum ut vulgus amīcam,
 sed pater ut gnātōs dīligit et generōs.
 nunc tē cognōvī: quārē etsī impēnsius ūror,
 multō mī tamen es vīlīor et levior.
 quī potis est, inquis? quod amantem iniūria tālis
 cōgit amāre magis, sed bene velle minus.

nōsse = nōvisse
prae instead of, rather than
tenēre possess
vulgus the ordinary man, the common man
amīcam: amīca mistress, girlfriend
gnātōs = nātōs
quārē and so
etsī although, even if
impēnsius: impēnsē strongly, violently
ūror: ūrere burn (with passion)
levior: levis worthless
quī potis est? how is that possible?
 how can that be?
bene velle like, be friendly

5

Questions

- What statement by Lesbia does Catullus recall in lines 1–2? What were his feelings about her at that time, according to lines 3–4?
- What is the point of the comparison in line 4?
- Explain what Catullus means by **nunc tē cognōvī** (line 5). In what way has his discovery affected his feelings for Lesbia? Why has it had this effect?

About the language 2: more about relative pronouns

1 From Unit 3 on, you have met sentences in which forms of the pronoun is are used as antecedents of the relative pronoun **qui**:

is *qui nūper servus erat* nunc dīvītissimus est.
He who was recently a slave is now extremely rich.

id *quod mihi nārrāvistī* numquam patefaciam.
That which you have told me I shall never reveal.

Or, in more natural English:

I shall never reveal what you have told me.

dominus *eōs* pūniēt *qui* pecūniām āmīsērunt.
The master will punish those who lost the money.

Notice that in these sentences the antecedent (in **boldface**) comes *before* the relative clause (*italicized*).

Further examples:

- a id quod dīcis vērum est.
- b is *qui* rēgem vulnerāvit celeriter fūgit.
- c nūllum praemium dabitur eīs *qui* officium neglegunt.

2 You have also met sentences like these, in which the antecedent comes *after* the relative clause:

qui auxiliū mihi prōmīsērunt, *eī* mē iam dēserunt.
Those who promised me help are now deserting me.

quod potuimus, **id** fēcimus.
That which we could do, we did.

Or, in more natural English:

We did what we could.

Further examples:

- a quod saepe rogāvistī, ecce! id tibi dō.
- b quōd per tōtūm orbēm terrārum quaerēbam, *eī* in hāc urbe inventī sunt.

3 In Stages 41–45, you have met sentences in which the antecedent is omitted altogether:

quod mulier dīcit amantī, in ventō scrībere oportet.
What a woman says to her lover should be written on the wind.

qui numquam timet stultus est.
He who is never frightened is a fool.

qui speciem amīctiae praebent nōn semper fidēlēs sunt.
Those who put on an appearance of friendship are not always faithful.

Further examples:

- a quod suscēpī, effēcī.
- b quae tū mihi heri dedistī, tibi crās reddam.
- c *qui* multum habet plūs cupit.
- d quod sentīmus loquāmur.
- e *qui* rēs adversās fortiter patiuntur, maximam laudem merent.

laudem: laus *praise, fame*



VI

ōdī et amō. quārē id faciam, fortasse requīris.
nescio, sed fierī sentiō et excrucior.

requīris: requīrere *ask*

Do the first three words of this poem make sense? Does Catullus mean that he hates at some times and loves at others, or that he hates and loves simultaneously?

VII

miser Catulle, dēsinās ineptīre,
et quod vidēs perīsse perditum dūcās.
fulsēre quondam candidī tibi sōlēs,
cum ventitābās quō puella dūcēbat
amāta nōbīs quantum amābitur nūlla.
ibi illa multa cum iocōsa fīebant,
quae tū volēbās nec puella nōlēbat,
fulsēre vērē candidī tibi sōlēs.

nunc iam illa nōn volt: tū quoque impotēns nōlī,
nec quae fugit sectāre, nec miser vīve,
sed obstinātā mente perfer, obdūrā.

valē, puella. iam Catullus obdūrat,
nec tē requīret nec rogābit invītam.
at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.
scelestā, vae tē, quae tibi manet vīta?
quis nunc tē adībit? cui vidēberis bella?
quem nunc amābis? cuius esse dīcēris?
quem bāsiābis? cui labella mordēbis?
at tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā.

Questions

- Explain the advice which Catullus gives himself in lines 1–2. What English proverb corresponds to the idea expressed in line 2?
- Does line 3 simply mean that it was fine weather?
- Which word in line 9 contrasts with **quondam** (line 3)?
- What future does Catullus foresee in lines 14–15?
- On the evidence of lines 12–19, does Catullus seem capable of following his own advice? Give reasons for your view.
- What is the mood of the poem? Sad, angry, bitter, determined, resigned? Does the mood change during the course of the poem? If so, where and in what way?

ineptīre *be a fool*
perditum: perditus *completely lost, gone forever*
dūcās: dūcere *consider*
candidī: candidus *bright*
ventitābās: ventitare *often go, go repeatedly*
5 nōbīs = mihi *by me*
quantum *as, as much as*
ibi *then, in those days*
illa multa cum ... fīebant = cum illa multa ... fīebant
10 iocōsa *moments of fun, moments of pleasure*
vērē *truly*
nunc iam *now however; as things are now*
volt = vult
15 impotēns *being helpless, being powerless*
sectāre *(imperative of **sectāri**) chase after*
perfer: perferre *endure*
obdūrā: obdūrare *be firm*
requīret: requīrere *go looking for*
nūlla: nūllus *not at all*
scelestā: *scelestus* *wretched*
vae tē! *alas for you!*
bāsiābis: bāsiāre *kiss*
labella: *labellum* *lip*
mordēbis: mordēre *bite*
dēstinātus *determined*

VIII

In the first four stanzas of this poem, given here in translation, Catullus describes the loyalty and friendship of Furius and Aurelius:

Furius and Aurelius, comrades of Catullus,
whether he journeys to furthest India,
whose shores are pounded by far-resounding
Eastern waves,

or whether he travels to soft Arabia,
to Persia, Scythia, or the arrow-bearing Parthians,
or the plains which are darkened by the seven mouths
of the River nile,

or whether he crosses the lofty Alps,
visiting the scene of great Caesar's triumphs,
over the Rhine and the ocean, to Britain on the
edge of the world,

ready to join in any adventure,
whatever the will of the gods may bring,
carry a few bitter words
to my girl.

The poem's last two stanzas are Catullus' message:

cum suīs vīvat valeatque moechīs,
quōs simul complexa tenet trecentōs,
nūllum amāns vērē, sed identidem omnium
īlia rumpēns;

nec meum respectet, ut ante, amōrem,
qui illius culpā cecidit velut prātī
ultimī flōs, praeterēunte postquam
tāctus arātrō est.



5

10

15

20

valeat: valēre *thrive, prosper*
moechīs: moechus *lover; adulterer*
complexa: complecti *embrace*
trecentōs: trecenti *three hundred*
īlia: *īlia* *groin*
rumpēns: rumpere *burst, rupture*
respectet: respectare *look towards, count on*
illius culpā *through her fault, thanks to her*
cecidit: cadere *die*
prātī: prātūm *meadow*
ultimī: ultimus *farthest, at the edge*

Questions

- Why does Catullus spend so much of this poem describing Furius' and Aurelius' loyalty?
- What is the gist of the message which he asks them to deliver?
- What phrases or words in lines 17 and 19 remind you of other poems by Catullus that you have read?
- "His final goodbye to Lesbia." Do you think this is an accurate description of the last two stanzas?

Practicing the language

1 Match each word in the top list with a word of opposite meaning taken from the bottom list.

For example: amor odium

amor, celeriter, dare, dēmittere, hiems, impedīre, incipere,
lūgēre, multō, poena, salūs, tenebrae

tollere, adiuvāre, gaudēre, paulō, odium, perīculum, lūx,
dēsinere, aestās, accipere, lentē, praemium

2 Translate the first sentence of each pair. Then change it from a direct question to an indirect question by completing the second sentence with the correct form of the present subjunctive active or passive. Finally, translate the second sentence.

For example: *cūr semper errātis?*

dicte nōbīs cūr semper . . .

Translated and completed, this becomes:

cūr semper errātis?

Why are you always wandering around?

dicte nōbīs cūr semper errētis.

*Tell us why you are always wandering
around.*

The active and passive forms of the present subjunctive are given on [pages 272–273](#). You may also need to consult the Vocabulary at the end to find which conjugation a verb belongs to.

- a ubi habitās?
dic mihi ubi . . .
- b quō captīvī illī dūcuntur?
scīre volō quō captīvī illī . . .
- c quot fundōs possideō?
oblītus sum quot fundōs . . .
- d quid quaerimus?
tibi dīcere nōlūmus quid . . .
- e novumne templum aedificātur?
incertus sum num novum templum . . .
- f cūr in hōc locō sedētis?
explicāte nōbīs cūr in hōc locō . . .

3 Complete each sentence with the correct word or phrase and then translate.

- a dēnique poēta . . . surrēxit. (ad recitandum, ad dormiendum)
- b nūntius, celeriter . . . , mox ad castra pervēnit. (scrībendō, equitandō)
- c captīvī, quī nūllam spem . . . habēbant, dēspērābant. (coquendī, effugiendī)
- d omnēs hospitēs in triclinium . . . contendērunt. (ad cēnandum, ad pugnandum)
- e senex, quī procul ā marī habitābat, artem . . . numquam didicerat. (nāvigandī, spectandī)
- f pater meus, dīligenter . . . , tandem magnās dīvitiās adeptus est. (labōrandō, bibendō)

About the language 3: more about the dative case

1 In Stage 9, you met the dative case used in sentences like this:

pater nōbīs dōnum ēmit.

*Father bought a present **for us**.*

This use of the dative is sometimes described as the **dative of advantage**.

2 In Unit 4, you have met the dative used in sentences like these:

Fortūna mihi frātrem ēripuit.

*Fortune has snatched my brother away **from me**.*

tenebrae Orcī eī passerem.

*The shades of Hell stole the sparrow **from her**.*

This use of the dative is sometimes described as the **dative of disadvantage**.

Further examples:

- a für mihi multam pecūniām abstulit.
- b barbarī eīs cibūm ēripuērunt.
- c Rōmanī nōbīs libertātem auferre cōnantur.

Catullus and Lesbia

The real identity of “Lesbia” is uncertain, but there are reasons for thinking that she was a woman named Clodia. Clodia came from the aristocratic family of the Claudi (who used a different spelling of their name), and was married to Metellus, a wealthy and distinguished noble. She was an attractive, highly educated woman, whose colorful lifestyle caused continual interest and gossip at Rome. Among the other rumors that circulated around her, she was said to have murdered her husband and committed incest with her brother.

One of Clodia’s lovers was the lively and talented Marcus Caelius Rufus. Their relationship lasted for about two years, before being broken off by Caelius. There was a violent quarrel; and Clodia, furious and humiliated, was determined to revenge herself. She launched a prosecution against Caelius, alleging (among other things) that he had robbed her and attempted to poison her.



Mars and Venus.

Clodia, in spite of her doubtful reputation, was a powerful and dangerous enemy, with many influential friends, and the prosecution was a serious threat to Caelius. To defend himself against her charges, he turned to various friends, including Rome’s leading orator, Cicero. Not only was Cicero a close friend of Caelius, but he had a bitter and long-running feud with Clodia’s brother Clodius.

Some of the charges were dealt with by other speakers for the defense; Cicero’s job was to deal with Clodia’s allegations of theft and poisoning. It would not be enough to produce arguments and witnesses; Clodia herself had to be discredited and (if possible) made to look ridiculous, if a verdict of “not guilty” was to be achieved.



*“Lesbia and her Sparrow”
by Poynter. Which aspects
of her character does the
artist capture?*

The following paragraphs are from Cicero's speech in defense of Caelius:

Two charges in particular have been made: theft and attempted murder, and both charges involve the same individual. It is alleged that the gold was stolen from Clodia, and that the poison was obtained for administering to Clodia. The rest of the chief prosecutor's speech was not a list of charges, but a string of insults, more suitable to a vulgar slanging-match than a court of law. When the prosecutor calls my client "adulterer, fornicator, swindler," these are not accusations, but mere abuse. Such charges have no foundation; they are wild mud-slinging, by an accuser who has lost his temper and has no one to back him up.

But when we come to the charges of theft and attempted murder, we have to deal not with the prosecutor but the person behind him. In speaking of these charges, gentlemen of the jury, my concern is wholly with Clodia, a lady who possesses not only nobility of birth but also a certain notoriety. However, I shall say nothing about her except in connection with the charges against my client. I should be more energetic and forceful in speaking about Clodia, but I do not wish to seem influenced by political dispute with her husband – I mean her brother, of course (I'm always making that mistake). I shall speak in moderate language, and will go no further than I am obliged by my duty to my client and the facts of the case: for I have never felt it right to argue with a woman, especially with one who has always been regarded not as any man's enemy but as *every* man's friend ...

I shall name no names, but suppose there were a woman, unmarried, blatantly living the life of a harlot both here in the city and in the public gaze of the crowded resort of Baiae, flaunting her behavior not only by her attitude and her appearance, not only by her passionate glances and her insolent tongue, but by lustful embraces, drinking sessions, and beach parties, so that she seemed to be not merely a harlot, but a harlot of the lewdest and most lascivious description – suppose that a young man,



An interpretation of Lesbia by Weguelin in a statuesque pose with sparrows at her feet.

like my client, were to associate with such a woman; do you seriously claim that he would be seducing an innocent victim? ...

I was present, gentlemen, and indeed it was perhaps the saddest and bitterest occasion of my whole life, when Quintus Metellus, who only two days previously had been playing a leading part in the political life of our city, a man in the prime of his years, in the best of health and at the peak of his physical strength, was violently, suddenly, shockingly taken from us. How can the woman, who comes from that house of crime, now dare to speak in court about the rapid effects of poison?

Caelius was acquitted. Nothing is known of Clodia's later fate.

Catullus' poems, whether about Lesbia or not, display an intensity of feeling and a mastery of different meters. These characteristics put Catullus' poetry firmly in the lyric genre. In Greek poetry this term applied originally to songs which were accompanied by music ("poetry sung to the lyre") and which expressed the personal sentiments of the poets, as distinct from the objectivity of, for example, epic or dramatic poetry. The adoption of the Greek lyric meters into Latin presented great difficulty. However, Catullus and, later, Horace were successful enough to become the two chief Roman lyric poets. Latin lyric poetry differed from Greek lyric in that it was written to be recited or read instead of sung to music. However, the Roman poets did continue the elements which still characterize lyric poetry in its wider meaning today: melodic poetry written in an intensely personal and direct style.



Statue from the second century AD. This respectable Roman matron's face and Flavian hairstyle contrast strikingly with her naked body and Venus-like pose.

Vocabulary checklist 45

aestās, aestātis, f.	summer
candidus, candida, candidum	bright, shining
culpa, culpae, f.	blame
fleō, flēre, flēvī	weep
modo ... modo	now ... now; sometimes ... sometimes
mulier, mulieris, f.	woman
orbis, orbis, m.	circle, globe world
orbis terrārum	leisure
ōtium, ōtiī, n.	anyone, anything
quisquam, quicquam	break, split
rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus	appearance
species, speciēi, f.	cover
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus	thin
tenuis, tenuis, tenuē	



Wall painting of cupids playing.



CLADES

Stage 46

Pliny wrote two letters to the historian Tacitus giving an eyewitness account of the eruption of Mount Vesuvius, which had taken place in the late summer or fall of AD 79 when Pliny was seventeen. In the first letter, he described the death of his uncle (Pliny the Elder), who went too near the danger zone on a rescue mission, and was choked to death by the fumes. In the second letter, on which the passages in this Stage are based, Pliny describes the adventures which he and his mother had at Misenum after Pliny the Elder had departed on his mission.



tremōrēs

I

profectō avunculō, ipse reliquum tempus studiis impendī (ideō enim remānseram); deinde balneum, cēna, somnus inquiētus et brevis. per multōs diēs priōrēs, tremor terrae sentiēbātur, minus formidolōsus quia Campāniae solitus; sed illā nocte ita invaluit, ut nōn movērī omnia sed ēvertī vidērentur. irrūpīt cubiculum meum māter; surgēbam ipse, ad eam excitandam sī dormīret. cōnsēdimus in āreā domūs, quae mare ā tēctū modicō spatiō dīvidēbat; ego, ut timōrem mātris mē sēcūritāte lēnīrem, poposcī librum et quasi per ōtium legere coepī. subitō advenit amīcus quīdam avunculī, quī ubi mē et mātrem sedentēs, mē vērō etiam legentem videt, vituperat illīus patientiam, sēcūritātem meam. ego nihilōminus intentus in librum manēbam.

iam hōra diēī p̄fīma; sed adhūc dubia lūx. iam quassātīs proximīs tēctīs, magnus et certus ruīnae metus. tum dēmū fugere cōstituimus; nam sī diūtīs morātī essēmus, sine dubiō periissēmus. ultrā tēcta prōgressī, ad respīrandū cōsistimus. multa ibi mīrabilia vidēmus, multās formidinēs patimur.

5 **avunculō: avunculus uncle**
remānseram: remanēre
stay behind

somnus sleep
5 **formidolōsus alarming**
Campāniae in Campania
solitus common, usual
invalidū: invalēscere become strong

10 **tēctī: tēctum building**
spatiō: spatiūm space, distance
dīvidēbat: dīvidere separate
sēcūritāte: sēcūritās
unconcern, lack of anxiety

15 **per ōtium at leisure, free from care**
quassātīs: quassāre shake violently

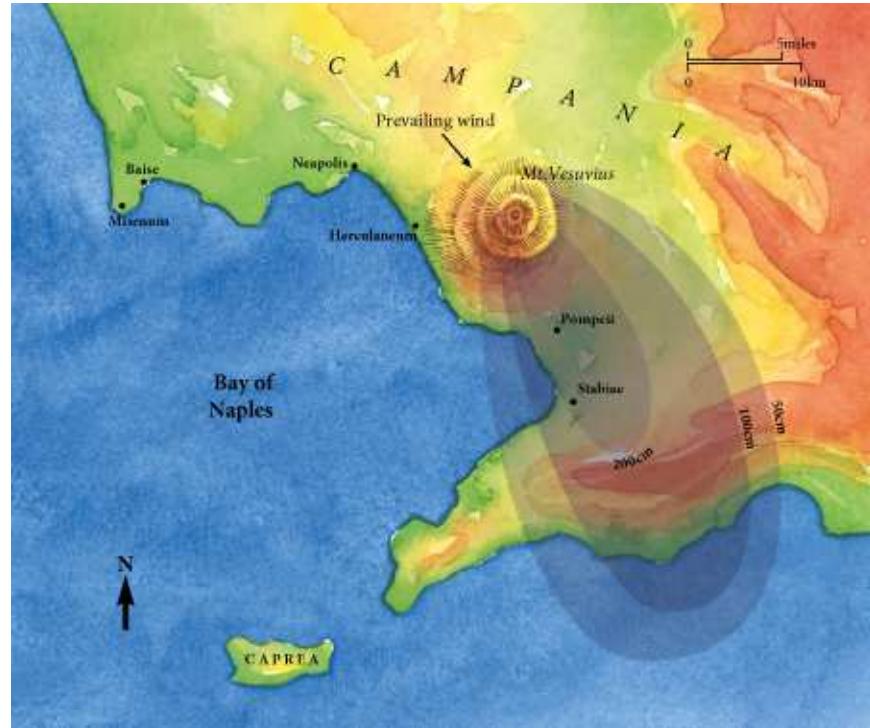
ruīnae: ruīna collapse
ultrā beyond
respīrandū: respīrare
recover one's breath, get one's breath back
formidinēs: fōrmidō fear; terror

II

nam vehicula, quae prōducēt iusserāmus, quamquam in plānissimō campō, in contrāriās partēs agēbantur, ac nē lapidibus quidem fulta in eōdem locō manēbant. praetereā mare in sē resorbērī vidēbamus, quasi tremōre terrae repulsum esset. certē prōcesserat lītus, multaque maris animālia siccīs arēnīs dētinēbantur. ab alterō latere nūbēs ātra et horrenda in longās flammārum figūrās dēhīscēbat; quae et similēs et maiōrēs fulguribus erant. tum vērō ille amīcus avunculi vehementius nōs hortātus est ut effugere cōnārēmur: “sī frāter” inquit “tuus, tuus avunculus, vīvit, salūtem vestram cupit; sī perii, superstītēs vōs esse voluit; cūr igitur cūntāmīn?” respondimus nōs saltūi nostrae cōsulere nōn posse, dum de illō incerti essēmus. nōn morātus ultrā, sē convertit et quam celerrimē ē pēculū fūgit.

nec multō post, illa nūbēs ātra dēscendit in terrās, operuit maria; cēlāverat Caprēas, Misēnī prōmunturium ē cōspectū abstulerat. tum māter mē orāre hortārī iubēre, ut quōquō modō fugerem; affirmāvit mē, quod iuvenis essem, ad salūtem pervenīre posse; sē, quae et annīs et corpore gravārētur, libenter moritūram esse, sī mihi causa mortis nōn fuisset. ego respondī mē nōlle incolumem esse nisi illa quoque effūgisset; deinde manum eius amplexus, addere gradum cōgō. pāret invīta, castīgatque sē, quod mē morētur.

- 5 **plānissimō: plānus** level, flat
campō: campus ground
partēs: pars direction
agēbantur: agī move, roll
fulta: fulcīre prop up, wedge
resorbērī: resorbērē suck back
siccīs: siccus dry
arēnīs: arēna sand
dētinēbantur: dētinērē
10 hold back, strand
latere: latus side
dēhīscēbat: dēhīscere gape open
15 **fulguribus: fulgur** lightning
cūntāmīn: cūntārī delay, hesitate
cōsulere take thought for, give consideration to
operuit: operīre cover
20 **Caprēas: Caprēae** Capri
Misēnī: Misēnum Misenum
prōmunturium promontory
orāre hortārī iubēre = ōrābat
hortabātūr iubēbat
quōquō: quisquis whatever (i.e. whatever possible)
incolumem: incolumis safe
amplexus: amplexī grasp, clasp
addere gradum go forward step by step (literally add one step (to another))



The area affected by ashfall after the eruption of Vesuvius in AD 79.

Questions

- What strange things were happening to (a) Pliny's carriage, (b) the sea and shore, (c) the sea creatures?
- Describe what Pliny saw in the sky (lines 5–7).
- What did the friend of Pliny's uncle urge Pliny and his mother to do? What reason did they give for refusing? What did the friend then do?
- What were the effects of the black cloud, as described in lines 14–16?
- Why did Pliny's mother think they should separate? What action did Pliny take in response to her entreaties?
- What impression do you have of the character of (a) the friend of Pliny's uncle, (b) Pliny and his mother, as shown by their behavior during the eruption?

About the language 1: pluperfect subjunctive passive

1 In Stage 30, you met the pluperfect indicative passive:

omnēs servī **dimissi** erant.

All the slaves had been sent away.

2 In Stage 46, you have met sentences like these:

cum omnēs servī **dimissi** essent, ad āream rediimus.

When all the slaves had been sent away, we returned to the courtyard.

Plinius sc̄re voluit num avunculus **servātus** esset.

Pliny wanted to know whether his uncle had been saved.

The form of the verb in **boldface** is the **pluperfect subjunctive passive**.

Further examples:

- a ancilla cognōvit quid in testāmentō dominī scriptū esset.
- b cum victimae sacrificātāe essent, pontifex pauca verba dixit.
- c amīci vestrī ignōrabant quārē comprehēnsī essētis.

3 Compare the indicative and subjunctive forms of the pluperfect passive of **portō**:

pluperfect passive indicative	pluperfect passive subjunctive
portātus eram	portātus essem
portātus erās	portātus essēs
portātus erat	portātus esset
portātī erāmus	portātī essēmus
portātī erātis	portātī essētis
portātī erant	portātī essent

Pluperfect subjunctive passive forms of all conjugations are given on page 000 of the Language information section.

4 Study the following examples:

iūdex rogāvit quantam pecūniām mercātor mihi **pollicitus** esset.

The judge asked how much money the merchant had promised me.

cum Rōmam **regressus** essem, prīnceps mē arcessīvit.

When I had returned to Rome, the emperor sent for me.

The words in **boldface** are pluperfect subjunctive forms of deponent verbs.

Further examples:

- a cum multās gemmās adeptī essēmus, domum revēnimus.
- b memineram quid māter mea locūta esset.

Pluperfect subjunctive forms of deponent verbs are given on [page 273](#).

tenebrae

iam dēcidēbat cinis, adhūc tamen rārus. respiciō; dēnsa cālīgō, tergīs nostrīs imminēns, nōs sequēbatur quasi ingēns flūmen ātrum in terram effūsum esset. “dēflectāmūs” inquam, “dum vidēmus, nē in viā sternāmur et in tenebrīs ā multitūdine fugientum obterāmūr.” vix cōnsēderāmūs, cum dēscendit nox dēnsissima, quasi omnia lūmina in conclāvī clausō exstīcta essent. sī adfūssēs, audīvīssēs ululātūs fēmīnārum, īfantūm vāgītūs, clāmōrēs virōrum; alīi vōcībus parentēs requīrēbant, vōcībusque nōscītābant, alīi līberōs, alīi coniugēs; hī suum cāsum, alīi suōrum lūgēbant; nōnnūllī metū mortis mortem precābantur; multū ad deōs manūs tollēbant, plūrēs nusquam iam deōs ullōs esse affīrmābant.

paulum relūxit, quod nōn diēs nōbīs, sed appropinquātus ignis indicium vidēbātur. ignis tamen procūl substītit; deinde tenebrae rūrsus, cinis rūrsus, multus et gravis. nisi identidem surrēxisseūs et cinerem excessiūs, sine dubiō opertī atque etiam oblīsī pondere essēmus.

tandem cālīgō tenuāta ac dissolūta est, sīcūt fūmus vel nebula. mox diēs rediit; sōl etiam fulgēbat, pallidus tamen. attonitī vīdimus omnia mūltā altōque cinere tamquam nīve operata. regressī Mīsēnum, noctem spē ac metū exēgimus. metus praevalēbat; nam tremor terrae persevērābat. nōbīs tamen nūllum cōsilium abeundī erat, dōnec cognōserēmus num avunculus servātus esset.



Petrified bodies.

rārus occasional

dēflectāmūs: dēflectāre

turn aside, turn off the road

5 sternāmūr: sternere knock over

obterāmūr: obterere trample to death

ululātūs: ululātūs shriek

10 vāgītūs: vāgītus wailing, crying
nōscītābant: nōscītare recognize

paulum a little, to a slight extent

15 relūxit: relūcēscere become light again
opertī = opertī essēmus:

operīre bury
oblīsī ... essēmus: oblīdere crush

pondere: pondus weight
tenuātā: tenuāre thin out

dissolūta est: dissolute disperse, dissolve

nebula mist

nīve: nīx snow

Mīsēnum to Misenum

exēgimus: exigere spend

praevalēbat: praevalēre prevail, be uppermost
dōnec until

About the language 2: more about conditionals

1 Study the following conditional sentences:

sī iuvenis respexisset, latrōnem vīdisset.

If the young man had looked back, he would have seen the robber.

sī mē vocāvissēs, statim vēnissem.

If you had called me, I would have come at once.

nisi canis lātrāvisset, servī effūgissent.

If the dog had not barked, the slaves would have escaped.

sī Imperātor ipse hanc rem iūdicāvisset, damnātī essētis.

If the emperor himself had judged this case, you would have been condemned.

Notice that:

- a the Latin verbs are in the pluperfect tense of the subjunctive;
- b the English translations contain the words *had . . .*, followed by *would have . . .*

2 Further examples:

- a sī nautae in portū mānsissent, tempestātem vītāvissent.
- b sī satis pecūniae obtulissētis, agricola vōbīs equum vēndidisset.
- c sī centuriō tergum vertisset, minus graviter vulnerātus esset.
- d sī filia tua illī senī nūpsisset, miserrima fuissest.
- e sī exercitus noster superātus esset, prīnceps novās cōpiās ēmīsisset.
- f nisi pater mē prohibuisset, tibi subvēnissem.

Practicing the language

1 Translate each sentence; then, referring if necessary to the table of nouns on [pages 258–259](#) and to the Vocabulary at the end of the book, change the number of the words in **boldface** (i.e. change singular words to plural, and plural words to singular) and translate again.

- a centuriō barbarōs **catēnīs** vīnxit.
- b für vestēs **amīcī tuī** abstulit.
- c sacerdōs ad **templa** ambulābat.
- d multitūdō artem **gladiātōris** mīrabātur.
- e pāstōrēs strepitum **canum** audīvērunt.
- f puer cum **ancillīs** et **iuvenibūs** stābat.
- g **mercātōrī** pecūniām trādīdit.
- h ego callidior **meīs inimīcīs** sum.

2 This exercise is based on lines 1–12 of **tremōrēs I** on [page 207](#). Read the lines again, then translate the following sentences into Latin. All necessary vocabulary can be found on [page 207](#) in lines 1–12, but you will need to make various alterations to the word-endings, e.g. by changing a verb from 1st person to 3rd person, or a noun from the nominative to the genitive. Refer to the appropriate pages in the Language information section where necessary.

- a Plinius spent the remaining time *on dinner* (dative) and *sleep* (dative).
- b Throughout those days, tremors were being felt.
- c Plinius began to read a book, in order that he might calm *his* (omit) mother's fear.
- d They *saw* (use either perfect or historical present) his uncle's friend arriving.
- e Plinius, having been scolded *by the friend* (**ab** + ablative), was nevertheless remaining in the courtyard.

3 Translate each pair of sentences; then replace the word in **boldface** with the correct form of the relative pronoun **qui**, using the table in paragraph 1 on [page 267](#) and adjusting the word order if necessary so that the relative pronoun comes at the beginning of the second sentence; then translate again. Do not join the two sentences together, but translate the relative pronoun as a *connecting relative*, i.e. as “he,” “she,” “it,” “this,” etc. If necessary, check the gender of the word in **boldface**.

For example: in mediā urbe stābat templum. simulatque **templum** intrāvī,
attonitus cōnstītū.

In the middle of the city stood a temple. As soon as I entered the temple I halted in amazement.

This becomes: in mediā urbe stābat templum. **quod** simulatque intrāvī,
attonitus cōnstītū.

In the middle of the city stood a temple. As soon as I entered it, I halted in amazement.

- a subītō appāruērunt duo lupī. cum **lupōs** vīdissent, pāstōrēs clāmōrem sustulērunt.
- b agricola uxōrem monuit ut fugeret. **uxor** tamen obstinātē recūsāvit.
- c rēx epistulam celeriter dictāvit. cum servus **epistulam** scrīpsisset, nūntius ad Imperātōrem tulit.
- d für ātrium tacitē intrāvit. **fūre** vīsō, canis lātrāvit.
- e Quīntus “Salvium perfidiae accuso,” inquit. **verbīs** audīfīs, Salvius tacuit.
- f “ubi est pecūnia mea?” rogāvit mercātōr. nēmō **mercātōrī** respondēre audēbat.
- g hominēs clāmāre coepērunt. clāmōribus **hominū** excitātus, surrēxī.
- h crās pontifex sacrificium faciet. ut **sacrificium** videās, tē ad templum dūcam.

About the language 3: more about ellipsis

- 1 From Unit 1 on, you have met sentences like these, containing various forms of the verb **esse** (*to be*):

nihil tam ferōx est quam leō.

Nothing is as ferocious as a lion.

postridiē discessimus; sed iter longum et difficile erat.

We left the next day; but the journey was long and difficult.

- 2 Sometimes, however, the various forms of **esse** are omitted, especially in verse or fast-moving narrative. In more recent Stages, you have met sentences like these:

nam tam terribile quam incendium.

Nothing is as frightening as a fire.

caelum undique et pontus.

On every side was sky and sea.

subitō fragōrem audīvimus; deinde longum silentium.

Suddenly we heard a crash; then there was a long silence.

- 3 Translate again lines 13–14 of **tremōrēs I** on [page 207](#), from **iam** to **metus**. How many times does the Latin omit the word **erat** where the English translation contains the word “was”?

Roman letters

What the Romans called **ötium** (free time), the freedom from **negōtium** (the business of life), was actually laborious leisure in which a great amount of time was devoted to reading and writing. Someone once expressed wonder at what Pliny the Elder had accomplished: he had performed important and time-consuming official duties, had practiced law, and had written many books. His nephew, Pliny the Younger, explained that **studia**, learning and studying, filled all his uncle's spare time. While he was resting after lunch, while dining, while traveling, while being carried through Rome in a litter, even while being rubbed down and dried after a bath, Pliny the Elder had books read aloud to him while he took notes, wrote extracts, or dictated to his secretary. Apparently Pliny the Younger practiced this routine as well. He tells us that, relaxing at his beloved Laurentine villa, he never wasted time even while hunting: “I was sitting by the hunting nets with stylus and writing tablets instead of hunting spears by my side, thinking and making notes, so that, even if I came home empty-handed, I should have my wax tablets filled at least.”

This inclination for reading and writing was widespread among cultivated Romans and letter writing accounted for a great amount of that time and devotion. In the small city-states of the Greek world, there had been relatively little need for written communication and the number of letters in classical Greek literature is small. But with Rome at the center of an expanding empire, written correspondence became absolutely essential. Landowners visiting their estates in Italy, bureaucrats on military or administrative service in the provinces, travelers, merchants, tax collectors, students, soldiers, and exiles, all needed to keep in touch with home or the capital.

Every traveler went laden with letters he had been asked to deliver, often in return for letters of introduction to influential persons (**epistulae commendātīiae**). A person about to send a messenger or who intended to go on a journey made it a point of courtesy to notify friends in time for them to prepare letters. There was a danger, of course, that letters sent in this way might fall into the wrong hands or be lost. It was customary, therefore, to send a copy of an important letter by another person and, if possible, by another route.

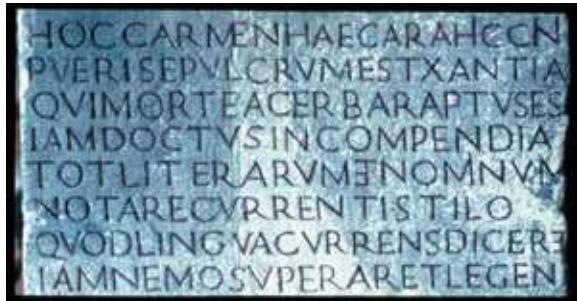
Notes, short letters, lists, receipts, and first drafts of literary works were written on wax tablets (**cērae**). A page of papyrus (**charta**) was expensive and was used only for important correspondence. Normally two parallel columns were written on each charta. A book was a long strip of papyrus, made from a number of chartae glued together. It was kept rolled in a scroll (**volumen**) and was unrolled as it was read.

The sheer volume of correspondence carried on by most Romans of wealth made it impossible for them to write all their letters in their



Roman writing tablet.

own hand, except for the most important or those to dear friends. It was, therefore, the practice to use **āmanuēnsēs** or secretaries. A slave employed in writing correspondence from dictation or copying was called a **notārius**, a **librārius**, or a **servus ab epistulis**. If letters had been written by a secretary, the authors would often add a line or two in their own hand. Soon the personal letters of important men began to be collected. Cicero and Pliny, the most famous Roman letter writers, and their secretaries kept copies of letters they thought worth keeping and glued them together in **volumina**.



Part of an epitaph praising a secretary.

Over nine hundred letters written by Cicero (106–43 BC), the famous orator and lawyer, have survived. Some of these, like newsletters, provide official and unofficial, public and private, views on current politics; others deal with personal and cultural matters. Some of Cicero's letters are private and were written without any thought of publication; others clearly have a wider circulation in mind. The letters discuss all that is in the writer's mind, in a lively, colloquial, and immediate style, much as in a modern journal. After Cicero no one could compose a letter without being conscious of the established epistolary form. It was to serve as a model for many Roman writers, including Pliny the Younger.

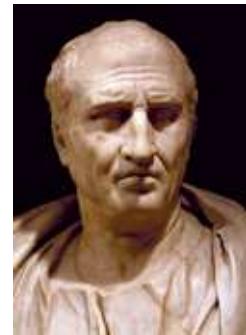
The letters of Pliny the Younger (c. AD 61 – c.112) resemble Cicero's in that they cover a wide range of topics and reflect the life, interests, and personality of their author. However, Pliny's letters, more so than Cicero's, were written self-consciously and selectively, with a view to future publication. The letters are fluent, elegant, and polished. From the hundreds of letters that have been preserved, we get an exceptionally vivid picture of the private lives of the Romans. The letters of both Cicero and Pliny show the results of a thorough education in rhetoric. Both men express themselves so well that their letters belong to the field of literature.

Distinct literary categories, or genres of literature, were established by the Greeks and had become traditional by Roman times – history, philosophy, oratory, comedy, tragedy, epic, pastoral, lyric, and didactic or instructive poetry. The Romans themselves claimed only one new invention, verse satire. Today, however, letter writing is also a recognized genre of Latin literature and, according to some critics, it is, next to satire, Rome's most distinctive literary legacy.

A Roman letter follows a conventional structure: it is expected to have a greeting, a body, and a valediction. The letter begins with the writer's name (in the nominative case) followed by the recipient's name (in the dative case). The next line generally reads **SAL**, **SD**, or **SPD** for **salūtem**, **salūtem dicit**, or **salūtem plūrimam dicit**. In the body of the letter the Romans often, although not always, put the verbs in the tense which would be the actual time when the letter was read, not the tense appropriate at the time of writing; for example, **scribēbam** often means "I am writing." This is called the epistolary tense. After the message, the writer often uses formulaic phrases of courtesy or affection as a conclusion, for example **SVBE (sī valēs, bene est)**, **valē**, or **cūrā ut valeās**. Since the sender's name has already appeared in the salutation, the letter is not signed at the end. The use of stylized opening and closing phrases injects a tone of formality even in personal letters.

As a genre, Roman letters often have certain stylistic characteristics in common, as well. Each letter is normally confined to a single theme. Consistency of literary style – the color and pattern of language and the tone or feeling – is also characteristic. Simplicity of language is combined with oratorical artifice in word order and structure. A young man once asked Pliny for a course of study. Pliny suggested that letter writing would be a valuable element in the proposed curriculum: "I know that your chief interest is law, but that is not a reason for advising you to limit yourself to this style ... I should like you sometimes to take a passage of history or turn your attention to letter writing, for often history, in a speech, calls for a narrative or poetic description; and letters develop brevity and simplicity of style."

A publishing trade existed in Rome but, with duplication of works limited to the output of slaves copying by hand, publication was not on a great enough scale to provide authors with an income. The motive for publishing literary works, including letters, was not money but literary prestige, **dignitās**. However, whether for publication or not, Roman letters allowed both their writers and their readers to share in the enjoyment of well-written, entertaining correspondence.



Cicero.

Vocabulary checklist 46

clādēs, clādis, f.	<i>disaster</i>
iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus	<i>judge</i>
lapis, lapidis, m.	<i>stone</i>
lūmen, lūminis, n.	<i>light</i>
minus	<i>less</i>
paulum	<i>a little, slightly</i>
quisquis	<i>whoever</i>
quidquid (also spelled quicquid)	<i>whatever</i>
reliquus, reliqua, reliquum	<i>remaining, the rest</i>
requirō, requirere, requisivī	<i>ask, seek</i>
somnus, somnī, m.	<i>sleep</i>
sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus	<i>lay low, knock over</i>
tēctum, tēctī, n.	<i>building</i>
ultrā	<i>further</i>



A letter found in a military camp in Britain.



LUDI
Stage 47

The following narrative, told partly in Latin and partly in translation, comes from Book Five of Virgil's *Aeneid*.



Map showing the voyage of Aeneas.

During their wanderings after the destruction of Troy, Aeneas and his Trojan followers have arrived at the island of Sicily, where Aeneas' father Anchises is buried. They decide to mark the anniversary of Anchises' death by holding a festival of games in his honor.

certāmen

I

First is the race between four ships,
Picked from the whole fleet, well-matched with heavy oars:
The speedy *Pristis*, with a keen crew led by Mnestheus;
Massive *Chimaera*, huge as a city, commanded by Gyas;
The large *Centaur*, which carries Sergestus,
And sea-blue *Sylla*, with Cloanthus as captain.

II

est procul in pelago saxum spūmantia contrā
litora, quod **tumidis*** summersum tunditur ōlim

*Some noun-and-adjective phrases, in which an adjective is separated by one word or more from the noun which it describes, are shown in boldface.

flūctibus, hībernī condunt ubi sīdera Cōrī;
tranquillō silet immōtāque attollitūr undā.
hīc viridem **Aenēās** frondentī ex īlice mētam
cōnstituit signum nautīs **pater**, unde revertī
scīrent et longōs ubi circumflectere cursūs.

inde ubi clāra dedit sonitum tuba, **fīnibus** omnēs
(haud mora) prōsiluēre **suīs**; ferit aethera clāmor
nauticus, adductīs spūmant frēta versa lacertīs.

effugit ante aliōs pīmīsque élābitur undīs
turbam inter fremitūmque Gyās; quem deinde Cloanthus
cōsequitur, melior rēmīs, sed pondere pīnus
tarda tenet. post hōs aequō discrīmīne Prīstis
Centaurusque locum tendunt superāre priōrem;
et nunc Prīstis habet, nunc victam praeterit ingēns
Centaurus, nunc ūnā ambae iūncītīsque feruntur
frontibus et longā sulcant vada salsa carīnā.

clāra: clārus *loud* (literally clear)
fīnibus: fīnis *starting place*
ferit: ferīre *strike*
nauticus *made by the sailors*
adductīs: addūcere *pull, draw up (to the chest)*

fretā: fretūm *water, sea*
versa: vertere *churn up*
fremitūm: fremitus *noise, din*
cōsequitur: cōsequī *follow, chase*
pīnus *pine tree, i.e. boat (made from pine wood)*

tarda: tardus *slow*
tenet: tenēre *hold back*
aequō discrīmīne *at an equal distance (from the leaders)*
tendunt: tendere *strain, strive*
superāre *achieve, win*
iūncītīs: iūncītus *side by side*
frontibus: frōns *prow*
sulcant: sulcāre *plow through*
vada: vadūm *water*
salsa: salsus *salty*
carīnā: carīna *keel*

15



immōtā ... attollitūr undā.

Questions

- Where is the rock? What happens to it when the weather is stormy? What happens in calm weather?
- What does Aeneas place on the rock? Why? Which noun in lines 5–7 emphasizes Aeneas' position of responsibility?
- What is the starting signal? What do the words **haud mora** and **prōsiluēre** (line 9) indicate about the manner in which the competitors move off?
- What does Virgil say in lines 9–10 about (a) the shouting of the sailors, (b) the appearance of the sea, (c) the movements of the oarsmen?
- Who takes the lead?
- Who comes next? What advantage does he have, and what disadvantage?
- Which two ships are struggling for third place? What is happening at each of the three stages of the struggle, introduced by **nunc ... nunc ... nunc** (lines 16–17)?
- The verb **sulcāre** (*sulcant*, line 18) literally means “to drive a furrow.” In what way is it appropriate to the description of the ships’ course?



Gyās et Cloanthus

I

They were nearing the rock, close to the turning point,
When Gyas, leading at the halfway mark,
Cried out to his helmsman Menoetes: "What are you doing?
Don't wander so far to the right! Keep over this way!
Run close to the rock, let the oars on the port side graze it!
The rest can stay out to sea, if they want." But Menoetes,
Fearing a hidden reef, turned the prow to the open water.
"Where are you off to?" cried Gyas again. "Make for the rock!"
And looking round as he shouted, he saw Cloanthus,
Hard on his tail, cutting in between him and the rock.
Cloanthus, scraping through on the inside, took the lead
And reached safe water, leaving the turning post far behind.

II

tum vērō exarsit iuvenī dolor ossibus ingēns
nec lacrimīs caruēre genae, sēgnemque Menoetēn
in mare praecipitem puppī dēturbat ab altā;
ipse gubernāclō rēctor subit, ipse magister
hortāturque virōs clāvumque ad litora torquet.
at gravis* ut fundō vix tandem redditus īmō est
iam senior madidāque fluēns in veste Menoetēs
summa petit scopulī siccāque in rūpe resēdit.
illum et läbentem Teucrī et rīsēre natantem
et salsōs rīdent revomentem pectore flūctūs.

5

10

exarsit: exardēre *blaze up*
ossibus: os *bone*
sēgnem: sēgnis *timid,*
unenterprising
Menoetēn Greek accusative of
Menoetēs
puppī: puppis *stern, poop*
dēturbat: dēturbāre *push, send*
flying
gubernāclō: gubernāclum
helm, steering oar
rēctor: helmsman
subit: subire *take over*
magister: pilot
clāvum: clāvus *tiller, helm*
torquet: torquēre *turn*
ut: when
fundō: fundus *depth*
vix tandem: at long last
īmō: īmus *lowest*
senior: elderly
fluēns: dripping, streaming
scopulī: scopolus *rock*
resēdit: residere *sit down, sink down*

Teucrī: Trojans
revomentem: revomere *vomit up*
pectore: pectus *chest*

Questions

- Who is the **iuvenī** (line 1)? What does he do to Menoetes in lines 2–3?
- Who replaces Menoetes as helmsman? What are his first actions on taking over?
- Which words and phrases in line 6 indicate that Menoetes (a) went a long way down, (b) did not resurface for some time, (c) could do nothing about getting to the surface himself but could only wait for the sea to buoy him up?
- Why do you think Virgil includes the phrase **iam senior** (line 7) in his description of Menoetes? Which word in line 6 is partly explained by the phrase **madidāque fluēns in veste** in line 7?
- What did Menoetes do as soon as he had resurfaced?
- What three actions of Menoetes are described in lines 9–10? Do the Trojans show any sympathy for him? Does Virgil?



*Some noun-and-adjective phrases, in which an adjective is separated by one word or more from the noun which it describes, are shown in **boldface**.

Competitors in a boat race.

Sergestus et Mnēstheus

I

And now the two tailenders, Mnestheus and Sergestus,
Are fired with a joyful hope of catching Gyas.
As they reach the rock, Sergestus is in the lead,
Though not by as much as a boat-length; his bows are in front,
But his stern is overlapped by the eager *Prīstis*.
And Mnestheus, pacing between his lines of rowers,
Is driving them on: "Now pull with your oars;
Once you were comrades of Hector, and when Troy fell
You became my chosen companions; now summon your strength,
Now summon the courage you showed on the African sandbanks,
The Ionian sea, the racing waves of Greece.
I can hope no longer now to finish first
(Though perhaps ... but victory lies in the hand of Neptune) –
Yet to come in last, my friends, would be shameful;
Prevent the disgrace!" And his men, with a mighty heave,
Pulled hard on their oars; the whole ship shook with their efforts;
The sea raced by beneath them, their throats and limbs
Were gripped by breathless exertion, they streamed with sweat.

II

attulit ipse viris optātum cāsus honōrem.
namque furēns animī dum prōram ad saxa suburret
interior spatiōque subit Sergestus inīquō,
īnfēlīx saxīs in prōcurrentibus haesit.
cōnsurgunt nautae et magnō clāmōre morantur
ferrātāsque trudēs et acūtā cuspide contōs
expedient frāctōsque legunt in gurgite rēmōs.

5

- cāsus chance
furēns animī
 furiōsly determined,
 with furious eagerness
prōram: prōra prow
suburret: suburgēre
 drive ... up close
interior in the inside
subit: subire approach
inīquō: inīquus narrow,
 dangerous
prōcurrentibus: prōcurrere
 project
cōnsurgunt: cōnsurgere
 jump up
morantur: morārī
 hold (the ship) steady
ferrātās: ferrātus tipped
 with iron
trudēs: trudis pole
acūtā: acūtus sharp
cuspide: cuspis point
contōs: contus pole, rod
expedient: expedire
 bring out, get out
legunt: legerē gather up

About the language 1: more about the ablative

1 From Unit 1 on, you have met sentences like these:

- sacerdōs ā templō discessit.
The priest departed from the temple.
servī in agrīs labōrābant.
The slaves were working in the fields.

In these sentences, “from” is expressed by one of the prepositions **ā**, **ab**, **ē**, or **ex**, while “in” is expressed by the preposition **in**. Each preposition is followed by a noun in the ablative case.

2 In verse, however, the idea of “in” and “from” is often expressed by the ablative case alone, without any preposition:

- ipse diem noctemque negat discernere caelō ... Palinūrus.
Palinurus himself says he cannot distinguish day and night in the sky.
finib⁹ omnēs ... prōsiluēre suīs.
They all leapt forward from their starting places.
... immōtāque attollitur undā.
... and it rises up from the still water.

Further examples:

- a nōbīs tempus erat patriā discēdere cārā.
b flūmine nant piscēs, arbore cantat avis.
c iamque senex laetus nostrā profīscitur urbe.
d dīcitur immēnsā Cyclōps habitāre cavernā.

victor

I

at laetus Mnēstheus successūque ācrior ipsō
prōna petit maria et pelagō dēcurrit apertō.
et pŕimum in scopulō **luctantem** dēserit altō
Sergestum brevibusque vadīs frūstrāque vocantem
auxilia et frāctis discentem currere rēmīs.
inde Gyān ipsamque ingentī mōle Chimaeram
cōnsequitur; cēdit, quoniam spoliāta magistrō est.

Questions

- 1 Why does Mnestheus feel encouraged at this point?
- 2 Who is the first competitor to be overtaken by Mnestheus? What is he doing, and trying to do?
- 3 Whom does Mnestheus overtake next? Why is he able to do so?

II

sōlus iamque **ipsō** superest in **fine** Cloanthus:
quem petit et summīs adnīxus vīribus urget.
tum vērō ingeminat clāmor cūnctīque sequentem
īnstīgant studiīs, resonatque fragōribus aethēr.
hī proprium decus et partum indignantur honōrem
nī teneant, vītamque volunt prō laude pacīscī;
hōs successus alit: possunt, quia posse videntur.
et fōrs aequātīs cēpissent praemia rōstrīs,
nī palmās pontō tendēns utrāque Cloanthus
fūdissetque precēs dīvōsque in vōta vocāsset:
“dī, quibus imperium est pelagī, quōrum aequora currō,
vōbīs laetus ego **hōc** cādēntem in **lītore** taurum
cōnstituam ante ārās vōtī reus, extaque salsōs
prōiciam in flūctūs et vīna liquentia fundam.”
dīxit, eumque īmīs sub flūctibus audiit omnis
Nēreidum Phorcīque chorus Panopēaque virgō,
et pater ipse manū magnā Portūnus euntem
impulit: illa Notō citius volucrīque sagittā
ad terrā fugit et portū sē condidit altō.

successū: *successus* *success*
ācrior: *ācer* *eager, excited*
prōna: *prōnus* *easy*
dēcurrit: *dēcurrere* *speed, race*
dēserit: *dēserere* *leave behind*
currere: *race, row*
5 **Gyān** Greek accusative of **Gyās**
mōle: *mōlēs* *bulk*
quoniam: *since*
spoliāta ... est: *spoliāre* *deprive*

adnīxus: *adnītī* *strain, exert oneself*
urget: *urgēre* *pursue, press upon*
cūnctī: *cūnctus* *all*
īnstīgant: *īnstīgāre* *urge*
studiīs: *studium* *shout of support, cheer*
resonat: *resonāre* *resound*
fragōribus: *fragor* *shout*
proprium: *proprius* *one's own, that belongs to one*
5 **decus:** *glory*
partum: *parere* *gain, win*
indignantur: *indignārī*
 feel shame, think it shameful
nī = nisi
10 **indignantur ... nī teneant:** *think it shameful if they do not hold on to*
 pacīscī exchange, bargain
alit: *alere* *encourage*
fors: *perhaps*
15 **aequātīs:** *aequātus* *level, side by side*
rōstrīs: *rōstrum* *prow*
palmās: *palma* *hand (literally palm)*
tendēns: *tendere* *stretch out*
fūdisset: *fundere* *pour out*



in vōta *to (hear) his vow*
vocāsset = vocāsset
cādēntem: *candēns* *gleaming white*
vōtī reus *bound by one's vow, in payment of one's vow*
prōiciam: *prōicere* *cast (as an offering)*
liquentia: *liquēre* *flow*
Nēreidum: *Nēreis* *sea nymph*
Phorcī: *Phorcus* *Phorcus (a sea god)*
Panopēa *Panopea (one of the sea nymphs)*
Portūnus *Portunus (god of harbors)*
citius: *citō* *quickly*
volucrī: *volucrē* *winged, swift*
sagittā: *sagitta* *arrow*
sē condidit: *sē condere* *bring oneself to rest*

Questions

- A 1 Which two captains are involved in the final dash for victory? Which of them has the better chance, and which phrase in line 1 emphasizes this?
 - 2 What happens in line 3 to the noise level? Suggest a reason for this. Which contestant do the spectators support?
 - 3 Why are Cloanthus' men especially anxious not to be beaten? How deeply (according to Virgil) do they care about winning?
 - 4 What psychological advantages do Mnestheus and his men have?
 - 5 What would the result have been, but for Cloanthus' prayer?
 - 6 Which gods does Cloanthus address? What three promises does he make? Does his prayer imply a request as well as a promise?
 - 7 Who heard the prayer? What help did Cloanthus receive?
 - 8 Which word in lines 17–18 has Virgil placed in an especially emphatic position, and why?
 - 9 What is the speed of Cloanthus' boat compared to? What is the result of Portunus' action?
- J 1 To what extent (if any) do the *personalities* of the four captains influence the action and result of the race?
- 2 Consider how victor II should be read aloud. At which point or points should the reading be liveliest? How should Cloanthus' prayer be read? Are there any points where the reading should be calm or quiet?

About the language 2: poetic plurals

1 Study the following quotations from Latin verse:

ōraque caeruleā patrium clāmantia nōmen
excipiuntur aquā. (*Ovid*)
*And his mouth, shouting the name of his father,
was received by the dark blue water.*

per amīca silentia lūnae (*Virgil*)
through the friendly silence of the moonlight
cōscendit furibunda rogōs. (*Virgil*)
She climbed the funeral pyre in a mad frenzy.

In each of these phrases or sentences, the poet uses a **plural noun** (*ōra, silentia, rogōs*) with a **singular meaning** (*mouth, silence, pyre*). A similar use of the plural is sometimes found in English verse:

And it is clear to my long-searching eyes
That love at last has might upon the **skies**.
While Shasta signals to Alaskan **seas**
That watch old sluggish glaciers downwards creep.

2 From each of the following lines in Stage 47, pick out one example of a plural noun used with a singular meaning:

- a **victor I** ([page 226](#)), line 5.
- b **victor II** ([page 226](#)), line 14.

Practicing the language

1 Match each word in the top list with a word of similar meaning taken from the bottom list.

For example: aedificāre exstruere

castīgāre, dēcipere, dīvitiae, dulcis, ignis, nocēre, nōn, oīlim, quia, scelus, spernere,
superāre, timēre, tūtus, vērō
suāvis, quod, culpāre, laedere, quidem, vincere, fallere, contemnere, haud, opēs, verērī,
incolumis, facinus, quondam, incendium

2 Complete each sentence with the correct word and then translate.

- a sī mē rogāvissēs, (dūxissem, respondissem)
- b sī īcarus mandātīs patris pāruisset, nōn in mare (cecidiſſet, crēdiſſet)
- c sī exercituī nostrō subvēniſſetis, vōbīs magnum praeſium (dediſſemus, exſtrūxiſſemus)
- d sī in Circō heri adfuſſēs, ſpectāculō (dēlectātus eſſēs, dēpoſitus eſſēs)
- e niſi ſenex ā libertī dēfēnsus eſſet, latrōnēs eum (exiſſent, occiſſent)

3 Translate each sentence, then replace the verb in **boldface** with the correct form of the verb in parentheses, keeping the same person, tense, etc. Refer if necessary to the Vocabulary at the end of the book, and to the tables of deponent verbs on [pages 276–278](#).

For example: cōſul pauca verba **dīxit**. (loquī)

This becomes: cōſul pauca verba **locūtus eſt**.
The consul said a few words.

- a dux nautās **incitābat**. (hortārī)
- b captīvus quidem ſum; ſed effugere **temptābō**. (cōnārī)
- c crās ab hōc oppidō **discēdēmus**. (proficiſci)
- d **prōmīſi** mē pecūniā mox redditūrum eſſe. (pollicērī)
- e mīlitēs arma nova **comparāvērunt**. (adipisci)
- f cognōſcere volēbam num omnēs nūntī **revēniſſent**. (regredī)

4 Complete each sentence with the most suitable word from the box below, and then translate. Refer to the story on [pages 220–227](#) where necessary.

ēiceret taurum tuba relictō parum

- a simulatque ſonuit, omnēs nāvēs prōſiluērunt.
- b iuvenis adeō īrātus erat ut ſenem ē nāve
- c Sergestus, quī cautē nāvigābat, in ſcopulum incurrit.
- d saxō, nautae curſum ad litūs dirigēbant.
- e Cloanthus pollicitus eſt ſē deī ſacrificātūrum eſſe.

The chariot race in Homer's *Iliad*

When Virgil wrote the *Aeneid*, part of his inspiration came from two famous epic poems of ancient Greece, the *Iliad* and *Odyssey* of Homer. Throughout his poem, Virgil uses ideas, incidents, and phrases from Homer, but reshapes them, combines them with his own subject matter, and handles them in his own style, to produce a poem which in some ways is very similar to the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, but in other ways is utterly different.

The following extracts from Book Twenty-three of Homer's *Iliad* describe the chariot race which took place during the funeral games held by the Achaians (Greeks) outside the walls of Troy during the Trojan War. Homer's account provided Virgil with some of the raw material for his description of the boat race. The chief characters involved are:

Achilleus (often known as Achilles), who had organized the games in honor of his dead friend Patroklos;

Antilochos son of Nestor and grandson of Neleus;

Diomedes son of Tydeus, hated by the god Phoibos Apollo but befriended and supported by the goddess Athene; he drives a team of horses which he has captured from the Trojans, and his companion is named Sthenelos;

Eumelos son of Admetos (sometimes described as son of Pheres);

Menelaos son of Atreus (Atreides), brother of the great king

Agamemnon, whose mare Aithe he has borrowed for the chariot race.

The winner of the race is to receive as his prize a skilled slave woman and a huge tripod with ear-shaped handles.

They stood in line for the start, and Achilleus showed them the turn-post far away on the level plain, and beside it he stationed a judge, Phoinix the godlike, the follower of his father ...

Then all held their whips high-lifted above their horses, then struck with the whip thongs and in words urged their horses onward into speed. Rapidly they made their way over the flat land and presently were far away from the ships. The dust lifting clung beneath the horses' chests like a cloud or a stormwhirl. Their manes streamed along the blast of the wind, ...

... the drivers

5

stood in the chariots, with the spirit beating in each man with the strain to win, and each was calling aloud upon his own horses, and the horses flew through the dust of the flat land. But as the rapid horses were running the last of the race-course back, and toward the grey sea, then the mettle of each began to show itself, and the field of horses strung out, and before long out in front was the swift-stepping team of the son of Pheres, Eumelos, and after him the stallions of Diomedes,

10

15

the Trojan horses, not far behind at all, but close on him, for they seemed forever on the point of climbing his chariot and the wind of them was hot on the back and on the broad shoulders of Eumelos. They lowered their heads and flew close after him.

20

And how he might have passed him or run to a doubtful decision, had not Phoibos Apollo been angry with Diomedes, Tydeus' son, and dashed the shining whip from his hands, so that the tears began to stream from his eyes, for his anger as he watched how the mares of Eumelos drew far ahead of him while his own horses ran without the whip and were slowed. Yet Athene did not fail to see the foul play of Apollo on Tydeus' son. She swept in speed to the shepherd of the people and gave him back his whip, and inspired strength into his horses. Then in her wrath she went on after the son of Admetos and she, a goddess, smashed his chariot yoke, and his horses ran on either side of the way, the pole dragged and Eumelos himself was sent spinning out beside the wheel of the chariot so that his elbows were all torn, and his mouth, and his nostrils, and his forehead was lacerated about the brows, and his eyes filled with tears, and the springing voice was held fast within him.

25

Then the son of Tydeus, turning his single-foot horses past him, went far out in front of the others, seeing that Athene had inspired strength in his horses and to himself gave the glory.

30

35

40

45



The plain of Troy.

After him came the son of Atreus, fair-haired Menelaos. But Antilochos cried out aloud to his father's horses: "Come on, you two. Pull, as fast as you can! I am not trying to make you match your speed with the speed of those others, the horses of Tydeus' valiant son, to whom now Athene has granted speed and to their rider has given the glory.

But make your burst to catch the horses of the son of Atreus
 nor let them leave you behind, for fear Aithe who is female
 may shower you in mockery. Are you falling back, my brave horses?
 For I will tell you this, and it will be a thing accomplished.
 There will be no more care for you from the shepherd of the people,
 Nestor, but he will slaughter you out of hand with the edge
 of bronze, if we win the meaner prize because you are unwilling.
 Keep on close after him and make all the speed you are able.
 I myself shall know what to do and contrive it, so that
 we get by in the narrow place of the way. He will not escape me."

50

So he spoke, and they fearing the angry voice of their master
 ran harder for a little while, and presently after this
 battle-stubborn Antilochos saw where the hollow way narrowed.
 There was a break in the ground where winter water had gathered
 and broken out of the road, and made a sunken place all about.
 Menelaos shrinking from a collision of chariots steered there,
 but Antilochos also turned out his single-foot horses
 from the road, and bore a little way aside, and went after him;
 and the son of Atreus was frightened and called out aloud to Antilochos:
 "Antilochos, this is reckless horsemanship. Hold in your horses.
 The way is narrow here, it will soon be wider for passing.
 Be careful not to crash your chariot and wreck both of us."

60

So he spoke, but Antilochos drove on all the harder
 with a whiplash for greater speed, as if he had never heard him,
 As far as is the range of a discus swung from the shoulder
 and thrown by a stripling who tries out the strength of his young manhood,
 so far they ran even, but then the mares of Atreides gave way
 and fell back, for he of his own will slackened his driving
 for fear that in the road the single-foot horses might crash
 and overturn the strong-fabricated chariots, and the men
 themselves go down in the dust through their hard striving for victory.
 But Menelaos of the fair hair called to him in anger:
 "Antilochos, there is no other man more cursed than you are.
 Damn you. We Achaians lied when we said you had good sense.
 Even so, you will not get this prize without having to take oath."

65

70

75

80



A Greek two-horse chariot.



Fragment of a Greek painted vase showing spectators watching a chariot race.

(*The finish:*)

... and now Tydeus' son in his rapid course was close on them
 and he lashed them always with the whipstroke from the shoulder. His horses
 still lifted their feet light and high as they made their swift passage.

85

Dust flying splashed always the charioteer, and the chariot
 that was overlaid with gold and tin still rolled hard after
 the flying feet of the horses, and in their wake there was not much
 trace from the running rims of the wheels left in the thin dust.

The horses came in running hard. Diomedes stopped them
 in the middle of where the men were assembled, with the dense sweat starting
 and dripping to the ground from neck and chest of his horses.

90

He himself vaulted down to the ground from his shining chariot
 and leaned his whip against the yoke. Nor did strong Sthenelos
 delay, but made haste to take up the prizes, and gave the woman
 to his high-hearted companions to lead away and the tripod
 with ears to carry, while Diomedes set free the horses.

95

After him Neleian Antilochos drove in his horses,
 having passed Menelaos, not by speed but by taking advantage.
 But even Menelaos held fast his horses close on him ...

100

... At first he was left behind the length of a discus
 thrown, but was overtaking him fast, with Aithe
 of the fair mane, Agamemnon's mare, putting on a strong burst.
 If both of them had had to run the course any further,
 Menelaos would have passed him, and there could have been no argument ...

105

Last and behind them all came in the son of Admetos
 dragging his fine chariot and driving his horses before him.

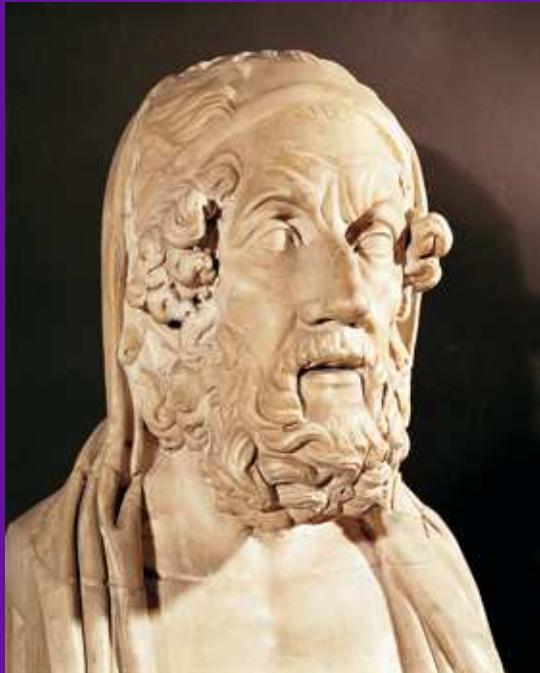
(*translation by Richmond Lattimore*)

Questions

- What part do the gods play in Homer's chariot race? In what way does it differ from the part they played in Virgil's boat race?
- Compare the incident at the "narrow place" (lines 43–82) with the incident at the rock in **Sergestus et Mnēstheus I and II** and **victor I**. What are the similarities and differences between the two incidents?
- What other points of similarity do you notice between Virgil's account of the boat race and Homer's account of the chariot race?

Vocabulary checklist 47

aequor, aequoris, n.	breeze, air
careō, carēre, carū	lack, be without
fluctus, fluctūs, m.	wave
lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum	fall, glide; pass by
laus, laudis, f.	praise, fame
mora, morae, f.	delay
optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus	pray for, long for
parum	too little
pondus, ponderis, n.	weight
sagitta, sagittae, f.	arrow
spatium, spatīi, n.	space, distance
virēs, virūm, f. pl.	strength



Homer.



NERO ET
AGRIPPINA

Stage 48

The two chief characters in this Stage are the Emperor Nero, who ruled from AD 54 to AD 68, and his mother Agrippina. The Latin text is based on the account written by Tacitus in his *Annals* (a history of Rome from the accession of the Emperor Tiberius to the death of Nero).

Agrippina was an able, ambitious, and unscrupulous woman. In AD 54 she arranged the murder of her husband, the Emperor Claudius, by poison. Then with the help of Burrus, the commander of the praetorian guard, she had Nero proclaimed emperor, although he was still only a youth of sixteen.

At first Agrippina enjoyed not only great prestige as the emperor's mother but also considerable power. Possible rivals to the young emperor were removed quickly, efficiently, and ruthlessly. But before long, Agrippina's power and influence were considerably weakened by Burrus and Nero's tutor Seneca, who established themselves as Nero's chief advisers. They handled Nero skillfully, mixing their advice with flattery, and in this way they controlled most of the major decisions about the government of Rome and the empire.

As time went on, however, Nero became more and more interested in getting his own way. He also increasingly hated his mother, partly because he had fallen violently in love with the beautiful Poppaea Sabina, and was determined to marry her, while his mother was equally determined that he should not. In the following pages, the outcome of their struggle is described.

Insidiae

I

at Nerō, quī vetustātē imperiī frēbat iam audācior, amōre Poppeae magis magisque accēnsus, postrēmō mātrem interficere cōnstituit; ministrōs convocātōs cōnsuluit utrum venēnō an ferrō vel quā aliā vī ūterētur. placuit p̄imō venēnum. sī tamen inter epulās p̄incipis venēnum dārētur, mors cāsū assignārī nō poterat, nam similē exitiō Britannicus anteā perierat; atque Agrippīna ipsa praeſūmendō remēdia mūnierat corpus. quō modō vīs et caedēs cēlārentur nēmō excōgitāre poterat; et metuēbat Nerō nē quis tantō facinorī dēlēctus iussa sperneret.

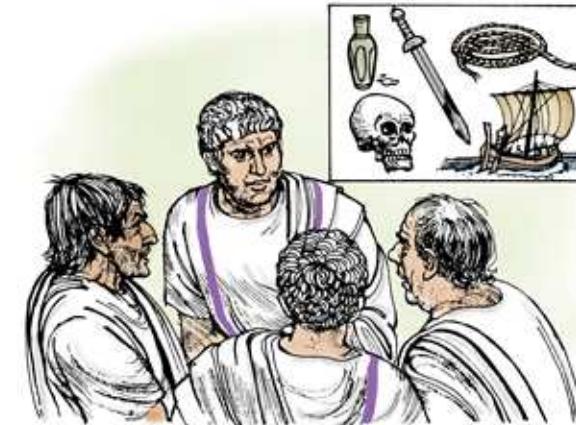
5



Coin showing Nero and Agrippina.

- vetustātē: vetustās** length, duration
- imperiī: imperium** rule, reign
- accēnsus** inflamed, on fire
- quā: quī** some
- epulās: epulae** feast, banquet
- assignārī: assignāre** attribute, put down to
- Britannicus** Britannicus (*the Emperor Claudius' son, poisoned on Nero's orders*)
- praeſūmendō: praeſūmere** take in advance
- caedēs** murder
- metuēbat: metuere** be afraid, fear
- nē quis** lest anyone, that anyone
- dēlēctus: dēligere** choose, select
- sperneret: spernere** disobey, disregard

tandem Anicētus libertus, cui Agrippīna odiō erat, cōnsilium callidum p̄oposuit: nāvem posse compōnī cuius pars, in ipsō marī per artem solūta, Agrippīnam ēiceret ignāram. subrīdēns Anicētus "nihil" inquit, "tam capāx fortuitōrum quam mare; et sī naufragiō Agrippīna perierit, quis adeō suspīciōs erit ut scelerī id assignet quod ventī et fluctūs fēcerint? mātre dēfūcta, facile erit p̄incipi p̄ietātem ostendere templō exstruendō vel ad ārās sacrificandō."



ministrōs convocātōs cōnsuluit utrum venēnō an ferrō vel quā aliā vī ūterētur.

10

- compōnī: compōnere** construct
- per artem** deliberately, by design
- ignārum: ignārus** unsuspecting
- subrīdēns: subrīdēre** smile, smirk
- capāx** liable to, full of
- fortuitōrum: fortuita** accidents
- dēfūcta: dēfūctus** dead

Questions

- 1 What two reasons, according to Tacitus, led Nero to make up his mind to kill his mother?
- 2 Whose advice did Nero seek? What question did he put to them?
- 3 What were the two disadvantages of poison? What were the two disadvantages of violence?
- 4 Who offered a solution to the problem? What plan did he suggest?
- 5 Why (according to Anicetus) would his plan be unlikely to arouse suspicion? What further steps did he suggest to convince the people of Nero's innocence?

II

placuit Nerōnī calliditās Anicētū; praetereā occāsiō optima reī temptandae aderat, nam Nerō illō tempore Bāiās ad diem fēstum celebrandum visitābat. illūc mātrem ēlīcuit; advenientī in itinere obviam iit; excēpit manū et complexū; ad vīllam eius marītīmam, Baulōs nōmine, dūxit. stābat prope vīllam nāvis ḍrnātissima, quasi ad mātrem pīncipis honōrandam; invitāta est Agrippīna ad epūlās Bāiīs parātās, ut facinus nocte ac tenebrīs cēlāretur. rūmōre tamen īnsidiārum per aliquem prōditōrem auditō, Agrippīna incerta pīmō num crēderet, tandem Bāiās lectīcā vecta est. ibi blanditiae sublevāvēre metum: cōmiter excepta, iuxtā Nerōnem ipsum ad cēnam collocāta est. Nerō modo familiāritāte iuvenīlī sē gerēbat, modo graviter loquēbātur. tandem, cēnā multīs sermōnibus diū prōductā, prōsequitur Agrippīnam abeuntem, artius oculīs et pectorī haerēns, vel ad simulātiōnem explendam vel quod peritūrae mātris suprēmus aspectus saevum animū eius retinēbat.



The coast near Baiae.

Baiās: Bāiae *Baiae (seaside resort)*

complexū: complexus

5 marītīmam: marītīmus
*embrace
seaside, by the sea*

Baulōs: Baulī *Bauli*

Bāiās *at Baiae*

10 prōditōrem: prōdītor
betrayer, informer

Baiās (line 9) *to Baiae*

sublevāvēre: sublevāre
remove, relieve

15 familiāritāte: familiāritās
friendliness

iuvenīlī: iuvenīlis *youthful*

prōductā: prōducere
prolong, continue

artius *particularly closely*

haerēns: haerēre *linger; cling*

simulātiōnem: simulātiō
pretense, play acting

explendam: explēre *complete, put final touch to*

suprēmus *last*

aspectus *sight*

retinēbat: retinēre *restrain, check*



The gulf of Baiae.

Questions

- 1 What did Nero think of Anicetus' suggestion? Why did he have a good opportunity to put the plan into operation?
- 2 What did Nero do when Agrippina arrived? Suggest a reason for his behavior.
- 3 What method of travel was available to Agrippina at Bauli? What did Nero invite her to do? Why was it important to Nero that his mother's journey to Baiae should take place in the evening?
- 4 What happened at this point to upset Nero's plan? What was Agrippina's first reaction to the information? How did she eventually travel to Baiae?
- 5 In what way did her feelings change at Baiae? How was she treated there? How did Nero vary his manner during the feast?
- 6 How did Nero behave on his mother's departure? What two explanations does Tacitus give for this?

About the language 1: deliberative questions

1 From Stage 38 on, you have met sentences like these:

quid faciam?

What am I to do?

quā tē regiōne requirām?

In what region am I to search for you?

utrum captīvōs liberēmus an interficiāmus?

Should we free the prisoners or kill them?

Questions like these are usually known as **deliberative questions**, because the speaker is “deliberating,” or wondering what to do.

Further examples:

a quid dicam?

b unde auxilium petāmus?

c quō mē vertam?

d utrum abeāmus an maneāmus?

2 You have also met sentences like these:

prīnceps amīcōs rogāvit quid faceret.

The emperor asked his friends what he should do.

pater nesciēbat quā regiōne filium requireret.

The father did not know in what region he was to search for his son.

We did what we could.

incertus eram utrum vī an venēnō ūterer.

I was uncertain whether to use violence or poison.

We did what we could.

In each of these examples, a deliberative question is being *reported* or *mentioned*.

Examples like these are known as **indirect deliberative questions**.

Further examples:

a difficile est Nerōnī scīre quid respondēret.

b libertum rogābō quō modō rem administrem.

c mīlitēs incertī erant utrum cēderent an resisterent.

d in animō volvēbāmus quāle dōnum rēgī darēmus.

3 Notice that the verb in a deliberative question, whether direct or indirect, is always subjunctive.

naufragium

I

deī noctem sīderibus illūstrem et placidō marī quiētam praebuēre,
quasi ad scelus patefaciendum. nec multum erat prōgressa nāvis,
duōbus amīcīs Agrippīnae comitantibus ex quibus Creperēius
Gallus haud procul gubernāculō adstābat. Acerrōnia ad pedēs
Agrippīnae cubitantis recumbēns paenitentiam filī per gaudium
commemorābat, cum datō signō ruere tēctum multō plumbō
grave. pressus Creperēius statim perit: Agrippīna et Acerrōnia
ēminentibus lectī parietibus protectae sunt. nec dissolutiō nāvis
sequēbātur, turbātī omnibus et quod plērīque nautae, sceleris
ignārī, eōs impediēbant quī cōncīr erant. hī igitur cōnātī sunt
ūnum in latus inclināre atque ita nāvem summergere; nōn tamē
eīs erat prōmptus in rem subitam cōnsēnsus, et alī contrā
nītentēs dedēre Agrippīnae facultātem lēniter in mare
dēscendendī.

illūstrem: illūstris *bright*
cubitantis: cubitare *lie down,*
rest

paenitentiam: paenitentia
5 *repentance, change of heart*

per gaudium *joyfully*
ruere = ruit: ruere *collapse*
plumbō: plumbum *lead*

10 pressus: premere *crush*
ēminentibus: ēminēre *project*
parietibus: paries *side*
protectae sunt: protēgere
protect

dissolutiō *disintegration, breakup*

turbātī: turbātus *confused*
inclināre *lean*

prōmptus *quick*

in rem subitam *to meet the sudden crisis*

cōnsēnsus *agreement*

contrā *in the opposite direction*
nītentēs: nītī *lean*

facultātem: facultās
opportunity



Agrippina the Younger.

Acerroñia autem, dum sē Agrippinam esse imprūdenter clāmat utque subvenīrētur mātri pīncipis, contīs et rēmīs cōnficitur. Agrippīna silēns eōque minus agnita (ñūnum tamen vulnus umerō excēpit) ad lēnunculōs quōsdam nandō pervenit quī haud procul erant; deinde in Lucrīnum lacum vecta, ad villam suam dūcitur.

ibi cōgītābat quid faceret; animadverterat enim nāvem neque ventīs ad lītus āctam, neque saxīs impulsam esse, sed summā suī parte velut terrestre māchināmentum concidisse. observāns etiam Acerroñiae caudem, simul suum vulnus aspiciēns, sōlum insidiārum remēdium esse putāvit, sī nō intellegere vidērētur. mīst igitur libertum quī nūntiāret filiō sē benigñtāte dēörum et fortūnā eius ēvāsisse gravem cāsum; ōrāre ut Nerō, quamvīs periculō mātris perterritus, visendī cūram differet; sibi ad praeſēns quiētē opus esse. atque interim medicāmenta vulnerī adhibet; imperat quoque ut testāmentum Acerroñiae requīrātur – hoc sōlum nōn per simulatiōnem.

Questions

- In what way, according to Tacitus, did the gods take sides (or seem to take sides) in the murder attempt?
- What was Acerronia doing when the roof fell in? Why does Tacitus mention this?
- What did the conspirators try to do after the original plan misfired? Why were they again unsuccessful?
- Why do you think Acerronia shouted out that she was Agrippina? Is there more than one possible explanation for her action?
- What reasons led Agrippina to realize that the shipwreck had been a deliberate attempt on her life? What did she decide was her only hope of safety?
- In her message, Agrippina described Nero as **periculō mātris perterritus**. Is this likely to be true? If not, why did Agrippina describe him in this way?
- What order did Agrippina give? What do you think her reason was?
- What impression do you gain from this passage of Agrippina's ability and character?

- 15 **imprūdenter** stupidly, foolishly
subvenīrētur help should be brought
cōnficitur: cōnficere finish off, murder
- 20 **eō** therefore, for this reason
agnita: agnoscere recognize
lēnunculōs: lēnunculus small boat
- Lucrīnum lacum: Lucrīnus**
- 25 **lacus** the Lucrine lake
(a lagoon near Baiae)
- āctam: agere** drive
summā suī parte from the top downwards (literally from its highest part)
- terrestre: terrestris** on land
māchināmentum machine, contraption
- concidisse: concidere** collapse
observāns: observāre notice, observe
- ēvāsisse: ēvādere** escape
quamvīs although
visendi: visere come to visit
cūram: cūra trouble, bother
ad praeſēns for the present, for the moment

II

at Nerōnī, nūntiōs patrātī facinoris exspectantī, affertur Agrippinam ēvāsisse ictū levī vulnerātam. tum pavōre examinis et affirmāns iam iamque adfore mātrem ultīonis avidam, Burrum et Senecam statim arcessīvit. longum utrūusque silentium; tandem Seneca respexit Burrum ac rogāvit num mīlītēs caudem Agrippīnae exsequī iubērentur. ille praetōriānōs tōtī Caesarum domū obstrictōs esse respondit: "mīlītēs" inquit, "nihil ātrōx adversus filiam Germānicī facere audēbunt; efficiat Anicētus prōmissa." quī hauquāquam haesitat; poscit summam sceleris. ad haec verba Nerō profitētur illō diē sibi tandem darī imperium auctōremque tantī mūneris esse libertum; Anicētō imperāvit ut ad villam statim proficiscerētur dūceretque sēcum hominēs fidēllissimōs.



Members of the praetorian guard, the emperor's personal bodyguard (see pages 252–253).

Questions

- Describe Nero's reaction to the news of Agrippina's escape. Compare it with Agrippina's own reaction to the attempt on her life.
- Why do you think Seneca and Burrus are so silent and unhelpful (lines 4–8)? Why do you think Anicetus is so eager to carry out the deed (lines 8–9)?
- How does Nero's mood change after Anicetus has taken charge? Explain his comment **illō diē ... esse libertum** (lines 10–11).

patrātī: patrāre accomplish, commit
affertur: afferre bring news, report

5 **ictū: ictus** blow
examīnis out of one's mind
iam iamque at any moment now

10 **adfore:** future infinitive of **adesse** be present, arrive
exsequī carry out
Caesarū: Caesarēs the Caesars (family of the first Roman emperors)

domū: domus family
obstrictōs esse: obstringere bind (with oath of loyalty)
ātrōx violent, dreadful
Germānicī: Germānicus

Germanicus (Agrippina's father, a popular general and member of the imperial family)

prōmissa: prōmissum promise
summā: summa full responsibility, supreme command
profītētur: profīterī declare

About the language 2: historical infinitives

1 From Unit 1 on, you have met sentences like this:

Pompēiānī rīdēbant, clāmābant, plaudēbant.

The Pompeians were laughing, shouting, and applauding.

2 In Stage 46, you met a different way of expressing the same idea:

Pompēiānī rīdēre, clāmāre, plaudere.

Further examples:

māter ūrāre hortārī iubēre ut fugerem.

My mother begged, urged, and ordered me to flee.

spectāculum horribile in campīs patentibus – sequī fugere occīdī capī.

There was a hideous sight on the open plains – men were chasing, were fleeing, were being killed, and were being captured.

Notice how the *infinitive* of the verb is used in these examples, instead of an indicative tense such as an imperfect, to describe events happening in the past. This is known as the *historical* use of the infinitive (**historical infinitive** for short). It occurs most often in descriptions of lively and rapid action.

3 Further examples:

a omnēs amīcī bibere cantāre saltāre.

b in urbe maximus pavor; alī ad portās fugere; alī bona sua in plausta impōnere; alī uxōres līberōsque quererē; omnēs viae multitūdine complērī. (from the historian Sallust)



percussōrēs

interim vulgātō Agrippīnae perīculō, omnēs, ut quisque audīverat, dēcurrere ad lītus. hī mōlēs, hī proximās scaphās cōnsendere; alī, quantum corpus sinēbat, prōcēdere in mare; nōnnūllī manūs extendere; omnīs ūra complērī questibūs, precibūs, clāmōre hominū diversa rogantū aut incerta respondentū; affluere ingēns multitūdō cum lūminibū, atque ubi incolumē esse Agrippīnam vulgātū est, ad grātulandum sēsē expedīre, dōnec aspectū agminis hominū armātōrum et minantium disiectī sunt. Anicētus vīllam mīlitibūs circumvenit, effrāctāque īanū servōs eōs abripit quī obstant, dōnec ad forēs cubiculū venīret; ibi paucī adstābant, cēterī terrōre irrumpentium exterrītis. cubiculō modicū lūmen inerat et ancillārum ūna; magis ac magis anxia fiēbat Agrippīna quod nēmō ā filiō vēnisset. abeunte dēnique ancillā, Agrippīna “tu quoque mē dēseris” inquit; tum respicit Anicētū triērarchō et centuriōne comitātū. “quī estis?” inquit. “dīcite mihi quārē hūc missī sītis.” nūllum respōnsum; circumsistunt lectum percussōrēs et prior triērarchus fūstī caput eius afflīxit. deinde centuriōnī gladiū ad occīdendum dēstringentī Agrippīna prōtēndēns uterū “ventrem ferī” exclāmāvit multisque vulneribū confecta est.

cremāta est ēādem nocte convīvālī lectō et exequīs vīlibus; num īspexerit mātrem mortuam Nerō (ut multī affirmant) et fōrmam corporis eius admīrātus sit, incertum est. hunc fore suī finē multōs ante annōs crēdiderat Agrippīna contempseratque. nam eī rogantī dē fortūnā Nerōnis respondērunt astrologī illum imperātūrum mātremque occīsūrum; atque Agrippīna “occīdat” inquit, “dum imperet.”



*“dīcite mihi quārē
hūc missī sītis.”*

percussōrēs: percussor

assassin

vulgātō: vulgāre make known

ut quisque as soon as each one

hī ... hī some ... others

mōlēs: mōlēs embankment,

seawall

quantum as far as

sinēbat: sinere allow

questibūs: questus

lamentation, cry of grief

10 affluere flock to the spot

sēsē expedīre prepare oneself, get ready

disiectī sunt: disicere scatter, disperse

15 abripit: abripere remove by force

forēs door

exterrītis: exterrēre frighten away

20 triērarchō: triērarchus naval captain

circumsistunt: circumsistere take up position around

fūstī: ablative offūstis

25 afflīxit: affligere strike

prōtēndēns: prōtēdere thrust forward

uterū: uterus womb

convīvālī: convīvālis dining

exequīs: exequiae funeral rites

fore = futūrum esse

contempserat: contemnere disregard

imperātūrum (esse):

imperāre be emperor

dum provided that

About the language 3: perfect subjunctive passive

1 In Stage 30, you met the perfect indicative passive:

duo cōsulēs crēāt̄ sunt.

Two consuls have been appointed.

2 In Stage 48, you have met sentences like these:

puer stultus nescit quot cōsulēs crēāt̄ sint.

The stupid boy does not know how many consuls have been appointed.

dominus cognōscere vult quanta pecūnia impēnsa sit.

The master wants to find out how much money has been spent.

The form of the verb in **boldface** is the **perfect subjunctive passive**.

Further examples:

a incertī sumus utrum Agrippīna servāta an necāta sit.

b dīcite mihi quot hostēs captī sint.

c ignōrō quārē ā centuriōne ēlēctus sim.

3 Compare the indicative and subjunctive forms of the perfect passive of **portō**:

<i>perfect passive indicative</i>	<i>perfect passive subjunctive</i>
-----------------------------------	------------------------------------

portātūs sum	portātūs sim
--------------	--------------

portātūs es	portātūs sīs
-------------	--------------

portātūs est	portātūs sit
--------------	--------------

portātū sumus	portātū sīmus
---------------	---------------

portātū estis	portātū sītis
---------------	---------------

portātū sunt	portātū sint
--------------	--------------

Perfect subjunctive passive forms of all conjugations are given on [page 273](#) of the Language information section.

4 Study the following examples:

tam callidus est mercātor ut magnās opēs adeptus sit.

The merchant is so clever that he has obtained great wealth.

iūdex scīre vult num senī umquam minātī sīmus.

The judge wants to know whether we have ever threatened the old man.

The words in **boldface** are perfect subjunctive forms of deponent verbs.

Further examples:

a dīc mihi quid patrōnus tibi pollicitus sit.

b scīre volō quārē nūntī nōndum profectī sint.

Perfect subjunctive forms of deponent verbs are given on [page 278](#).

Practicing the language

1 Translate each sentence into Latin by selecting correctly from the list of Latin words.

a I gave money to the boy (who was) carrying the books.

puerī	librōs	portantī	pecūnia	dēdī
puerō	līberōs	portatī	pecūniām	dēderam

b The same women are here again, master.

eadem	fēminaē	simul	adsunt	dominus
eaedem	fēminam	rūrsus	absunt	domine

c By running, he arrived at the prison more quickly.

currendō	ad carcerem	celeriter	advēnit
currentī	ā carcere	celerius	advēnī

d If you do not obey the laws, you will be punished.

sī	lēgibus	pārueritis	pūnīmīnī
nisi	lēgī	pārēbātis	pūniēmīnī

e Let us force the chiefs of the barbarians to turn back.

prīncipēs	barbarīs	revertor	cōgimus
prīncipem	barbarōrum	revertī	cōgāmus

f Men of this kind ought not to be made consuls.

hominibūs	huius	generis	cōnsulem	facere	nōnne	dēbet
hominēs	huic	generī	cōnsulēs	fierī	nōn	dēbent

- 2 Translate the first sentence. Then, with the help of [pages 258–259](#) and [270–271](#), express the same idea in a passive form by correctly completing the nouns and verbs in the second sentence. Finally, translate the second sentence.

For example:

timēbam nē mīlitēs mē caperent.

timēbam nē ā mīl... caper....

Translated and completed, this becomes:

timēbam nē mīlitēs mē caperent.

I was afraid that the soldiers would catch me.

timēbam nē ā mīlitibus caperer.

I was afraid that I would be caught by the soldiers.

dīc mihi quārē domina numquam ancillās laudet.

dīc mihi quārē ancill... numquam ā domin... laud....

Translated and completed, this becomes:

dīc mihi quārē domina numquam ancillās laudet.

Tell me why the mistress never praises the slave girls.

dic mihi quārē ancillae numquam ā dominā laudentur.

Tell me why the slave girls are never praised by the mistress.

- a dominus cognōscere vult num servī cēnam parent.
- dominus cognōscere vult num cēn... ā serv... par....
- b tantum erat incendium ut flammae aulam dēlērent.
- tantum erat incendium ut aul... flamm... dēlēr....
- c barbarī frūmentum incendērunt ut inopia cibī nō impedīret.
- barbarī frūmentum incendērunt ut inop... cibī imped....
- d in silvā tibi latendum est nē hostēs tē videant.
- in silvā tibi latendum est nē ab host... vid....
- e nisi vōs adiūvissem, barbarī vōs circumvēnissent.
- nisi vōs adiūvissem, ā barbar... circumven....
- f nescio quārē prīnceps mē relēgāverit.
- nescio quārē ā prīncip... relēg....

The emperor

By AD 59, when the events described in Stage 48 took place, Rome had been ruled by emperors for nearly a century. The Republican system of government (in which two consuls were elected annually as joint heads of state, assisted by other magistrates and the senate) had collapsed in violence and bloodshed at the end of the first century BC. Supreme power in the Roman world was in the hands of a single ruler, the emperor.

To the senate and the people of Rome, the emperor was often known as the **prīnceps** (*chief citizen*); to the soldiers, he was **imperātor** (*commander*). But the word **rēx** (*king*), which might seem a very appropriate title in view of the emperor's great personal power, was deliberately avoided, because the Romans had a long tradition of hatred toward the idea of kings. Kings had ruled Rome in the distant past, and the last one had been so unpopular that he was driven out; four and a half centuries later, when Julius Caesar was suspected of intending to make himself a king, he was assassinated.

The first emperor (Augustus) and most of his successors tried to encourage the belief that in many ways the business of government was being carried out much as before. For example, consuls and other magistrates continued to be appointed, and the senate continued to meet, just as in the days of the Republic. However, the senate, consuls, and magistrates were now much less powerful than before; and they were no longer elected by the people of Rome, but were in many cases appointed directly by the emperor.

The lives and reigns of the emperors in the first century AD are narrated by Tacitus in his *Annals* and *Histories*, and by Suetonius in his *Lives of the Emperors*. They give a vivid and sometimes appalling description of the emperors' immense personal power, the stupidity, greed, lust, extravagance, and cruelty of individual emperors, the frequent plottings and struggles for power that went on among the emperor's advisers and associates, and the savagery and ruthlessness with which emperors treated possible rivals or conspirators.

But even when the emperor was vicious, eccentric, or tyrannical, government of the empire still carried on, and the emperor himself had a crucial part to play; otherwise he risked losing popularity and power. Some emperors behaved sadistically or arrogantly to individuals and still carried out humane and efficient policies in government. For example, Domitian treated the senate with insolence and contempt, and put several of its members to death with little or no excuse, but Suetonius says of him that "he took such great care in supervising the city magistrates and provincial

governors that they were more honest and just during his reign than at any other time.”



Roman bridge built by Trajan at Alcantara, Spain.

If an emperor was conscientious, his workload was heavy. He took an important and ever-increasing part in administering the law; he chose men for provincial governorships, legionary commands, consulships, the senate, and numerous other positions and privileges; he acted as the commander-in-chief of the Roman army, determining the soldiers' pay, selecting the officers, allocating the legions and auxiliaries to particular parts of the empire, and (in the case of some emperors) leading troops on military campaigns; he received ambassadors from provinces and foreign states who brought him greetings, petitions, complaints, or accusations, to which he would be expected to make an eloquent speech in reply (one of the causes of Nero's dispute with his mother was her attempt to sit at his side, as if she were joint ruler with him, when foreign ambassadors came to see him); he dealt with the problems referred to him by provincial governors (the Bithynia correspondence of Pliny and Trajan provides a good example of this); he often had to care for the plebs or ordinary people of Rome, by providing regular distributions of grain or money to the citizens, putting on splendid and costly shows in the circus and amphitheater, and undertaking large programs of public building to beautify the city and relieve unemployment; he had the power to make law by bringing proposals before the senate; and by holding the post of Pontifex Maximus he was the official head of the state religion.



The Emperor Augustus as Pontifex Maximus presiding at a sacrifice.

The emperor at work

For much of his time, the emperor carried out his responsibilities by receiving and replying to requests, and by hearing and judging disputes. The following examples (based on actual situations and incidents) give some indication of the variety of pleas and problems which he dealt with:

The inhabitants of a neighboring town have made a violent attack on us, killing and injuring many innocent people.

Please, will you give Roman citizenship to a doctor who cured me of a dangerous illness.

Several towns in this province have been badly damaged by an earthquake; please, can troops and money be sent.

My husband has been in exile for many years and is now old and ill; I appeal to you to allow him to come back.

There is a serious danger of revolt by the local tribes, and our soldiers urgently need reinforcements.

Please grant our city the privilege of building a temple in honor of your late father.

My neighbor claims his slave is his, but he's a liar; the slave is mine.

Please, will you grant me the honor of the latus clavus [broad purple stripe on tunic and toga, indicating membership of the senate].

The governor of our province has illegally tortured and executed Roman citizens; we ask that he be tried and punished.

Some of the requests and disputes were handled in writing; a constant stream of letters, petitions, appeals, accusations, and other documents poured onto the emperor's desk. He was expected to deal with each one personally, deciding the substance of the reply and in many cases dictating its actual words, occasionally adding a sentence or two in his own handwriting. This correspondence was sometimes carried on in Latin, but often in Greek, especially when dealing with the eastern part of the empire. Other requests and disputes were presented verbally to the emperor in person by the people concerned, some of whom traveled vast distances to do so. An anecdote told by the Greek writer Dio about the

Emperor Hadrian illustrates the way in which a Roman emperor was expected to make himself available to his subjects:

When Hadrian was on a journey, he was stopped by a woman who wished to put a request to him. Being in a hurry, he moved on, saying “I’m too busy,” whereupon the woman shouted after him, “Then stop being emperor.” On hearing this, Hadrian turned around, came back, and listened to her request.

The emperor's helpers

It was impossible, of course, for one man to govern an empire of fifty million inhabitants single-handed, and although the emperors were reluctant to share power with other people, they needed reliable assistants of various sorts. For military tasks, the emperor could turn to the praetorian guard, who acted as his personal bodyguard and could be immensely important at times of crisis. In Tacitus' account of Nero's attempt to murder Agrippina, one of the first people the emperor sends for when the plot goes wrong is Burrus, the praetorian guard's commander (see [page 243](#), lines 3–4). When the emperor was administering the law or making a decision on which he wanted advice, he could summon his **cōnsilium** (*council*) and ask for opinions of his **amicī** (*friends*). For assistance in the day-to-day running of government, the emperor could make use of his slaves and (more particularly) his freedmen. These were not official employees of the state, but were members of the emperor's personal household. Some of the freedmen possessed great power and influence; for instance, in the events related in Stage 48, a crucial part was played by the freedman Anicetus, who not only invented a method for carrying out Agrippina's murder ([page 237](#), lines 10–17), but also took control of the situation when the plot misfired ([page 243](#), lines 8–12).

The succession

One of the most important questions facing an emperor was to decide who should succeed him. Sometimes the position of emperor was inherited by a son from his father; sometimes an emperor with no sons of his own adopted another member of the family as his heir and successor. Some emperors deliberately looked outside their family in an effort to find the most suitable person; the Emperor Nerva chose an experienced and popular general (Trajan) to succeed him, and adopted him as his heir in preference to any of his own relatives. But on many occasions, the question was settled by force and violence. For example, in



*The emperor's freedman
Epaphroditus.*

AD 41 the soldiers of the praetorian guard, having murdered the Emperor Caligula, found Caligula's uncle Claudius hiding in the palace and proclaimed him as the new emperor; nobody was in a position to stop them, because they could get their own way by physical force. And in AD 69, which became known as the “year of the four emperors,” there was a savage civil war, in which each of several rival candidates, supported by different sections of the Roman army, tried to make himself emperor.

Emperor-worship

At his death, an emperor was normally deified. He received the title **divus** (*god*) and was honored with prayers and sacrifices; altars and (sometimes) temples were dedicated to him. Some emperors were worshipped as gods even during their lifetime, especially in the eastern provinces, which had long been accustomed to paying divine honors to their own rulers. For many inhabitants of the empire, worship of this kind was a natural response to the immense power possessed by a Roman emperor.



Carved gem showing the deification of the Emperor Augustus.

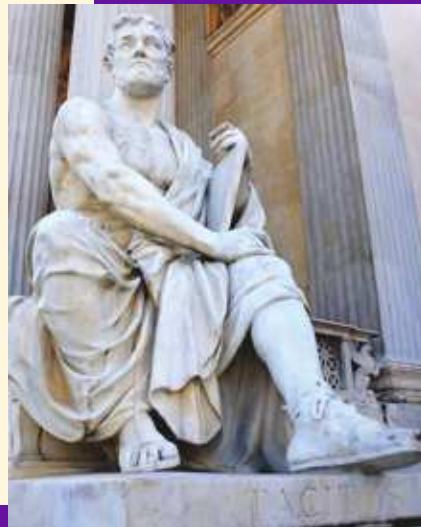
Vocabulary checklist 48

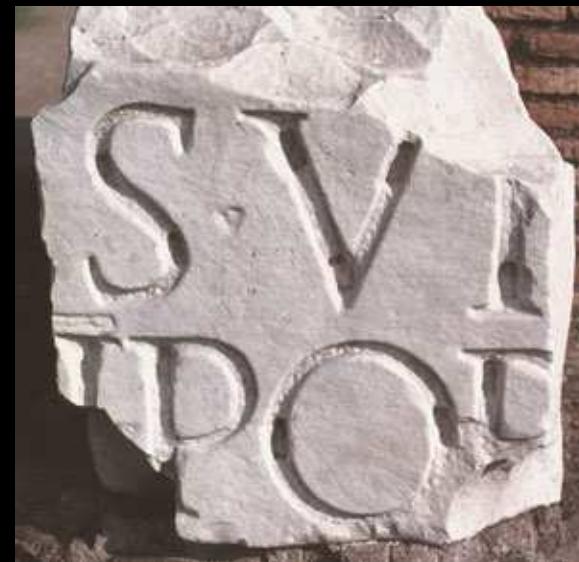
caedēs, caedis, f.	<i>murder, slaughter</i>
dōnec	<i>until</i>
ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī	<i>escape</i>
incolumis, incolumē	<i>safe</i>
latus, lateris, n.	<i>side</i>
metuō, metuere, metuī	<i>be afraid, fear</i>
mūnus, mūneris, n.	<i>gift</i>
nē quis	<i>in case anyone</i>
nē quid	<i>in case anything</i>
pectus, pectoris, n.	<i>breast, heart</i>
pietās, pietātis, f.	<i>duty, piety (respect for the gods, homeland, and family)</i>
premō, premere,	
pressī, pressus	<i>press, crush</i>
quisque	<i>each</i>
vel ... vel	<i>either ... or</i>
velut	<i>as if, like</i>
vīs, vis, f.	<i>force, violence</i>

Numbers

ūndecim	<i>eleven</i>
duodecim	<i>twelve</i>
tredecim	<i>thirteen</i>
quattuordecim	<i>fourteen</i>
quīndecim	<i>fifteen</i>
sēdecim	<i>sixteen</i>
septendecim	<i>seventeen</i>
duodēvīgintī	<i>eighteen</i>
ūndēvīgintī	<i>nineteen</i>
trecentī	<i>three hundred</i>
quadrīgentī	<i>four hundred</i>
quīngentī	<i>five hundred</i>
sescentī	<i>six hundred</i>
septīngentī	<i>seven hundred</i>
octīngentī	<i>eight hundred</i>
nōngentī	<i>nine hundred</i>

Statue of Tacitus,
outside the Austrian
parliament in Vienna.





Fragment of an inscription in Domitian's palace. There were once bronze letters set into the marble.

LANGUAGE INFORMATION

BLANK PAGE

Contents

Part One: About the language	258
Nouns	258
Adjectives	260
Comparitives and superlatives	262
Pronouns I: <i>ego, tū, nōs, vōs, sē</i>	264
Pronouns II: <i>hic, ille, ipse, is, idem</i>	265
Pronouns III: <i>quī, quīdam</i>	267
Verbs	268
Deponent verbs	276
Irregular verbs	280
Uses of the cases	287
Uses of the participle	289
Uses of the subjunctive	291
Indirect statement	294
Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse	297
Conditional sentences	298
Gerunds and gerundives	299
Part Two: Literary terms and rhetorical devices	301
Part Three: Metrics	303
Part Four: Vocabulary	307

Part One: About the language

Nouns

1

	<i>first declension</i>	<i>second declension</i>		<i>third declension</i>									
GENDER	f.	m.	m.	n.	m.	m.	m.	f.	f.	n.	n.	n.	GENDER
SINGULAR													SINGULAR
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	puella	servus (<i>voc.</i> serve)	faber	templum	mercātor	leō	cīvis	vōx	urbs	nōmen	tempus	mare	<i>nominative and vocative</i>
<i>genitive (of)</i>	puellae	servī	fabrī	templī	mercātōris	leōnis	cīvis	vōcis	urbis	nōminis	temporis	maris	<i>genitive (of)</i>
<i>dative (to, for)</i>	puellae	servō	fabrō	templō	mercātōri	leōnī	cīvī	vōcī	urbī	nōminī	temporī	marī	<i>dative (to, for)</i>
<i>accusative</i>	puellam	servum	fabrum	templum	mercātōrem	leōnem	cīvem	vōcem	urbem	nōmen	tempus	mare	<i>accusative</i>
<i>ablative (by, with)</i>	puellā	servō	fabrō	templō	mercātōre	leōne	cīve	vōce	urbe	nōmine	tempore	marī	<i>ablative (by, with)</i>
PLURAL													PLURAL
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	puellae	servī	fabrī	templa	mercātōrēs	leōnēs	cīvēs	vōcēs	urbēs	nōmina	tempora	maria	<i>nominative and vocative</i>
<i>genitive (of)</i>	puellārum	servōrum	fabrōrum	templōrum	mercātōrum	leōnum	cīvium	vōcum	urbium	nōminum	temporum	marium	<i>genitive (of)</i>
<i>dative (to, for)</i>	puellīs	servīs	fabrīs	templīs	mercātōribus	leōnibus	cīvibus	vōcibus	urbibus	nōminibus	temporibus	maribus	<i>dative (to, for)</i>
<i>accusative</i>	puellās	servōs	fabrōs	templa	mercātōrēs	leōnēs	cīvēs	vōcēs	urbēs	nōmina	tempora	maria	<i>accusative</i>
<i>ablative (by, with)</i>	puellīs	servīs	fabrīs	templīs	mercātōribus	leōnibus	cīvibus	vōcibus	urbibus	nōminibus	temporibus	maribus	<i>ablative (by, with)</i>

	<i>fourth declension</i>		<i>fifth declension</i>	
GENDER	m.	n.	m.	f.
SINGULAR				
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	portus	genū	diēs	rēs
<i>genitive (of)</i>	portūs	genūs	diētī	reī
<i>dative (to, for)</i>	portūī	genū	diētī	reī
<i>accusative</i>	portum	genū	diem	rem
<i>ablative (by, with)</i>	portū	genū	diē	rē
PLURAL				
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	portūs	genua	diēs	rēs
<i>genitive (of)</i>	portuum	genuum	diērum	rērum
<i>dative (to, for)</i>	portibus	genibus	diēbus	rēbus
<i>accusative</i>	portūs	genua	diēs	rēs
<i>ablative (by, with)</i>	portibus	genibus	diēbus	rēbus

2 For the ways in which the different cases are used, see pp. 287–288.

3 Compare the endings of **mare** with those of **nōmen** and **tempus**. Notice in particular the different form of the ablative singular. Other third declension neuter nouns whose nominative singular ends in -e, such as **conclāve** (*room*) and **cubīle** (*bed*), form their cases in the same way as **mare**.

4 Give the Latin for the nouns in *italic type* by forming the appropriate case of the word in **boldface**. If necessary, use the tables here and the Vocabulary on pp. 309–352 to help you with the declension and gender of the nouns.

- a You have a very unusual *name*. (**nōmen**)
- b The young man took the girl's *hands* in his. (**manus**)
- c The informer told Epaphroditus an interesting *thing* about the senator. (**rēs**)
- d The soldiers crossed several *rivers* on their march. (**flūmen**)
- e The master discovered the *body of the young man* in the well. (**corpus, iuvenis**)
- f Agricola quickly issued many *orders* to the tribunes. (**iussum, tribūnus**)
- g Our men were spurred on by the *hope of victory*. (**spēs, victōria**)
- h Domitian spent many *days and nights* thinking about his enemies. (**diēs, nox**)

Adjectives

1 first and second declension

SINGULAR	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	bonus (voc. bone)	bona	bonum	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>genitive</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>dative</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>accusative</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>ablative</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō
PLURAL						
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	bonī	bonae	bona	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>genitive</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>dative</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>accusative</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>ablative</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

2 third declension

SINGULAR	<i>masculine and feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine and feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	fortis	forte	fēlīx	fēlīx
<i>genitive</i>	fortis	fortis	fēlīcis	fēlīcis
<i>dative</i>	fortī	fortī	fēlīcī	fēlīcī
<i>accusative</i>	fortem	forte	fēlīcem	fēlīx
<i>ablative</i>	fortī	fortī	fēlīcī	fēlīcī
PLURAL				
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	fortēs	fortia	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia
<i>genitive</i>	fortium	fortium	fēlīcium	fēlīcium
<i>dative</i>	fortibus	fortibus	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus
<i>accusative</i>	fortēs	fortia	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia
<i>ablative</i>	fortibus	fortibus	fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus

3rd declension continued:

SINGULAR	<i>masculine and feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine and feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	ingēns	ingēns	longiōr	longiōs
<i>genitive</i>	ingentis	ingentis	longiōris	longiōris
<i>dative</i>	ingentī	ingentī	longiōrī	longiōri
<i>accusative</i>	ingentem	ingēns	longiōrem	longiōs
<i>ablative</i>	ingentī	ingentī	longiōre	longiōre
PLURAL				
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	ingentēs	ingentia	longiōrēs	longiōra
<i>genitive</i>	ingentium	ingentium	longiōrum	longiōrum
<i>dative</i>	ingentibus	ingentibus	longiōribus	longiōribus
<i>accusative</i>	ingentēs	ingentia	longiōrēs	longiōra
<i>ablative</i>	ingentibus	ingentibus	longiōribus	longiōribus

Comparatives and superlatives

Adjectives

	<i>comparative</i>	<i>superlative</i>
longus <i>long</i>	longior <i>longer</i>	longissimus <i>longest, very long</i>
pulcher <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrior <i>more beautiful</i>	pulcherrimus <i>most beautiful, very beautiful</i>
fortis <i>brave</i>	fortior <i>braver</i>	fortissimus <i>bravest, very brave</i>
fēlix <i>lucky</i>	fēlīcior <i>luckier</i>	fēlīcissimus <i>luckiest, very lucky</i>
prūdēns <i>shrewd</i>	prūdentior <i>shrewder</i>	prūdentissimus <i>shrewdest, very shrewd</i>
facilis <i>easy</i>	faciliōr <i>easier</i>	facillimus <i>easiest, very easy</i>

2 Irregular forms:

bonus <i>good</i>	melior	optimus
	better	<i>best, very good</i>
malus <i>bad</i>	peior	pessimus
	worse	<i>worst, very bad</i>
magnus <i>big</i>	maior	maximus
	bigger	<i>biggest, very big</i>
parvus <i>small</i>	minor	minimus
	smaller	<i>smallest, very small</i>
multus <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimus
	more	<i>most, very much</i>
multī <i>many</i>	plūrēs	plūrimī
	more	<i>most, very many</i>

3 The forms of the comparative adjective **longior** are shown on [p. 261](#).

4 Superlative adjectives such as **longissimus** change their endings in the same way as **bonus** (shown on [p. 260](#)).

Adverbs

1 Study the way in which comparative and superlative adverbs are formed.

	<i>comparative</i>	<i>superlative</i>
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
widely	more widely	most widely, very widely
pulchrē	pulchrius	pulchrissimē
beautifuly	more beautifully	most beautifully, very beautifully
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
bravely	more bravely	most bravely, very bravely
fēlīciter	fēlīcius	fēlīcissimē
luckily	more luckily	most luckily, very luckily
prūdenter	prūdentius	prūdentissimē
shrewdly	more shrewdly	most shrewdly, very shrewdly
facile	facilius	facillimē
easily	more easily	most easily, very easily

2 Irregular forms:

bene	melius	optimē
well	better	<i>best, very well</i>
male	peius	pessimē
badly	worse	<i>worst, very badly</i>
magnopere	magis	maximē
greatly	more	<i>most, very greatly</i>
paullum	minus	minimē
little	less	<i>least, very little</i>
multum	plūs	plūrimum
much	more	<i>most, very much</i>

3 Translate the following examples:

- a mīlitēs nostrī fortius pugnāvērunt quam barbarī.
- b faber mūrum facillimē refēcit.
- c ubi strepitum audīvi, magis timēbam.
- d optimē respondistū, mī fīlī.

Pronouns I: ego, tū, nōs, vōs, sē

1 ego and tū (*I, you, etc.*)

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>nominative</i>	ego	tū	nōs	vōs
<i>genitive</i>	meī	tuī	nostrum	vestrum
<i>dative</i>	mihi	tibi	nōbīs	vōbīs
<i>accusative</i>	mē	tē	nōs	vōs
<i>ablative</i>	mē	tē	nōbīs	vōbīs

2 sē (himself, herself, themselves, etc.)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>genitive</i>	suī	suī
<i>dative</i>	sibi	sibi
<i>accusative</i>	sē	sē
<i>ablative</i>	sē	sē

3 Note the adjectives that correspond to the pronouns in paragraphs 1 and 2:

meus, mea, meum	my	noster, nostra, nostrum	our
tuus, tua, tuum	your (s.)	vester, vestra, vestrum	your (pl.)
suus, sua, suum	his own, her own		
	its own, their own		

These adjectives, like all other adjectives, agree with the nouns they describe in case, number, and gender.

For example:

urbs vestra ā barbarīs mox dēlēbitur.

Your city will soon be destroyed by barbarians.

domina līberōs suōs semper laudat.

The mistress is always praising her own children,

4 Give the Latin for the words in *italic type* in the following sentences:

- a The prisoner was led away *from us*.
- b *Our citizens* are very courageous.
- c He improved *his own villa*, but not his father's.
- d The welfare of *my slaves* is very important.
- e They wounded *themselves* to avoid being sent into battle.
- f I do not want to give anything *to you* (s.).
- g The patron gave money so that the villagers could have *their own temple*.
- h *You* (pl.) are rich, but *we* are happy.

Pronouns II: hic, ille, ipse, is, īdem

1 hic (*this, these, etc.; also used with the meaning he, she, they, etc.*)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>genitive</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>dative</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>accusative</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>ablative</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

2 ille (*that, those, etc.; also used with the meaning he, she, it, etc.*)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>genitive</i>	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>dative</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>accusative</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>ablative</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

3 ipse (*myself, yourself, himself, etc.*)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>genitive</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>dative</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>accusative</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>ablative</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

4 is (*he, she, it*, etc.; also used with the meaning *that, those*, etc.)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative</i>	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
<i>genitive</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>dative</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
<i>accusative</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>ablative</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs

Notice again how forms of **is** can also be used with the relative pronoun **quī**:

id quod mihi nārrāvistī statim Imperātōrī nūntiābitur.

What you have told to me will be reported at once to the Emperor.

eīs quī modo advēnērunt neque cibum neque pecūniām dabō.

To those who have just arrived I shall give neither food nor money.

5 **īdem** (*the same*)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative</i>	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>genitive</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>dative</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
<i>accusative</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>ablative</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

Compare the forms of **īdem** with **is** in paragraph 4.

Pronouns III: **quī, quīdam**

1 The relative pronoun **quī** (*who, which, etc.*)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>genitive</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>dative</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>accusative</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>ablative</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Notice again the use of the *connecting relative* at the beginning of sentences with the meaning *he, she, it, this, etc.*:

rēx signum dedit. **quod** simulac vīdērunt, haruspīcēs ad āram prōgressī sunt.

The king gave a signal. As soon as they saw it, the soothsayers advanced towards the altar.

cōnsul "captīvīs parcere cōstitūī," inquit. **quibus** verbīs audītīs, senātōrēs plausērunt.
"I have decided to spare the prisoners," said the consul. On hearing these words, the senators applauded.

2 From Stage 17 on, you have met various forms of the word **quīdam**, meaning *one, a certain:*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nominative</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>genitive</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>dative</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>accusative</i>	quendam	quandam	quoddam	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>ablative</i>	quōdām	quādām	quōdām	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

quōsdam hominēs nōvī, quī tē adiuvāre poterunt.

I know certain men, who will be able to help you.

subitō senātōr quīdam, celeriter prōgressus, silentium poposcit.

Suddenly one senator stepped forward quickly and demanded silence.

Compare the forms of **quīdam** with **quī** in paragraph 1.

With the help of the table above, find the Latin for the words in *italic type* in the following sentences.

- a Certain ladies were helping with the wedding preparations.
- b One young man was addressing the crowd.
- c I was staying at the house of a certain friend.

Verbs

Indicative active

1

	<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PRESENT	<i>I carry, you carry, etc.</i>	<i>I teach, you teach, etc.</i>	<i>I drag, you drag, etc.</i>	<i>I hear, you hear, etc.</i>
	portō	doceō	trahō	audiō
	portās	docēs	trahis	audiſ
	portat	docet	trahit	audit
	portāmus	docēmus	trahimus	audiſmus
	portātis	docētis	trahitis	audiſtis
	portant	docent	trahunt	audiunt
IMPERFECT	<i>I was carrying</i>	<i>I was teaching</i>	<i>I was dragging</i>	<i>I was hearing</i>
	portābam	docēbam	trahēbam	audiēbam
	portābās	docēbās	trahēbās	audiēbās
	portābat	docēbat	trahēbat	audiēbat
	portābāmus	docēbāmus	trahēbāmus	audiēbāmus
	portābātis	docēbātis	trahēbātis	audiēbātis
	portābānt	docēbānt	trahēbānt	audiēbānt
FUTURE	<i>I shall carry</i>	<i>I shall teach</i>	<i>I shall drag</i>	<i>I shall hear</i>
	portābō	docēbō	traham	audiām
	portābis	docēbis	trahēs	audiēs
	portābit	docēbit	trahet	audiet
	portābāmus	docēbāmus	trahēbāmus	audiēbāmus
	portābātis	docēbātis	trahēbātis	audiēbātis
	portābānt	docēbānt	trahēbānt	audiēbānt

- 2 Translate each word, then change it from the singular to the plural, so that it means *we shall ...* or *they will ...* instead of *I shall* or *s/he will ...*. Then translate again.

nāvigābō; mittet; persuādēbit; impediām; monēbō; dūcam.

- 3 For ways of checking whether a verb ending in -ēs, -et, etc. belongs to the *present* tense of a *second conjugation* verb like **doceō** or the *future* tense of a *third conjugation* verb like **trahō**, see paragraph 3 on [p. 307](#).

4

	<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PERFECT	<i>I (have) carried</i>	<i>I (have) taught</i>	<i>I (have) dragged</i>	<i>I (have) heard</i>
	portāvī	docūī	trāxī	audīvī
	portāvistī	docuistī	trāxistī	audīvistī
	portāvit	docuit	trāxit	audīvit
	portāvīmus	docuīmus	trāxīmus	audīvīmus
	portāvīstīs	docuīstīs	trāxīstīs	audīvīstīs
	portāvērunt	docuērunt	trāxērunt	audīvērunt
PLUPERFECT	<i>I had carried</i>	<i>I had taught</i>	<i>I had dragged</i>	<i>I had heard</i>
	portāveram	docueram	trāixeram	audīveram
	portāverās	docuerās	trāixerās	audīverās
	portāverat	docuerat	trāixerat	audīverat
	portāverāmus	docuerāmus	trāixerāmus	audīverāmus
	portāverātīs	docuerātīs	trāixerātīs	audīverātīs
	portāverant	docuerant	trāixerant	audīverant
FUTURE PERFECT	<i>I shall have carried</i>	<i>I shall have taught</i>	<i>I shall have dragged</i>	<i>I shall have heard</i>
	portāverō	docuerō	trāixerō	audīverō
	portāveris	docueris	trāixeris	audīveris
	portāverit	docuerit	trāixerit	audīverit
	portāverīmus	docuerīmus	trāixerīmus	audīverīmus
	portāverītīs	docuerītīs	trāixerītīs	audīverītīs
	portāverīnt	docuerīnt	trāixerīnt	audīverīnt

The future perfect is often translated by the English present tense:

sī mē ad portum dūixeris, pecūniam tibi dabō.

If you take me to the harbor, I shall give you money.

Indicative passive

1 In Unit 3, you met the following forms of the *passive*:

	<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PRESENT	<i>I am (being) carried</i>	<i>I am (being) taught</i>	<i>I am (being) dragged</i>	<i>I am (being) heard</i>
	portor	doceor	trahor	audior
	portāris	docēris	traheris	audīris
	portātur	docētur	trahitur	audītur
	portāmur	docēmur	trahimur	audīmur
	portāminī	docēminī	trahiminī	audīminī
	portantur	docentur	trahuntur	audiuntur
IMPERFECT	<i>I was being carried</i>	<i>I was being taught</i>	<i>I was being dragged</i>	<i>I was being heard</i>
	portābar	docēbar	trahēbar	audiēbar
	portābāris	docēbāris	trahēbāris	audiēbāris
	portābātur	docēbātur	trahēbātur	audiēbātur
	portābāmur	docēbāmur	trahēbāmur	audiēbāmur
	portābāminī	docēbāminī	trahēbāminī	audiēbāminī
	portābāntur	docēbāntur	trahēbāntur	audiēbāntur
FUTURE	<i>I shall be carried</i>	<i>I shall be taught</i>	<i>I shall be dragged</i>	<i>I shall be heard</i>
	portābor	docēbor	trahar	audiar
	portāberis	docēberis	trahēris	audiēris
	portābitur	docēbitur	trahētūr	audiētūr
	portābāmur	docēbāmur	trahēbāmur	audiēbāmur
	portābāminī	docēbāminī	trahēbāminī	audiēbāminī
	portābāntur	docēbāntur	trahēbāntur	audiēbāntur

2 In paragraph 1, find the Latin for:

he is being dragged; you (s.) will be carried; you (pl.) were being heard; we are taught; they will be dragged; we shall be heard.

3 Translate each verb, then change it from the singular to the plural, so that it means *you* (pl.) ... or *they* ... instead of *you* (s.) or *s/he* Then translate again.

audiēbāris; docēris; trahētūr; portābitur; mittēbāris; amātur.

4 Notice how the first and second conjugations form the future passive tense in a different way from the third and fourth conjugations. Compare this with the future active tense on [p. 268](#).

5

	<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PERFECT	<i>I have been carried, I was carried</i>	<i>I have been taught, I was taught</i>	<i>I have been dragged, I was dragged</i>	<i>I have been heard, I was heard</i>
	portātūs sum	doctus sum	tractus sum	audītūs sum
	portātūs es	doctus es	tractus es	audītūs es
	portātūs est	doctus est	tractus est	audītūs est
	portātū sumus	doctī sumus	tractī sumus	audītū sumus
	portātū estis	doctī estis	tractī estis	audītū estis
	portātū sunt	doctī sunt	tractī sunt	audītū sunt
PLUPERFECT	<i>I had been carried</i>	<i>I had been taught</i>	<i>I had been dragged</i>	<i>I had been heard</i>
	portātūs eram	doctus eram	tractus eram	audītūs eram
	portātūs erās	doctus erās	tractus erās	audītūs erās
	portātūs erat	doctus erat	tractus erat	audītūs erat
	portātū erāmus	doctī erāmus	tractī erāmus	audītū erāmus
	portātū erātis	doctī erātis	tractī erātis	audītū erātis
	portātū erant	doctī erant	tractī erant	audītū erant
FUTURE	<i>I shall have been carried</i>	<i>I shall have been taught</i>	<i>I shall have been dragged</i>	<i>I shall have been heard</i>
	portātūs erō	doctus erō	tractus erō	audītūs erō
	portātūs eris	doctus eris	tractus eris	audītūs eris
	portātūs erit	doctus erit	tractus erit	audītūs erit
	portātū erimus	doctī erimus	tractī erimus	audītū erimus
	portātū eritis	doctī eritis	tractī eritis	audītū eritis
	portātū erunt	doctī erunt	tractī erunt	audītū erunt

6 The future perfect passive, like the future perfect active, is often translated by an English present tense:

sī exercitus noster crās victus erit, hostēs oppidum capere poterunt.

If our army is defeated tomorrow, the enemy will be able to capture the town.

7 Translate each example, then change it from the pluperfect to the perfect tense, keeping the same person and number (i.e. 1st person singular, etc.). Then translate each example again.

For example:

portātū eramus *we had been carried* becomes **portātū sumus** *we have been carried, we were carried.*

doctus eram; audītū erant; missī erātis; accusātū erāmus; rogātūs erās; ducta erat.

Subjunctive active

	<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PRESENT	portem	doceam	traham	audiam
	portēs	doceās	trahās	audiās
	portet	doceat	trahat	audiat
	portēmus	doceāmus	trahāmus	audiāmus
	portētis	doceātis	trahātis	audiātis
	portent	doceant	trahant	audiant
IMPERFECT	portārem	docērem	traherem	audirem
	portārēs	docērēs	traherēs	audirēs
	portāret	docēret	traheret	audiret
	portārēmus	docērēmus	traherēmus	audirēmus
	portārētis	docērētis	traherētis	audirētis
	portārent	docērent	traherent	audirent
PERFECT	portāverim	docuerim	trāxerim	audiverim
	portāverīs	docuerīs	trāxerīs	audiverīs
	portāverit	docuerit	trāxerit	audiverit
	portāverīmus	docuerīmus	trāxerīmus	audiverīmus
	portāverītis	docuerītis	trāxerītis	audiverītis
	portāverint	docuerint	trāxerint	audiverint
PLUPERFECT	portāvissem	docuissem	trāxissem	audivissem
	portāvissēs	docuissēs	trāxissēs	audivissēs
	portāvisset	docuisset	trāxisset	audivisset
	portāvissēmus	docuissēmus	trāxissēmus	audivissēmus
	portāvissētis	docuissētis	trāxissētis	audivissētis
	portāvissent	docuissent	trāxissent	audivissent

Subjunctive passive

	<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PRESENT	porter	docear	trahar	audiar
	portēris	doceāris	trahāris	audiāris
	portētur	doceātur	trahātur	audiātur
	portēmur	doceāmus	trahāmur	audiāmur
	portēminī	doceāminī	trahāminī	audiāminī
	portentur	doceanter	trahantur	audiantur
IMPERFECT	portārer	docērer	traherer	audirer
	portārēris	docērēris	traherēris	audirēris
	portārētur	docērētur	traherētur	audirētur
	portārēmur	docērēmur	traherēmur	audirēmur
	portārēminī	docērēminī	traherēminī	audirēminī
	portārentur	docērentur	traherentur	audirentur
PERFECT	portātus sim	doctus sim	tractus sim	auditus sim
	portātus sīs	doctus sīs	tractus sīs	auditus sīs
	portātus sit	doctus sit	tractus sit	auditus sit
	portātus sīmus	doctī sīmus	tractī sīmus	auditiū sīmus
	portātī sītis	doctī sītis	tractī sītis	auditiū sītis
	portātī sint	doctī sint	tractī sint	auditiū sint
PLUPERFECT	portātus essem	doctus essem	tractus essem	auditus essem
	portātus essēs	doctus essēs	tractus essēs	auditus essēs
	portātus esset	doctus esset	tractus esset	auditus esset
	portātī essēmus	doctī essēmus	tractī essēmus	auditiū essēmus
	portātī essētis	doctī essētis	tractī essētis	auditiū essētis
	portātī essent	doctī essent	tractī essent	auditiū essent

2 For ways in which the subjunctive is used, see pp. 291-293.

Other forms of the verb

1	IMPERATIVE SINGULAR PLURAL	<i>carry!</i> <i>portā</i> <i>portātē</i>	<i>teach!</i> <i>docē</i> <i>docētē</i>	<i>drag!</i> <i>trahe</i> <i>trahītē</i>	<i>hear!</i> <i>audī</i> <i>audītē</i>
----------	----------------------------------	---	---	--	--

2	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	<i>carrying</i> <i>portāns</i>	<i>teaching</i> <i>docēns</i>	<i>dragging</i> <i>trahēns</i>	<i>hearing</i> <i>audiēns</i>
----------	-----------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

Present participles change their endings in the same way as **ingēns** (shown on [p. 261](#)), except that their ablative singular sometimes ends in **-e**, e.g. **portante, docente**.

PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE	<i>having been carried</i> <i>portātūs</i>	<i>having been taught</i> <i>doctus</i>	<i>having been dragged</i> <i>tractus</i>	<i>having been heard</i> <i>audītūs</i>
-------------------------------	---	--	--	--

For examples of perfect active participles, see **Deponent verbs**, [p. 279](#).

FUTURE PARTICIPLE	<i>about to carry</i> <i>portātūrus</i>	<i>about to teach</i> <i>doctūrus</i>	<i>about to drag</i> <i>tractūrus</i>	<i>about to hear</i> <i>audītūrus</i>
----------------------	--	--	--	--

Perfect passive and future participles change their endings in the same way as **bonus** (shown on [p. 260](#)).

For examples of ways in which participles are used, see [pp. 289-290](#).

3	PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE	<i>to carry</i> <i>portāre</i>	<i>to teach</i> <i>docēre</i>	<i>to drag</i> <i>trahere</i>	<i>to hear</i> <i>audīre</i>
	PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE	<i>to be carried</i> <i>portārī</i>	<i>to be taught</i> <i>docērī</i>	<i>to be dragged</i> <i>trahī</i>	<i>to be heard</i> <i>audīrī</i>
	PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE	<i>to have carried</i> <i>portāvisse</i>	<i>to have taught</i> <i>docuisse</i>	<i>to have dragged</i> <i>trāxisse</i>	<i>to have heard</i> <i>audīvisse</i>
	PERFECT PASSIVE INFINITIVE	<i>to have been carried</i> <i>portātūs esse</i>	<i>to have been taught</i> <i>doctus esse</i>	<i>to have been dragged</i> <i>tractus esse</i>	<i>to have been heard</i> <i>audītūs esse</i>
	FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE	<i>to be about</i> <i>to carry</i> <i>portātūrus esse</i>	<i>to be about</i> <i>to teach</i> <i>doctūrus esse</i>	<i>to be about</i> <i>to drag</i> <i>tractūrus esse</i>	<i>to be about</i> <i>to hear</i> <i>audītūrus esse</i>

For examples of ways in which infinitives are used to express indirect statements, see [pp. 294-296](#).

4	GERUNDIVE	<i>portandus</i>	<i>docendus</i>	<i>trahendus</i>	<i>audiendus</i>
----------	-----------	------------------	-----------------	------------------	------------------

Gerundives change their endings in the same way as **bonus** ([p. 260](#)).

For ways in which the gerundive is used, see [p. 299-300](#).

5	GERUND (<i>carrying, etc.</i>) nominative genitive dative accusative ablativ	(no forms)	<i>portandī</i>	<i>docendī</i>	<i>trahendī</i>	<i>audiendī</i>
			<i>portandō</i>	<i>docendō</i>	<i>trahendō</i>	<i>audiendō</i>
			<i>portandum</i>	<i>docendum</i>	<i>trahendum</i>	<i>audiendum</i>
			<i>portandō</i>	<i>docendō</i>	<i>trahendō</i>	<i>audiendō</i>

Notice that the gerund changes its endings in the same way as 2nd declension nouns such as **templum**; but it has no nominative case and no plural.

For ways in which the gerund is used, see [p. 299](#).

Deponent verbs

Indicative

1	<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PRESENT	<i>I try, I am trying</i> cōnor cōnāris cōnātur cōnāmur cōnāminī cōnantur	<i>I promise</i> <i>I am promising</i> pollicēor pollicēris pollicētur pollicēmur pollicēminī pollicentur	<i>I speak, I am speaking</i> loquor loqueris loquitur loquimur loquiminī loquuntur	<i>I rise, I am rising</i> orior orīris orītur orīmur orīminī oriuntur
IMPERFECT	<i>I was trying</i> cōnābar cōnābāris cōnābātūr cōnābāmūr cōnābāmīnī cōnābāntūr	<i>I was promising</i> pollicēbar pollicēbāris pollicēbātūr pollicēbāmūr pollicēbāmīnī pollicēbāntūr	<i>I was speaking</i> loquēbar loquēbāris loquēbātūr loquēbāmūr loquēbāmīnī loquēbāntūr	<i>I was rising</i> oriēbar oriēbāris oriēbātūr oriēbāmūr oriēbāmīnī oriēbāntūr
FUTURE	<i>I shall try</i> cōnābor cōnāberis cōnābitūr cōnābimūr cōnābimīnī cōnābuntūr	<i>I shall promise</i> pollicēbor pollicēberis pollicēbitūr pollicēbimūr pollicēbimīnī pollicēbuntūr	<i>I shall speak</i> loquar loquēris loquētūr loquēmūr loquēmīnī loquentur	<i>I shall rise</i> oriar oriēris oriētūr oriēmūr oriēmīnī orientur

2 In paragraph 1, find the Latin for:

you (s.) speak; we were trying; s/he was promising; they will rise; you (pl.) were speaking; we shall promise.

3 Translate the following examples:

cōnāminī; pollicēberis; oriēbātūr; loquentur; preābar; sequimur.

4 Notice the two different ways in which the future tense of deponent verbs is formed and compare them with the future passive forms on [p. 270](#).

5	<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PERFECT	<i>I (have) tried</i> cōnātus sum cōnātus es cōnātus est cōnātī sumus cōnātī estis cōnātī sunt	<i>I (have) promised</i> pollicitus sum pollicitus es pollicitus est polliciti sumus polliciti estis polliciti sunt	<i>I (have) spoken</i> locūtus sum locūtus es locūtus est locūtī sumus locūti estis locūti sunt	<i>I have risen, I rose</i> ortus sum ortus es ortus est ortī sumus ortī estis ortī sunt
PLUPERFECT	<i>I had tried</i> cōnātus eram cōnātus erās cōnātus erat cōnātī erāmus cōnātī erātis cōnātī erant	<i>I had promised</i> pollicitus eram pollicitus erās pollicitus erat polliciti erāmus polliciti erātis polliciti erant	<i>I had spoken</i> locūtus eram locūtus erās locūtus erat locūtī erāmus locūti erātis locūti erant	<i>I had risen</i> ortus eram ortus erās ortus erat ortī erāmus ortī erātis ortī erant
FUTURE	<i>I shall have tried</i> cōnātus erō cōnātus eris cōnātus erit cōnātī erimus cōnātī eritis cōnātī erunt	<i>I shall have promised</i> pollicitus erō pollicitus eris pollicitus erit polliciti erimus polliciti eritis polliciti erunt	<i>I shall have spoken</i> locūtus erō locūtus eris locūtus erit locūtī erimus locūti eritis locūti erunt	<i>I shall have risen</i> ortus erō ortus eris ortus erit ortī erimus ortī eritis ortī erunt
PERFECT				

6 In paragraph 5, find the Latin for:

they tried; you (s.) had spoken; we have risen; he will have spoken; you (pl.) had promised; he rose.

7 Translate each example, then change it from the pluperfect to the perfect tense, keeping the same person and number (i.e. 1st person singular, etc.). Then translate the examples again.

For example: **cōnātus erās** *you had tried* becomes **cōnātus es** *you have tried, you tried*.
locūtus erat; cōnāta eram; polliciti erimus; profecti erātis; adepta erat.

Subjunctive

1	<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PRESENT	cōner	polliceār	loquār	oriār
	cōnēris	polliceāris	loquāris	oriāris
	cōnētūr	polliceātūr	loquātūr	oriātūr
	cōnēmūr	polliceāmūr	loquāmūr	oriāmūr
	cōnēmīnī	polliceāmīnī	loquāmīnī	oriāmīnī
	cōnēntūr	polliceantūr	loquantūr	orientantūr
IMPERFECT	cōnārer	pollicērer	loquerer	orīrer
	cōnārēris	pollicērēris	loquerēris	orīrēris
	cōnārētūr	pollicērētūr	loquerētūr	orīrētūr
	cōnārēmūr	pollicērēmūr	loquerēmūr	orīrēmūr
	cōnārēmīnī	pollicērēmīnī	loquerēmīnī	orīrēmīnī
	cōnārēntūr	pollicērentūr	loquerentūr	orīrentūr
PERFECT	cōnātūs sim	pollicētūs sim	locūtūs sim	ortūs sim
	cōnātūs sīs	pollicētūs sīs	locūtūs sīs	ortūs sīs
	cōnātūs sit	pollicētūs sit	locūtūs sit	ortūs sit
	cōnātī sīmūs	pollicētī sīmūs	locūtī sīmūs	ortī sīmūs
	cōnātī sītīs	pollicētī sītīs	locūtī sītīs	ortī sītīs
	cōnātī sint	pollicētī sint	locūtī sint	ortī sint
PLUPERFECT	cōnātūs essem	pollicētūs essem	locūtūs essem	ortūs essem
	cōnātūs essēs	pollicētūs essēs	locūtūs essēs	ortūs essēs
	cōnātūs esset	pollicētūs esset	locūtūs esset	ortūs esset
	cōnātī essēmūs	pollicētī essēmūs	locūtī essēmūs	ortī essēmūs
	cōnātī essētīs	pollicētī essētīs	locūtī essētīs	ortī essētīs
	cōnātī essent	pollicētī essent	locūtī essent	ortī essent

Other forms

1	IMPERATIVE SINGULAR PLURAL	try! cōnāre cōnārē	promise! pollicēre pollicēmīnī	speak! loquere loquimīnī	rise! orīre orīmīnī
2	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	trying cōnāns	promising pollicēns	speaking loquēns	rising oriēns
	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	having tried cōnātūs	having promised pollicitus	having spoken locūtūs	having risen ortus
	FUTURE PARTICIPLE	about to try cōnātūrūs	about to promise pollicitūrūs	about to speak locūtūrūs	about to rise oritūrūs
3	PRESIDENT INFINITIVE	to try cōnārī	to promise pollicērī	to speak loquī	to rise orīrī
	PERFECT INFINITIVE	to have tried cōnātūs esse	to have promised pollicitus esse	to have spoken locūtūs esse	to have risen ortus esse
	FUTURE INFINITIVE	to be about to try cōnātūrūs esse	to be about to promise pollicitūrūs esse	to be about to speak locūtūrūs esse	to be about to rise oritūrūs esse
4	GERUNDIVE	cōnandūs	pollicendūs	loquendūs	oriendūs
5	GERUND (<i>trying, etc.</i>) <i>nominative</i> <i>genitive</i> <i>dative</i> <i>accusative</i> <i>abative</i>	(no forms) cōnandī cōnandō cōnandum cōnandō	verendī verendō verendum verendō	loquendī loquendō loquendum loquendō	oriendī oriendō oriendum oriendō

Irregular verbs

Indicative

1	PRESENT	<i>I am</i>	<i>I am able</i>	<i>I go</i>	<i>I want</i>	<i>I bring</i>	<i>I take</i>
sum es est sumus estis sunt	possum	eō	volō	ferō	capiō		
	potes	īs	vīs	fers	capis		
	potest	it	vult	fert	capit		
	possumus	īmus	volumus	ferimus	capimus		
	potestis	ītis	vultis	fertis	capitis		
	possunt	eunt	volunt	ferunt	capiunt		
IMPERFECT	<i>I was</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>I was</i>
	able	going	wanting	bringing	taking		
	eram	poteram	ībam	volēbam	ferēbam	capiēbam	
	erās	poterās	ībās	volēbās	ferēbās	capiēbās	
	erat	poterat	ībat	volēbat	ferēbat	capiēbat	
	erāmus	poterāmus	ībāmus	volēbāmus	ferēbāmus	capiēbāmus	
FUTURE	erātis	poterātis	ībātis	volēbātis	ferēbātis	capiēbātis	
	erant	poterant	ībant	volēbant	ferēbant	capiēbant	
	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>I shall be able</i>	<i>I shall go</i>	<i>I shall want</i>	<i>I shall bring</i>	<i>I shall take</i>	
	erō	poterō	ībō	volam	feram	capiam	
	eris	poterit	ībis	volēs	ferēs	capiēs	
	erit	poterit	ībit	volet	feret	capiet	
erimus	poterimus	ībimus	volēmus	ferēmus	capiēmus		
	eritis	poteritis	ībitis	volētis	ferētis	capiētis	
	erunt	poterint	ībunt	volent	ferent	capient	

PERFECT	<i>I have been, I was</i>	<i>I have been able, I was able</i>	<i>I have gone, I went</i>	<i>I (have) wanted</i>	<i>I (have) brought</i>	<i>I have taken, I took</i>
fuī	potū	īi	volū	tulī	cēpī	cēpī
fuistī	potuistī	iistī	voluistī	tulistī	cēpistī	cēpistī
fuit	potuit	īit	voluit	tulit	cēpit	cēpit
fuimus	potuimus	īimus	voluimus	tulimus	cēpimus	cēpimus
fuistis	potuistis	īitis	voluistis	tulistis	cēpistis	cēpistis
fuērunt	potuērunt	īerunt	voluērunt	tulērunt	cēpērunt	cēpērunt
PLUPERFECT	<i>I had been</i>	<i>I had been able</i>	<i>I had gone</i>	<i>I had wanted</i>	<i>I had brought</i>	<i>I had taken</i>
fueram	potueram	ieram	volueram	tulerā,	cēperam	cēperās
fuerās	potuerās	ierās	voluerās	tulerās	cēperās	cēperātis
fuerat	potuerat	ierat	voluerat	tulerat	cēperat	cēperātis
fuerāmus	potuerāmus	ierāmus	voluerāmus	tulerāmus	cēperāmus	cēperātis
fuerātis	potuerātis	ierātis	voluerātis	tulerātis	cēperātis	cēperānt
fuerant	potuerant	ierant	voluerant	tulerant	cēperant	
FUTURE PERFECT	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>I shall have been able</i>	<i>I shall have gone</i>	<i>I shall have wanted</i>	<i>I shall have brought</i>	<i>I shall have taken</i>
fuerō	potuerō	ierō	voluerō	tulerō	cēperō	cēperis
fueris	potueris	ieris	volueris	tuleris	cēperis	cēperit
fuerit	potuerit	ierit	voluerit	tulerit	cēperit	cēperimus
fuerimus	potuerimus	ierimus	voluerimus	tulerimus	cēperimus	cēperitis
fueritis	potueritis	ieritis	volueritis	tuleritis	cēperitis	cēperint
fuerint	potuerint	ierint	voluerint	tulerint	cēperint	

2 Subjunctive

PRESENT	sim	possim	eam	velim	feram	capiam
	sīs	possīs	eās	velīs	ferās	capiās
	sit	possit	eat	velit	ferat	capiat
	sīmus	possīmus	eāmus	velīmus	ferāmus	capiāmus
	sītis	possītis	eātis	velitīs	ferātis	capiātis
	sint	possint	eant	velint	ferant	capiant
IMPERFECT	essem	possem	īrem	vellem	ferrem	caperem
	essēs	possēs	īrēs	vellēs	ferrēs	caperēs
	esset	posset	īret	vellet	ferret	caperet
	essēmus	possēmus	īrēmus	vellēmus	ferrēmus	caperēmus
	essētis	possētis	īrētis	vellētis	ferrētis	caperētis
	essent	possent	īrent	vellent	ferrent	caperent
PERFECT	fuerim	potuerim	ierim	voluerim	tulerim	cēperim
	fuerīs	potuerīs	ierīs	voluerīs	tulerīs	cēperīs
	fuerit	potuerit	ierīt	voluerit	tulerit	cēperit
	fuerīmus	potuerīmus	ierīmus	voluerīmus	tulerīmus	cēperīmus
	fuerītis	potuerītis	ierītis	voluerītis	tulerītis	cēperītis
	fuerint	potuerint	ierint	voluerint	tulerint	cēperint
PLUPERFECT	fuissem	potuissem	iissem	voluissem	tulissem	cēpissem
	fuiſſēs	potuiſſēs	iisſēs	voluiſſēs	tuliſſēs	cēpiſſēs
	fuiſſet	potuiſſet	iisſet	voluiſſet	tuliſſet	cēpiſſet
	fuiſſēmus	potuiſſēmus	iisſēmus	voluiſſēmus	tuliſſēmus	cēpiſſēmus
	fuiſſētis	potuiſſētis	iisſētis	voluiſſētis	tuliſſētis	cēpiſſētis
	fuiſſent	potuiſſent	iisſent	voluiſſent	tuliſſent	cēpiſſent

3 Other forms of the verb

IMPERATIVE			go!		bring!	take!
SINGULAR		ī			fer	cape
PLURAL		īte			ferte	capite
PRESENT			being able	going	wanting	bringing
PARTICIPLE			potēns	īens	volēns	ferēns
			potentis	euntis	volentis	ferentis
PRESENT	to be		to be able	to go	to want	to bring
INFINITIVE	esse		posse	ire	velle	ferre
PERFECT			to have been	to have gone	to have wanted	to have brought
INFINITIVE			able	iiſſe	voluſſe	tuliuſſe
			potuisse			cēpiſſe
FUTURE			to be about to			
INFINITIVE			be	about to	to go	to be about to
			futūrus	itūrus	lātūrus	to bring
			esse		esse	take
GERUNDIVE	eundus					captūrus
GERUND	eundi					esse
						ferendī
						capiendī

4 Study the following *passive* forms of **ferō** and **capiō**:

Indicative

PRESENT	<i>I am brought</i> feror ferris fertur ferimur ferimini feruntur	<i>I am taken</i> capior caperis capitur capimur capimini capiuntur
IMPERFECT	<i>I was being brought</i> ferēbar ferēbaris etc.	<i>I was being taken</i> capiēbar capiēbaris etc.
FUTURE	<i>I shall be brought</i> ferar ferēris etc.	<i>I shall be taken</i> capiar capiēris etc.
PERFECT	<i>I have been brought</i> lātus sum lātus es etc.	<i>I have been taken</i> captus sum captus es etc.
PLUPERFECT	<i>I had been brought</i> lātus eram lātus erās etc.	<i>I had been taken</i> captus eram captus erās etc.
FUTURE PERFECT	<i>I shall have been brought</i> lātus erō lātus eris etc.	<i>I shall have been taken</i> captus erō captus eris etc.
PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE	<i>having been brought</i> lātus	<i>having been taken</i> captus
PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE	<i>to be brought</i> ferrī	<i>to be taken</i> capiī
PERFECT PASSIVE INFINITIVE	<i>to have been brought</i> lātus esse	<i>to have been taken</i> captus esse

5 Subjunctive

PRESENT	ferar ferāris ferātur ferāmur ferāminī ferantur	capiar capiāris capiātur capiāmur capiāminī capiantur
IMPERFECT	ferrer ferrēris ferrētūr ferrēmūr ferrēminī ferrentur	caperer caperēris caperētūr caperēmūr caperēminī caperentur
PERFECT	lātus sim lātus sīs lātus sit lātī sīmus lātī sītis lātī sint	captus sim captus sīs captus sit captī sīmus captī sītis captī sint
PLUPERFECT	lātus essem lātus essēs lātus esset lātī essēmus lātī essētis lātī essent	captus essem captus essēs captus esset captī essēmus captī essētis captī essent

6 In Stage 42, you met the irregular verb **fīō** (I am made, I become, etc.):

	Indicative	Subjunctive
PRESENT	<i>I become, etc.</i> fīō fīs fīt (fīmus) (fītis) fīunt	fīam fīas fīat fīamus fīatis fīant
IMPERFECT	<i>I was becoming, etc.</i> fīebam fīebās fīebat fīebāmus fīebātis fīebant	fīerem fīerēs fīeret fīerēmus fīerētis fīerent
FUTURE	<i>I shall become, etc.</i> fīam fīes fīet fīēmus fīētis fīent	
PRESENT INFINITIVE	<i>to become, be made</i> fīerī	

The forms of **fīō** are used as present, future, and imperfect tenses of the passive of **faciō** (*I make, I do, etc.*):

servī nihil faciunt.

The slaves are doing nothing.

populus mē rēgem faciet.

The people will make me a king.

nihil fīt.

Nothing is being done.

Or, *Nothing is happening.*

rex fīam.

I shall be made king.

Or, *I shall become king.*

The other tenses of the passive of **faciō** are formed in the usual way:

equitēs impetum fēcērunt.

The cavalry made an attack.

impetus ab equitibus factus est.

An attack was made by the cavalry.

Uses of the cases

1 nominative

captīvus clāmābat.

The prisoner was shouting.

2 vocative

valē, domīne!

Good-bye, master!

3 genitive

a māter puerōrum

b plūs pecūniae

c vir maximae virtūtis

the mother of the boys

more money

a man of very great courage

4 dative

a mīlitibūs cibūm dedimus.

b vestrō candidātō nōn faveō.

c Note this use of the dative of auxiliū, cūra, and odīum:

rēx nōbīs magnō auxiliō erat.

dignitās tua mihi cūrae est.

Epaphrodītus omnībus odīō est.

We gave food to the soldiers.

I do not support your candidate.

The king was a great help to us.

Your dignity is a matter of concern to me.

Epaphrodītus is hateful to everyone.

Or, in more natural English:

Everyone hates Epaphrodītus.

5 accusative

a pontēm trānsiūmus.

b trēs hōrās labōrābam.

c per agrōs; ad vīllam; in forum

We crossed the bridge.

I was working for three hours.

through the fields; to the house; into the forum

For examples of the accusative used in indirect statement, see pp. 294-296.

6 ablative

a spectāculō attonitus

b senex longā barbā

c nōbīlī gente nātus

d quārtō diē revēnit.

e cum amīcīs; ab urbe; in forō

f Note this use of the ablative:

marītus erat ignāvior uxorē.

Compare this with another way of expressing the same idea:

marītus erat ignāvior quam uxor.

g The ablative is used with adjectives such as **dignus** (worthy) and **plēnus** (full), and verbs such as **ūtor** (I use):

magnō honōre dignus

venēnō ūti cōstituit.

astonished by the sight

an old man with a long beard

born from a noble family

He came back on the fourth day.

with friends; away from the city; in the forum

The husband was lazier than his wife.

worthy of great honor

He decided to use poison.

For examples of ablative absolute phrases, see paragraphs 5-6 on pp. 289-290.

7 Further examples of some of the uses listed above:

- a satis pecūniae habētis?
- b theātrum spectātōribus plēnum erat.
- c septem hōrās dormiēbam.
- d es stultior asinō!
- e mīlitēs gladiis et pugīonibus ūtēbantur.
- f Myropnous vōbīs auxiliō erit.
- g streptū urbīs cōnfectus, ad vīllam rūsticam discessit.
- h puella parentibūs resistere nōn poterat.

8 locative

Study the following examples:

- a Rōmae manēbam.
 - b Londinī habitāmus.
 - c Neāpoli mortuus est.
 - d quid Pompēiis accidit?
- I was staying in Rome.
We live in London.
He died at Naples.
What happened in Pompeii?*

The words in **boldface** are in the *locative* case.

The locative case is used only in names of towns and small islands and a small number of other words; it is therefore not normally included in lists of cases such as the table on [pp.258-259](#). In first and second declension singular nouns, the locative case has the same form as the genitive; in third declension singular nouns, it is the same as the dative; in plural nouns, it is the same as the ablative.

Notice the locative case of **domus** (*home*) and **rūs** (*country*):

- e domī dormiēbat.
 - f rūrī numquam labōrō.
- He was sleeping at home.
I never work in the country.*

Further examples:

- g hanc epistulam Ephesī scrībō.
- h Athēnīs manēbimus.
- i mīlitēs in castrīs Dēvae erant.
- j rūrī ūtiōsus sum.

Uses of the participle

1 You have seen how participles are used to describe nouns or pronouns.

clientēs, sportulam **adēptī**, discessērunt.

The clients, having obtained their handout, departed.

centuriō tē in umbrā **latēntēm** vīdit.

The centurion saw you hiding in the shadow.

In the first example, the *perfect active participle* **adēptī** describes **clientēs**; in the second example, the *present participle* **latēntēm** describes **tē**.

2 Sometimes the noun or pronoun described by a participle is omitted:

valdē **perturbātus**, ex urbe fūgit.

Having been thoroughly alarmed, he fled from the city.

moritūrī tē salūtāmus.

We, (who are) about to die, salute you.

In examples like these, the ending of the verb (**fūgit**, **salūtāmus**, etc.) makes it clear that the participle refers to *he*, *we*, etc.

3 Sometimes the participle refers not to a particular person or thing but more vaguely to *somebody* or *some people*:

tū faciem sub aquā, Sexte, **natantis** habēs.

You have the face, Sextus, of (someone) swimming under water.

ārea plēna strepitū **labōrantium** erat.

The courtyard was full of the noise of (people) working.

4 Notice again how a noun and participle in the dative case may be placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Salviō dē fortūna querēntī nūllum respōnsū dedī.

To Salvius complaining about his luck I gave no reply.

Or, in more natural English.

When Salvius complained about his luck, I gave him no reply.

5 In Unit 3, you met ablative absolute phrases:

senex, pecūniā cēlātā, filiōs arcessīvit.

After hiding his money, the old man sent for his sons.

Epaphrodītō loquente, nūntius acurrit.

While Epaphroditus was speaking, a messenger came dashing up.

6 Further examples:

- a flammīs exstīnctīs, dominus ruīnam īspexit.
- b ubīque vōcēs poētam laudantium audiēbantur.
- c ā iūdice damnātus, in exilium iit.
- d fēmina, multōs cāsūs passa, auxilium nostrum petēbat.
- e servō haesitantī libertātem praemiumque obtulī.
- f sōle oriente, lūx fīebat.
- g Sparsus mē uxōrem ductūrus est.

Uses of the subjunctive

1 with **cum** (meaning *when, since, although*)

cum prōvinciam circumīrem, incendium Nīcomēdīae coortum est.
When I was going around the province, a fire broke out in Nicomedia.

2 indirect question

mīlitēs cognōscere volunt **ubi senex gemmās cēlāverit**.
The soldiers want to find out where the old man has hidden the jewels.

Sometimes the verb of asking, etc. (e.g. **rogō, scio**) is placed *after* the indirect question:

utrum custōs esset an carnifex, nēmō **sciēbat**.
Whether he was a guard or an executioner, no one knew.

3 purpose clause

hīc manēbō, **ut villam dēfendam**.
I shall stay here, to defend the villa.

prīnceps Plīniū emīsit quī Bīthynōs regeret.
The emperor sent Pliny out to rule the Bithynians.

taccēbāmus, nē ā centuriōne audīrēmur.
We kept quiet, in order not to be heard by the centurion.

4 indirect command

tē moneō **ut lēgibus pāreās**.
I advise you to obey the laws.

medicus nōbīs imperāvitnē ingredērēmur.
The doctor told us not to go in.

5 result clause

barbarī tot hastās coniēcērunt **ut plūrimī equitēs vulnerārentur**.
The barbarians threw so many spears that most horsemen were wounded.

6 with priusquam (before) and dum (until)

nōbīs fugiendum est, **priusquam** custōdēs nōs cōspiciant.
We must run away, before the guards catch sight of us.

exspectābant **dum** centuriō signum daret.
They were waiting until the centurion should give the signal.

Or, in more natural English:

They were waiting for the centurion to give the signal.

abībō, **priusquam** ā dominō agnōscar.

I shall go away, before I am/can be recognized by the master.

dum meaning while is used with a present indicative.

7 fearing clauses

avārus timēbat nē für aurum invenīret.

The miser was afraid that a thief would find his gold.

vereor nē inimicī nostrī tibi noceant.

I am afraid that our enemies may harm you.

8 Further examples:

- a senex, cum verba medicī audīvisset, testāmentum fēcit.
- b mīlitibus persuādēbō ut marītō tuō parcant.
- c latrōnēs mercātōrem occidērunt priusquam ad salūtem pervenīret.
- d tam benignus est rēx ut omnēs eum ament.
- e scīre volō quis fenestram frēgerit.
- f perīculum est nē occīdāris.
- g Domitiānus ipse adest ut fābulam spectet.
- h Agricola Britannōs hortātus est ut mōrēs Rōmānōs diserent.
- i mīlitēs ēmīsit qui turbam dēpellerent.
- j haruspīcēs cognōscere cōnābuntur num ūmina bona sint.
- k dominus verēbātur nē servī effūgissent.
- l ducem ūrābimus nē captīvōs interficiat.

9 Subjunctives can also be used in main clauses (independent uses of the subjunctive):

Hortatory subjunctive

lūdōs **spectēmus!**
nē morēmur!

Let us watch the games!
Let us not delay!

Jussive subjunctive

epistulam statim recītet!
caveant emptōrēs!

Let him read out the letter at once!
Let the buyers beware!

Deliberative subjunctive

quid facīam?
quō modō scīrent?

What am I to do?
How were they to know?

10 Further examples:

- a proficīscāmur!
- b quō fugiam?
- c Salvius nunc respondeat!
- d fiat lūx!
- e utrum loquerentur an tacērent?

11 For examples of the subjunctive in *conditional sentences*, see [p. 298](#).

12 For examples of the subjunctive used in *indirect discourse*, see paragraph 1 on [p. 297](#).

Indirect statement

1 You have met indirect statements, expressed by a noun or pronoun in the *accusative* case and one of the following *infinitive* forms of the verb. Some indirect statements are introduced by a verb in the *present* tense (e.g. **dicō**, **crēdunt**), while others are introduced by a verb in the *perfect* or *imperfect* tense (e.g. **dixī**, **crēdēbant**); notice again how this makes a difference to the translation of the infinitive.

a present active infinitive

crēdō prīcipem Agricolae **invidēre**.

I believe that the emperor is jealous of Agricola.

crēdēbam prīcipem Agricolae **invidēre**.

I believed that the emperor was jealous of Agricola.

(Compare this with the direct statement: **prīceps Agricolae invidet**.)

b present passive infinitive

scit multās prōvinciās ā latrōnibus **vexārī**.

He knows that many provinces are troubled by bandits.

sciēbat multās prōvinciās ā latrōnibus **vexārī**.

He knew that many provinces were troubled by bandits.

(Compare: **multae prōvinciae ā latrōnibus vexantur**.)

c perfect active infinitive

centuriō hostēs dicit cōnstitisse.

The centurion says that the enemy have halted.

centuriō hostēs dixit cōnstitisse.

The centurion said that the enemy had halted.

(Compare: **hostēs cōnstitērunt**.)

d perfect passive infinitive

vir uxōrem servātam esse putat.

The man thinks that his wife has been saved.

vir uxōrem servātam esse putāvit.

The man thought that his wife had been saved.

(Compare: **uxor servāta est**.)

e future active infinitive

senātōrēs prō certō habent cīvēs numquam cessūrōs esse.

The senators are sure that the citizens will never give in.

senātōrēs prō certō habēbant cīvēs numquam cessūrōs esse.

The senators were sure that the citizens would never give in.

(Compare: **cīvēs numquam cēdēnt**.)

The verb of speaking, etc. (e.g. **crēdō**, **dicit**, **putat**) can be placed either at the beginning of the sentence (as in example **a** above) or in the middle of the indirect statement (as in example **c**), or at the end of the sentence (example **d**).

2 Notice how the verb **negō** is used with indirect statements:

iuvēnis negāvit sē pecūniā perdidisse.

The young man denied that he had wasted the money.

Or, *The young man said that he had not wasted the money.*

3 Compare the following examples:

a **Salvius dicit sē in Italiā habitāre**.

(Direct statement: **in Italiā habitō**.)

b **Salvius dicit eum in forō ambulāre**.

(Direct statement: **in forō ambulat**.)

4 Further examples:

a **nauta dicit sē nāvem mox refectūrum esse**.

b **nauta dīxit sē nāvem mox refectūrum esse**.

c **scio magnum perficulum nōbīs imminēre**.

d **sciēbam magnum perficulum nōbīs imminēre**.

e **dux eum discessisse crēdit**.

f **dux eum discessisse crēdēbat**.

g **nūntiū villās negant dēlētās esse**.

h **nūntiū villās negāvērunt dēlētās esse**.

i **audiō multōs captīvōs ad mortēm cotīdiē dūcī**.

j **audīvī multōs captīvōs ad mortēm cotīdiē dūcī**.

5 Further examples:

- a audiō trēs Virginēs Vestālēs damnātās esse.
- b mē putō optimē recitāre.
- c ancilla dīcit dominū in hortō ambulāre.
- d fāma vagātūr multā oppida dēlēta esse.
- e ducem auxiliū mox missūrum esse spērāvimus.
- f nūntius negāvit sē ad ultimās partēs Britanniae pervēnisse.
- g cūr suspicātus es Salvium testāmentū fīnxisse?
- h fēmina marītūm illō carcere tenērī putat.
- i crēdō mīlitēs fidēm servātūrōs esse.
- j servus crēdēbat multōs hospitēs invītarī.

6 Sometimes one indirect statement is followed immediately by another:

rēx dīxit Rōmānōs exercitū parāvisse; mox prīmōs mīlitēs adventūrōs esse.

The king said that the Romans had prepared an army; (he said that) the first soldiers would soon arrive.

Notice that the verb **dīxit** is not repeated in the second half of the sentence; the use of the accusative (**prīmōs mīlitēs**) and the infinitive (**adventūrōs esse**) makes it clear that the sentence is still reporting what the king said.

Further examples:

- a servus nūntiāvit cōnsulem morbō grāvī afflīgit; medicōs dē vītā eius dēspērāre.
- b fāma vagābātur decem capītvōs ē carcere liberātōs esse; Imperātōrem enim ēis ignōvisse.

7 For examples of the subjunctive used in indirect statements, see paragraphs 1 and 2 on [p.297](#).

Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse

1 The subjunctive is normally used for any verb of a subordinate clause within indirect discourse, i.e. *indirect question*, *indirect command*, and *indirect statement*.

Study the following examples:

- a audiō coquūm numquam labōrāre, **quod** semper dormiat.
I hear that the cook never works, because he is always asleep.
- b puer rogāvit cūr fūrēs, **postquam** canēm excitāvissent, nōn fūgissent.
The boy asked why the thieves, after they had woken the dog, had not run away.
- c mercātor servīs imperāvit ut vīnum effunderent **quod** īferrent.
The merchant ordered the slaves to pour the wine which they were bringing in.

2 Translate the following examples:

- a servus dīcit togās, quās ille senex vēndat, sordidās esse.
- b praecō spērābat clientēs, simulac patrōnum salūtāvissent, abitūrōs esse.
- c centuriō mīlitēs rogāvit ubi arma cēlāvissent quae in proeliō cēpissent.
- d Simōn mātrem hortātūr nē lacrimīs sē det quamvīs multa mala passa sit.
- e iuvenis nūntiāvit patrem, quod morbō afflīgerētur, domī manēre.
- f iuvenis deōs precātūs est ut Modestum quī Vilbiā abstulisset punīrent.
- g cīvēs exīstimābant Agricolam, postquam Calēdoniōs vīcisset, iniūstē revocātūm esse.
- h Rūfilla scīre vult cūr marītus, quōniām Britannī molestissimī sint, in īnsulā maneat.

Conditional sentences

- 1 You have met conditional sentences in which *indicative* forms of the verb are used:

sī valēs, gaudeō. *If you are well, I am pleased.*

Notice again that a Latin future perfect (or future) tense in a conditional clause is usually translated by an English present tense:

sī illud iterum fēceris, tē pūniam.

If you do that again, I shall punish you.

- 2 You have also met conditional sentences in which *subjunctive* forms of the verb are used:

sī dīligentius labōrāvissem, dominus mē liberāvisset.

If I had worked harder, the master would have freed me.

sī Domitiānus nōs adhūc regeret, miserrimī essēmus.

If Domitian were still ruling us, we would be very unhappy.

sī hanc medicīnam bibās, statim convalēscās.

If you were to drink this medicine, you would get better at once.

Notice the pattern in English for conditional sentences:

Latin verb tense	“if” clause	main clause
Pluperfect	... had would have ...
Imperfect	... were would ...
Present	... were to would ...

- 3 Notice again how the word **nisi** is used in conditional sentences:

nisi Imperātor novās cōpiās mīserit, opprimēmur.

If the emperor does not send reinforcements, we shall be overwhelmed.

Or, **Unless** the emperor sends reinforcements, we shall be overwhelmed.

- 4 Further examples:

- a sī illud putās, longē errās.
- b sī Milō cēterōs āthlētās superāvisset, cīvēs statuam eī posuissent.
- c sī Iuppiter ipse Lesbiam petat, illa eum spernat.
- d sī rēx essem, nōn in hāc vīllā labōrārem.
- e sī mīlitēs urbem oppugnent, facile eam capiant.
- f sī diūtiū in urbe morāfi essētis, numquam effūgissētis.
- g sī Marcus hodī vīveret, cum Imperātōre cēnāret.
- h sī forte aurum in Britanniā inveniāmus, dīvitēs fiāmus.
- i nisi ego tuum fundum administrārem, tū pauperrimus essēs.
- j nisi amīcī nōbīs subvēnerint, in carcerem coniciēmur.

Gerunds and gerundives

- 1 You have met the *gerund*, e.g. **portandum** (*carrying*), **docendum** (*teaching*), etc.

Notice again how the various cases of the gerund are used:

genitive

optimam habeō occāsiōnem cognoscendī quid acciderit.
I have an excellent opportunity of finding out what has happened.

accusative (with **ad**, meaning *for the purpose of*)

multī hominēs ad audiendum aderant.
Many men were there for the purpose of listening.

Or, in more natural English:

Many men were there to listen.

ablative

prūdenter emendō et vēndendō, pater meus dīvitissimus fit.
By buying and selling sensibly, my father is becoming very rich.

The cases of the gerund are listed in full on [p. 275](#).

Further examples:

- a senātor ad loquendū surrēxit.
- b puer artem cantandī discere cōnābatur.
- c decem gladiātōrēs ad pugnandum ēlēctī sunt.
- d diū labōrandō, libertātem adeptus sum.
- e senex nūllam spēm convalēscendī habēbat.

- 2 You have also met similar sentences in which the *gerundive* is used, e.g. **portandus**, **docendus**, etc.:

genitive

optimam habeō occāsiōnem vēritātis cognoscendae.
I have an excellent opportunity of finding out the truth.

accusative

multī hominēs ad ḥrātiōnēs audiendās aderant.
Many men were there to listen to speeches.

ablative

prūdenter villis emendīs et vēndendīs, pater meus dīvitissimus fit.
By buying and selling villas sensibly, my father is becoming very rich.

Further examples:

- a multī clientēs advēnērunt ad nōs salūtandōs.
- b erit nūlla occāsiō templī vīsitandī.
- c versibus male recitandīs, poēta Martiālem vexat.
- d cīvēs in theātrum fābulae spectandae causā conveniēbant.
- e hī servī nihil dē dominō dēlectandō intellegunt.
- f amīcūs aquam ad flammās extingueundās quaerēbat.

3 The *gerundive* is also used with a form of the verb *esse* to indicate that something ought to be done:

nōbīs vīlla aedificanda est
We must build a house.

mīlitibus cōsistendum erit.
The soldiers will have to halt.

When the gerundive is used in this way, it is known as a *gerundive of obligation*.

Further examples:

- a tibi novae vestēs emendae sunt.
- b pecūnia reddenda est.
- c nōbīs in hāc vīllā dormiendum erit.
- d exīstīmō captīvōs līberandōs esse.
- e mihi longum iter faciendum erat.

Part Two: Literary terms and rhetorical devices

The following glossary is not meant to be all-inclusive. In writing a literary appreciation for a piece of literature, it is not enough simply to list literary devices or figures of speech and give examples. Always examine critically each device or figure to see how the writer uses it and what effect is achieved by its use in context.

- 1 **alliteration:** repetition of the same sound, usually a consonant, at the beginning of two or more adjacent words to draw the reader's attention to those words.
- 2 **allusion:** a brief reference to details the writer expects the reader to recognize; may be proper nouns; references to customs, geography, history, mythology, etc.
- 3 **anaphora:** repetition of a word or phrase at the beginning of several successive clauses or phrases.
- 4 **apostrophe:** a sudden break in the narrative to address the reader or an absent person or thing; often indicates strong emotion.
- 5 **assonance:** repetition of sound, especially of the same vowel sound, in two or more adjacent words.
- 6 **asyndeton:** omission of customary connecting words to express lively action, tense excitement, or choking grief.
- 7 **connotation:** the cluster of implicit or associated meanings of a word as distinguished from that word's denotative or specific meaning.
- 8 **ellipsis:** omission of word(s) necessary for the grammatical structure of a sentence or clause to give greater brevity, compactness, and force.
- 9 **euphemism:** using a pleasant expression to replace an unpleasant one.
- 10 **figurative language:** language that departs from the literal standard meaning in order to achieve a special effect.
 - a **metaphor:** an indirect comparison (without "like" or "as").
 - b **personification:** the description of an inanimate object or concept in terms of human qualities.
 - c **simile:** an expressed comparison often indicated by terms such as *velut*, *similis*, *quālis*.
 - d **epic simile:** a comparison extended beyond the obvious by further details.
- 11 **hendiadys:** using two connected nouns rather than a noun modified by an adjective or its equivalent ("two things meaning one").

12 hyperbole: extravagant exaggeration not intended to be taken literally.

13 litotes: affirming something by denying its opposite; an intentional understatement.

14 metonymy: substituting a word for a related word, e.g. cause for effect, container for contained.

15 onomatopoeia: the use of a word or phrase whose sound echoes the meaning; also known as imitative harmony.

16 oxymoron: a rhetorical contrast achieved by putting together two contradictory terms; produces surprise.

17 paradox: a statement that seems contradictory but that reveals a truth.

18 polysyndeton: piling up of connectives; used to create an impressive scene, to stress deliberate action, to emphasize a pathetic enumeration, etc.

19 rhetorical question: a question used for its persuasive effect and for which no answer is expected or for which the answer is self-evident.

20 synecdoche: substituting a part for a whole.

21 tmesis: separating the two parts of a compound word.

22 transferred epithet: the application of a significant modifier to a word other than the one to which it actually belongs.

23 vivid particularization: a concrete or specified description, usually achieved by the use of proper nouns rich in connotations.

24 word order:

a **chiasmus:** a crisscross arrangement (ABBA).

b **first and last word positions:** placing an important word at first and last places in a line of poetry.

c **framing:** a word placed out of its usual order so that it is framed or centered.

d **interlocking word order/synthesis:** the words of one noun–adjective phrase alternating with those of another (ABAB).

e **juxtaposition:** two words or phrases set side by side to intensify meaning.

f **parallelism or balanced structure:** the recurrence or repetition of a grammatical pattern.

g **separation:** separating grammatically related words (e.g. noun–noun; noun–adjective) to produce a word picture of the meaning conveyed by the words.

Part Three: Metrics

Meter or rhythm in poetry

English verse derives its rhythm, or repeated pattern of sound, from the natural stress accent of the English language. For example, Shakespeare's plays are written in iambic pentameter:

x / x / x / x / x /

If music be the food of love, play on.

Latin verse derives its rhythm from the length of time taken to pronounce each syllable. The rhythm depends upon the succession of long and short syllables and, to a lesser degree, upon the word accent. Latin poetry was meant to be read aloud; long and short vowels were clearly distinguished by Roman ears.

1 Finding syllables

A syllable is a single uninterrupted sound unit within a word. For example, **audiāmus** contains four syllables or sound units: **au-di-ā-mus**.

The number of syllables in a Latin word equals the number of vowels or diphthongs (*two vowels pronounced together*). In a syllable a vowel may be by itself or have a consonant(s) before and/or after it (e.g. **do-ce-ō**, **spe-ci-ēs**, **fert**). Latin diphthongs are **ae**, **au**, **oe**.

A consonant is pronounced with the vowel that follows it, e.g. **ro-gā-vit**.

If two vowels or a vowel and diphthong appear together, pronounce them separately, e.g. **di-ēs**, **fi-li-ae**.

If two consonants appear together, pronounce them separately, e.g. **spec-tā-tor**, **sol-li-ci-tus**.

If more than two consonants appear together, pronounce all except the last with the preceding vowel and the last with the following vowel, e.g. **cunc-tor**.

If the word is compounded, pronounce its original parts separately, e.g. **cōn-sū-mit**.

Notes:

The combination **qu** = **kw**; do not treat the **u** as a vowel.

The letter **i** is a consonant or a vowel. **i** is a consonant if it occurs between vowels (**Trōiae**, **cuius**) or if it begins a word and is followed by a vowel (**iam**, **iungō**).

The letter **u** may be combined with the previous **s** or **g** depending on pronunciation, e.g. **san-guis**, **per-suā-de-ō**, **su-us**, or **ar-gu-ō**.

Divide the following words into syllables: **dēligant**, **suāvis**, **respondeō**, **Graecia**, **quotiēns**, **audit**, **Italia**, **init**, **Britanniae**, **proelium**, **coniūrātiō**.

2 Length or quantity of syllables

The arrangement of a line of Latin verse is based on a pattern of syllables with long (-) or short (') quantities.

A syllable is long by nature if it contains (1) a long vowel or (2) a diphthong, e.g. **dī-cit**, **cae-ru-le-us**.

A syllable is long by position if it contains a short vowel followed by (1) two consonants, one of which may start the next word, e.g. **cae-ru-le-ūs pōn-tus** or (2) a double consonant or **x** or **z**, e.g. **īn-fē-līx**.

A syllable is doubtful (i.e. it can be either short or long as the poet wishes) if it contains a short vowel followed by a consonant and then an **I** or **r** (liquid consonants), e.g. **nēc la-cri-mīs** (Virgil, *Aeneid* V.173) or **pāl-mās ... ūt-rās-que** (Virgil, *Aeneid* V.233).

Otherwise a syllable is short.

Mark the long and short syllables in the following: **dēligant**, **respondeō**, **Graecia**, **audit**, **Italia**, **init**, **Britanniae**, **proelium**, **init** **Graciam**.

3 Word stress (')

In a word of two syllables, the stress falls on the first syllable, e.g. **ā-mō**, **ā-mās**.

In a word of three or more syllables, the stress falls on the second last (penultimate) syllable if that syllable is long, e.g. **por-tá-mus**, **cōn-fé-cus**.

In all other words of three or more syllables, the stress falls on the third syllable from the end (antepenultimate).

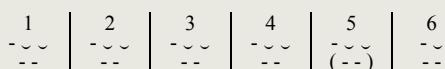
Mark the stress on the following words: **amīcus**, **ancilla**, **equus**, **fīlius**, **leō**, **mercātor**, **monēbant**, **monēt**, **rēgīna**, **sacerdōs**, **trahet**.

4 Rhythmic patterns

Each line of Latin poetry is an arrangement of long and short syllables. Each arrangement carries its own pattern composed of a set number of bars or feet (|); e.g. a dactylic foot = - ~ ~, a spondaic foot = - -, a trochaic foot = - ~.

A Scansion of dactylic hexameter

In the dactylic hexameter, there are six feet. The fifth foot is almost always a dactyl. To determine the poetic rhythm of a dactylic hexameter line, divide it into its component feet () using the following pattern:



For example:

 - ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - ~ | - ~

 tum mihi | caerule | us sup | rā caput | adstītit | imber

Copy the following line and scan it, i.e. mark the rhythm and feet.

 errāmus pelagō, totidem sine sīdere noctēs

B Elision

Latin poetry practices elision; in certain circumstances the final syllable of a word is slurred/combined with the first syllable of the next word. On a page you would put parentheses around this final syllable if it (1) ends in a vowel or diphthong before a word beginning with a vowel or **h**, e.g. **dix-it e-um-qu(e) ī-mīs sub fluc-ti-bus** or (2) ends in a vowel + **m** before a word beginning with a vowel or **h**, e.g. **ax-(em) u-mer-ō tor-quet**. Some of you may be familiar with elision from words such as *l'église* or *l'homme* in French.

Indicate the elisions in the following: **rēge hōram**, **terra ūna**, **terrae incola**, **hōram ūna**, **rēgem hōram**, **cāsum audiō**.

Copy and scan the following:

postquam altum tenuēre ratēs nec iam amplius ūllae

appārent terrae, caelum undique et undique pontus

C Caesura

The ending of a word within a foot is called a **caesura** (cut). The mark for a caesura is ||. In a hexameter line the main caesura often falls midway.

For example:

 tum mihi | caerule | us || sup | rā caput | adstītit | imber

D Scansion of elegiac couplet

The elegiac couplet is comprised of two lines, a dactylic hexameter alternating with a pentameter line, which is actually the first two and a half feet of a hexameter twice.

To determine the rhythmic pattern of an elegiac couplet, divide it into its component feet as follows:

Line 1 | - ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - ~

Line 2 | - ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - || - ~ ~ | - ~ ~ | - ~

For example:

 - ~ ~ | - ~ | - - | - - | - ~ ~ | - -

 accipe | frāter | no mul | tum mā | nantia | flētu

 atqu(e) in | perpētu | um, || frāter, a | v(ē) atquē va | lē

Copy and scan the following:

 exigis ut nostrōs dōnem tibi, Tucca, libellōs.

 nōn faciam: nam vīs vēndere, nōn legere.

E Scansion of hendecasyllables

To determine the rhythmic pattern of a hendecasyllabic line, divide it as follows:

˘ - | - ˘ ˘ | - ˘ | - ˘ | - ˘

For example:

pas-ser | mor-tu-us | est me- | ae pu- | el-lae,
pas-ser | dē-li-či- | ae me- | ae pu- | el-lae,
quem plūs | il-l(a) o-cu- | līs sū- | līs a- | mā-bat.

Copy and scan the following:

vī-vā-mus, me-a Les-bí(a), at-qu(e)a a-mē-mus.
mī-rā-ris ve-te-rēs, Va-cer-ra, sō-lōs
nec lau-dās ni-si mor-tu-ōs po-ē-tās.

F Final suggestions

“Scanning” poetry on paper, that is, marking the long and short vowels, is just a way of keeping a record of the rhythm, a device to help you read Latin poetry aloud with an appreciation of the sound effects developed by the Roman poets. A preponderance of dactyls produces a fast pace or light or lilting effect. A preponderance of spondees suggests tension or a slow or difficult movement and produces a more solemn, grand, or ominous effect; several elisions suggest strong emotion.

When you are scanning a line of Latin poetry

- copy the Latin correctly,
- mark elisions and do not count as a syllable,
- mark the syllables you know are long,
- deduce the remaining syllables from the metric pattern,
- read the Latin aloud.

Part Four: Vocabulary

1 Nouns, adjectives, verbs, and prepositions are listed as in the Unit 3 Language information.

2 Verbs such as **crēdō**, **obstō**, etc., which are often used with a noun or pronoun in the dative case, are marked + DAT.

Notice again how such verbs are used:

tibi crēdō. *I put trust in you.*

Or, *I trust you.*

turba nōbīs obstābat. *The crowd was a hindrance to us.*

Or, *The crowd hindered us.*

3 The present tense of second conjugation verbs like **doceō** has the same endings (except in the first person singular) as the future tense of third conjugation verbs like **trahō**.

For example:

	PRESENT		FUTURE	
ACTIVE	doceam	<i>I teach</i>	traham	<i>I shall drag</i>
	doçēs		trahēs	
	doçet		trahet	
	etc.		etc.	
PASSIVE	doceor	<i>I am taught</i>	trahar	<i>I shall be dragged</i>
	doçēris		trahēris	
	doçētur		trahētūr	
	etc.		etc.	

The Vocabulary can be used to check which conjugation a verb belongs to, and thus assist in translating its tense correctly. For example, the conjugation and tense of **iubent** can be checked in the following way:

The verb is listed on [page 328](#) as **iubeō**, **iubēre**, etc., so it belongs to the second conjugation like **doceō**, **docēre**, etc., and therefore **iubent** must be in the present tense: *they order*.

And the conjugation and tense of **dūcent** can be checked like this:

The verb is listed on [page 320](#) as **dūcō**, **dūcere**, etc., so it belongs to the third conjugation like **trahō**, **trahere**, etc., and therefore **dūcent** must be in the future tense: *they will lead*.

Translate the following words, using the Vocabulary to check conjugation and tense:

- a rīdēs, intellegēs c gaudēmus, monēmus e prohibentur, regentur
b dēlēnt, venient d convertet, ignōscet f dūcēris, iubēris

4 Notice again the difference between the listed forms of deponent verbs and the forms of ordinary verbs:

deponent verbs

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum *try*
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum *speak*

ordinary verbs

collocō, collocāre, collocāvī, collocātus *place, put*
vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditus *sell*

The Vocabulary can be used to check whether a word with a passive ending (e.g. **ēgrediuntur, custōdiuntur**) comes from a deponent verb or not.

For example, **ēgrediuntur** comes from a verb which is listed as **ēgredior, ēgredi,** **ēgressus sum** *go out*. It is clear from the listed forms that **ēgredior** is a deponent verb; it therefore has an active meaning, and **ēgrediuntur** must mean *they go out*.

custōdiuntur, on the other hand, comes from a verb which is listed as **custōdiō, custōdīre, custōdīvī, custōditūs** *guard*. It is clear from the listed forms that **custōdiō** is not a deponent verb; **custōdiuntur** must therefore have a passive meaning, i.e. *they are being guarded*.

5 Translate the following sentences, using the Vocabulary to check whether the words in **boldface** are deponent verbs or not:

- a centuriō mīlītēs **hortābātūr**.
- b amīcus meus ab Imperātōre **commendābātūr**.
- c cūr dē fortūnā tuā semper **quereris**?
- d cūr ā dominō tuō semper **neglegeris**?
- e puer dē periculō **monitus** est.
- f mercātor multās gemmās facile **adeptus** est.

6 All words which are given in **Vocabulary checklists** for Stages 1–48 are marked with the Stage in which they were given. For example:

16 **dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī** *delight, please*

This means that **dēlectō** appeared as a Vocabulary checklist word in Stage 16.

a		addere gradum	go forward step by step
17, 21	A. = Aulus ā, ab (+ ABIL) abdūcō, abdūcere, abdūxī, abdūctus	from; by <i>lead away, divert</i>	lead, lead on, encourage, pull, draw up (to the chest)
10	abeō, abīre, abiī abripīō, abripere, abripūt, abreptus abrumpō, abrumpere, abrupīt, abruptus absēns, absēns, absēns, gen. absentis abstineō, abstinēre, abstīnī abstūl see auferō	go away <i>tear away from</i> <i>split, tear apart</i> <i>absent</i> <i>abstain</i> <i>be out, be absent, be away</i>	taken away approach, go up to so much, so greatly as many as three, three entire
6	absum, abesse, āfuī absurdus, absurdā, absurdum	<i>absurd</i>	relative, relation by marriage
28	ac	and	use, apply offer prayers
	accēnsus, accēnsa, accēnsum	<i>inflamed, on fire</i>	now, still until now, up to this time
25	accidō, accidere, accidī	<i>happen</i>	receive, obtain
10	acciō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus accommōdō, accommodāre, accommōdāvī, accommōdatūs	<i>accept, take in, receive</i>	helper
34	accīrō, accīrrere, accīrrī accūsātō, accūsātōnis, f. accūsātōr, accūsātōris, m. accūsō, accūsāre, accūsāvī, accūsātūs	<i>fasten</i> <i>run up</i> <i>accusation</i> <i>accuser; prosecutor</i> <i>accuse</i>	help
	ācer, acrīs, ācre acerbus, acerba, acerbum	<i>eager, excited</i>	tie
	ācritēr	<i>harsh, disagreeable</i>	manage
	āctus see agō	<i>keenly, eagerly, fiercely</i>	manage the task
3	acūtūs, acūta, acūtum adō, addere, addidī, additūs	<i>sharp</i> <i>to, at, up to, about</i> <i>add</i>	admiration
			admire
			admit, let in, allow
			warn, advise
			strain, exert oneself

adstō, adstāre, adstīf	<i>stand by, stand be here, be present,</i>	affīgō, affīgere, affīxī, affīxus	<i>attach to, nail to crucī affīgere</i>
5 adsum, adesse, adfuī	<i>arrive</i>	40 affirmō, affirmāre, affirmāvī afflīgō, afflīgere, afflīxī, afflīctus	<i>declare afflict, hurt</i>
adsūmō, adsūmēre, adsūmpsī, adsūmp̄tus	<i>adopt</i>	35 ager, agrī, m.	<i>flock to the spot</i>
adulatīō, adulatīōnis, f.	<i>flattery</i>	43 aggredīor, aggredī, aggressus sum	<i>field assail, attack, make an attempt on</i>
adulor, adulatī, adulatīs sum	<i>flatter</i>	15 agmen, agminis, n.	<i>column (of people), procession</i>
aduncus, adunca, aduncum	<i>curved</i>	9 agnōscō, agnōscere, agnōvī, agnitus	<i>recognize, acknowledge</i>
adūrō, adūrēre, adūssi, adustus	<i>burn</i>	4 agō, agere, ēgī, ēctus	<i>lamb do, act</i>
13 advenīō, advenīre, advēnī adventus, adventūs, m.	<i>arrive</i>	19 grātiās agere	<i>age! come on!</i>
32 adversus, adversa, adversum	<i>hostile, unfavorable, unfortunate, undesirable, opposite misfortune</i>	iter agere	<i>thank, give thanks make one's way</i>
rēs adversae	<i>against, towards</i>	negōtiū agere	<i>travel do business, work</i>
adversus (+ ACC)		officium agere	<i>do one's duty</i>
advesperāscit, advesperāscere, advesperāvit	<i>get dark, become dark</i>	quid agis?	<i>how are you? how are you doing? celebrate a triumph</i>
13 aedificūm, aedificī, n.	<i>building</i>	5 agricola, agricolae, m.	<i>triumphum agere</i>
16 aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus	<i>build</i>	ait	<i>farmer</i>
aequātus, aequāta, aequātum	<i>level, side by side</i>	āla, ālāe, f.	<i>says, said</i>
47 aequor, aequoris, n.	<i>sea</i>	alacrīter	<i>wing</i>
32 aequus, aequa, aequum	<i>equal, fair, calm</i>	āles, āltīs, m.f.	<i>eagerly</i>
āēr, āerīs, m.	<i>air</i>	aliquandō	<i>bird</i>
45 aestās, aestātis, f.	<i>summer</i>	aliquantō	<i>sometimes</i>
aestimō, aestimāre, aestimāvī, aestimātus	<i>value</i>	aliquī, aliquā, aliquod	<i>somewhat, rather</i>
aestus, aestūs, m.	<i>heat</i>	14, 25 aliquis, aliquid	<i>some</i>
aetās, aetātis, f.	<i>age, time</i>	15 aliū, alia, aliud	<i>someone, something</i>
actētē flōrēre	<i>be in the prime of life</i>	aliī alia ...	<i>other, another, else</i>
aetermus, aeterna, aeternum			<i>some ... one thing, some ... another; different people ... different things</i>
aethēr, aetheris, m.	<i>eternal</i>		<i>some ... others for any other purpose</i>
afferō, afferre, attulī, adlatūs	<i>sky, heaven</i>	29 aliī ... aliī in aliud	
30 afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectus	<i>bring</i>	alō, alere, alū, altus	<i>encourage</i>
		altē	<i>high</i>
	<i>affect, treat, infect</i>		

13 alter, altera, alterum	<i>the other, another, a second, the second</i>	antidotum, antidotī, n.	<i>antidote, remedy</i>
alter ... alter	<i>one ... the other</i>	antrum, antrī, n.	<i>cave</i>
usque alter	<i>yet another</i>	ānulus, ānuli, m.	<i>ring</i>
altum, altī, n.	<i>deep sea, open sea</i>	anus, anūs, f.	<i>old woman</i>
31 altus, alta, altum	<i>high, deep</i>	anxius, anxia, anxiūm	<i>anxious</i>
amāns, amantis, m.	<i>lover</i>	aper, apri, m.	<i>boar</i>
30 ambō, ambae, ambō	<i>both</i>	25 aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus	<i>open, reveal</i>
5 ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī	<i>walk</i>	27 appārēō, appārēre, appārūī	<i>appear</i>
amīca, amīcae, f.	<i>friend, girlfriend,</i>	33 appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus	<i>call, call out to</i>
	<i>mistress</i>	17 appropīnqūō, appropīnqūāre, appropīnqūāvī (+ DAT)	<i>approach, come</i>
40 amīctia, amīctiae, f.	<i>friendship</i>	aptus, apta, aptum	<i>near to</i>
amīcus, amīca, amīcum	<i>friendly</i>	14 apud (+ ACC)	<i>suitable</i>
2 amīcus, amīci, m.	<i>friend</i>	15 aqua, aquae, f.	<i>among, at the house of, with</i>
amīcī pīncipis	<i>friends of the emperor (the emperor's council)</i>	aquaeductus,	<i>water</i>
12 āmittō, āmittere, āmīstī, āmissus	<i>lose</i>	aquaeductūs, m.	<i>aqueduct</i>
19 amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus	<i>love, like</i>	aquilex, aquilegis, m.	<i>water engineer, hydraulic engineer</i>
22 amor, amōris, m.	<i>love</i>	Aquilō, Aquilōnis, m.	<i>North wind</i>
amphitheātrūm, amphitheātrī, n.	<i>amphitheater</i>	āra, ārāe, f.	<i>altar</i>
amplector, amplectī, amplexus sum	<i>embrace</i>	arātor, arātōris, m.	<i>plowman</i>
amplius	<i>more fully, at greater length, any more</i>	arātrum, arātrī, n.	<i>plow</i>
35 an	<i>or, whether</i>	arbitrō, arbitrātī, arbitrātus sum	<i>think</i>
35 utrum ... an	<i>whether ... or</i>	arbor, arboris, f.	<i>tree</i>
2 ancilla, ancillae, f.	<i>slave girl, slave</i>	arca, arcae, f.	<i>strongbox, chest, coffin</i>
	<i>woman</i>	20 arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītus	<i>summon, send for</i>
36 animadvertō, animadvertere,	<i>notice, take notice of, have regard to</i>	archīctetus, archīctī, m.	<i>builder, architect</i>
animadvertī, animadversus	<i>animal, animālis, n.</i>	arcuātus, arcuāta, arcuātūm	<i>arched</i>
17 animus, animī, m.	<i>animal</i>	arcus, arcūs, m.	<i>arch</i>
in animō volvere	<i>spirit, soul, mind</i>	ardenter	<i>passionately</i>
	<i>wonder, turn over in the mind</i>	27 ardeō, ardēre, arsī	<i>burn, be on fire</i>
21 annus, annī, m.	<i>year</i>	ārea, āreeae, f.	<i>courtyard, construction site</i>
31 ante (1) (+ ABL)	<i>before, in front of</i>	arēna, arēnae, f.	<i>arena</i>
ante (2)	<i>before, earlier, in front</i>	arma, armōrum, n.pl.	<i>arms, weapons</i>
27 anteā	<i>before</i>	armātus, armāta, armātūm	<i>armed</i>
		arō, arāre, arāvī, arātus	<i>plow</i>
		arripīō, arripere, arripuī, arreptus	<i>seize</i>

20	ars, artis, f.	art, skill	audītōrium, audītōriū, n.	auditorium, hall (used for public readings)
	artē	closely	26 auferō, auferre,	
	artifex, artificis, m.f.	artist, craftsman	abstulī, ablātus	take away, steal
	artus, artūs, m.	limb	40 augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus	increase, exaggerate
	as, assis, m.	as (smallest Roman coin)	14 aula, aulæ, f.	palace
29	ascendō, ascendere, ascendī	climb, rise	auris, auris, f.	ear
	asciscō, asciscere, ascīvī	adopt	aurum, aurī, n.	gold
	asinus, asinī, m.	ass, donkey	39 aut	or
	aspectus, aspectūs, m.	sight	25 autem	either ... or
44	aspicīō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectus	look towards, catch sight of	auxiliāris, auxiliāris, auxiliāre	but
	assiduē	continually	16 auxilium, auxilī, n.	additional help
	assiduus, assidua, assiduum	continual	auxiliō esse	be a help, be helpful
	assignō, assignāre, assignāvī, assignātūs	attribute, put down	avē, atque valē	hail and farewell
	astrologus, astrologī, m.	astrologer	avēna, avēnae, f.	reed
33	at	but, yet	avidus, avida, avidum	eager
	āter, ātra, ātrum	black	avis, avis, f.	bird
	āthlēta, āthlētae, m.	athlete	avunculus, avunculi, m.	uncle
28	atque	and	avus, avī, m.	grandfather
	ātrium, ātriū, n.	atrium, entrance room, hall	Babylōnius, Babylōnia, Babylōnium	Babylonian, of Babylon
	ātrōx, ātrōx,		baculum, baculī, n.	stick, staff
	ātrōx, gen. ātrōcis	violent, dreadful	Bāiae, Bāiārum, f.pl.	Baiae (a coastal resort in Campania)
	attollō, attollere	lift, raise	balneum, balneī, n.	bath
	sē attollere	raise itself, rise up	barba, barbae, f.	beard
	attollor, attollī	rise	barbarus, barbara, barbarum	barbarian
14	attonitus, attonita, attonitum	astonished	barbarus, barbarī, m.	barbarian
	attulī see afferō		basilica, basilicæ, f.	court building
34	auctor, auctōris, m.	creator, originator; person responsible	bāsiō, bāsiāre, bāsiāvī	kiss
	auctōritās, auctōritātis, f.	authority	bāsiūm, bāsiī, n.	kiss
	auctus see augeō		beātus, beāta, bēatum	prosperous, wealthy, happy
29	audācia, audācie, f.	boldness, audacity	26 bellum, bellī, n.	war
24	audāx, audāx, audāx, gen. audācis	bold, daring	26 bellum gerere	wage war; campaign
18	audeō, audēre, ausus sum	dare	bellus, bella, bellum	pretty
5	audiō, audīre, audiū, auditūs	hear	17 bene	well
	auditor, auditōris, m.	listener, (pl.) audience	bene velle	like, be friendly
			optimē	very well

b

benignitās, benignitātis, f.	kindness, concern, kindly interest	callidē	cleverly
17 benignus, benigna, benignum	kind	calliditās, calliditātis, f.	cleverness, shrewdness
bēstia, bēstiae, f.	wild animal, beast	camera, camerae, f.	smart, clever, cunning
3 bibō, bibere, bibī	drink	campus, campī, m.	shrewd
bis	twice	candēns, candēns, candēns, gen. candentis	ceiling
Bīthynī, Bīthynōrum, m.pl.	Bithynians	candidus, candida, candidum	plain
blanditiae, blanditiārum, f.pl.	flatteries	candidus, candida, candidum	gleaming white
16 bonus, bona, bonum	good	canis, canis, m.	bright, shining, gleaming white
43 bona, bonōrum, n.pl.	goods, property	1 canis, canis, m.	dog
16 melior, melius	better	13 cantō, cantāre, cantāvī	sing, chant
melius est	it would be better	cantus, cantūs, m.	singing
5 optimus, optima, optimum	very good, excellent, best	cānus, cāna, cānum	white
Boōtēs, Boōtae, m.	Boōtēs, Boōtae, m.	capāx, capāx,	liable to, full of
	Herdsman (constellation)	capāx, gen. capācis	she-goat
bracchium, bracchiū, n.	arm	capella, capellae, f.	hair
33 brevis, brevis, breve	short, brief	capillī, capillōrum, m.pl.	take, catch, capture
breviter	briefly	11 capiō, capere, cēpī, captus	Capri
Britanni, Britannōrum, m.pl.	Britons	Capreārum, f.pl.	prisoner, captive
Britannia, Britanniae, f.	Britain	captīvus, captīvī, m.	
		captō, captāre, captāvī, captātūs	
		caput, capitīs, n.	try to catch
		carcer, carceris, m.	head; person
		careō, carēre, carū (+ ABL)	prison
		carīna, carīnae, f.	lack, be without
		carmen, carminis, n.	keel, ship
		carnifex, carnificis, m.	song, poem
		carpō, carpere, carpsī, carpus	executioner
		carpus	pluck, seize, crop;
			hasten upon, hasten through, fly through
			dear
			small house, cottage
C. = Gāius			
cachinnō, cachinnāre, cachinnāvī	laugh, cackle		
36 cadō, cadere, cecidī	fall, die		
42 caecus, caeca, caecum	blind; invisible, unseen, impenetrable		
48 caedēs, caedīs, f.	murder, slaughter		
cælebs, cælibis, m.	widower		
22 caelum, caelī, n.	sky, heaven		
cæruleus, cærulea, cæruleum	blue, from the deep blue sea, dark, dark blue, dark green		
Calēdonia, Calēdoniae, f.	Calēdonia, Calēdoniae, f.	19 cārūs, cārā, cārūm	
Calēdonī,	Calēdonī,	casa, casae, f.	
	Calēdonōrum, m.pl.	castīgātūs	
		castra, castrōrum, n.pl.	scold
		cāsūs, cāsūs, m.	camp
		catēna, catēnae, f.	misfortune; fall
		caupō, caupōnis, m.	chain
		causa, causae, f.	innkeeper
			reason, cause; case (of law)

causā (+ GEN)	for the sake of	3 circumspectō,	look around
causam dīcere	plead a case	circumspectāre,	
causam īnferre	make an excuse, invent an excuse	circumspectāvī,	
		circumspectātus	
cautē	cautiously	29 circumveniō, circumvenīre,	
35 caveō, cavēre, cāvī	beware	circumvēnī, circumventus	surround
caverna, cavernae, f.	cave, cavern	citō	quickly
cavō, cavāre, cāvī, cavātus	hollow out	11 cīvis, cīvis, m.f.	citizen
cecidī see cadō		46 clādēs, clādis, f.	disaster
23 cēdō, cēdere, cessī	give in, yield	38 clam	secretly, in private
celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātus	celebrate; fill, frequent	3 clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī	shout
9 celeriter	quickly, fast	5 clāmor, clāmōris, m.	shout, uproar
quam celerrimē	as quickly as possible	23 clārus, clāra, clārum	famous, distinguished, splendid; clear, bright
21 cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātus	hide	15 claudō, claudere, clausī,	shut, close, block, conclude, complete, cut off
celsus, celsa, celsum	high	clausus	
2 cēna, cēnae, f.	dinner	clāvus, clāvī, m.	tiller, helm
7 cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī	eat dinner, dine	cliēns, clientis, m.	client
28 centum	a hundred	clīvus, clīvī, m.	slope
centuriō, centuriōnis, m.	centurion	Cn. = Gnaeus	
cēnula, cēnulae, f.	little supper, snack	coāctus see cōgō	
cēpī see capiō		18 coēpī	I began
cēra, cēræ, f.	wax, wax tablet	coēptum, coēptī, n.	work, undertaking
certāmen, certāminis, n.	struggle, contest, fight	19 cōgītō, cōgītāre, cōgītāvī	think, consider
certē	certainly, at least	cognāta, cognātāe, f.	relative (by birth)
certō, certāre, certāvī	compete	cognītō, cognītōnis, f.	trial
38 certus, certa, certum	certain, infallible	cognītō senātūs	trial by the senate
38 prō certō habēre	know for certain	cognōmen,	
13 cēterī, cēterae, cētera	the others, the rest	cognōminis, n.	surname, additional name
chorus, chorī, m.	chorus, choir	18 cognōscō, cognōscere,	
2 cibus, cibi, m.	food	cognōvī, cognitus	get to know, find out
ciniš, cineris, m.	ash	25 cōgō, cōgēre, cōgētī,	
circuit = circumit		coāctus	force, compel
21 circum (+ ACC)	around	collēgīum, collēgiī, n.	brigade, guild
circumeō, circumeīre,		colligō, colligere, collēgī,	
circumiī	go around	collēctus	gather; collect, assemble; suppose, imagine
circumflectō, circumflectere,		collis, collis, m.	hill
circumflexī, circumflexus	turn	collocō, collocāre,	
circumflectere cursum	turn one's course	collocāvī, collocātus	place, put
	around	colloquium, colloquī, n.	talk, chat
circumsiliō, circumsilīre	hop around		
circumsistō, circumsistere,	take up position		
circumstēfī	around		

colloquor, colloquī,	24 comprehendō,	
collocūtus sum	comprehendere,	
colōnus, colōnī, m.	comprehēndi,	
	comprehēnsus	
27 comes, comitis, m.f.	compellō see compellō	arrest, seize
cōmīter	cōnātūr see cōnōr	
comitō, comitāre,	cōncavus, concava,	
comitāvī, comitātūs	concavum	hollow
34 cōmītor, cōmītarī,	cōncidē, cōncidērē,	
comitātūs sum	conclāvē, conclāvis, n.	
commemorō,	condīcō, condīcē,	
commemorāre,	condīcērē, condīcētōs	
commemorāvī,	condīcētōs	
commemorātūs	condīcētōs	
	confarreātiōnīs, f.	
commendō, commendāre,	cōnfēctus, cōnfēcta,	
commendāvī,	cōnfēctum	
commendātūs	finished, worn out,	
committō, committere,	exhausted, overcome	
commīsī,		
commissus		
	commit, begin	
26 commōtūs, commōta,	19 cōnficiō, cōnficere,	
commōtūm	cōnfēctūl, cōnfēctus	
	move, upset,	
	affected, alarmed,	
	excited, distressed,	
	overcome	
commūnis, commūnis,	25 cōnfidō, cōnfidere,	
commūnē	cōnfisū sum (+ DAT)	
	shared (by two or	
	more people)	
19 comparō, comparāre,	44 coniungō, coniungere,	
comparāvī, comparātūs	coniūnxī, coniūnctus	
compellō, compellere,	coniūnx, coniugis, m.f.	
compulī, compulsus	coniūrātō, coniūrātōs	
completōr, complectī,	coniūrātōnīs, f.	
complexus sum	plot, conspiracy	
12 compleō, complēre,	44 coniūrō, coniūrārē,	
complēvī, complētūs	coniūrāvī, coniūrātūs	
complexus, complexūs, m.	plot, conspire	
	34 cōnōr, cōnārī,	
	cōnātūs sum	
	cōnēndō, cōnēndere,	
	cōnēndī	
	try	
	cōnēntīa,	
	cōnēntīa, f.	
	cōnēscō, cōnēscere,	
	cōnēscīvī	
37 complūrēs, complūrēs,	inflict	
complūra	mōrētē sibi cōnēscere	
32 compōnō, compōnere,	cōnēscī, m.	
composū, compositus	commit suicide	
	accomplice, member of	
	the plot	
compositus, composita,	cōnēscrēdō, cōnēscrērē,	
compositūm	cōnēscrāvī,	
	cōnēscrātūs	
	dedicate	

	<i>agreement</i>	5 contendō, contendere, contendī	<i>hurry</i>
16	cōnsentīō, cōnsentīre, cōnsēnsī cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtūs sum	agree	10 contentus, contenta, contentum
	cōnsiderātūs, cōnsiderātā, cōnsiderātūm	follow, chase	contineō, continēre, continū
	cōnsiderātūs, cōnsiderātā, cōnsiderātūm	careful, well- considered	contingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus
	cōnsidērī, cōnsidērī	sit down	touch, affect; happen, fall to one's lot
16	cōnsilium, cōnsiliū, n.	plan, idea, advice; council	contigit nōbīs ut ... it was our good fortune that ..., we had the good fortune to ...
31	cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstītū	stand one's ground, stand firm, halt, stop; depend	continuō continuus, continua, continuum
	cōnsolor, cōnsolārī, cōnsolātūs sum	console	continuō continuum
	cōnspectus, cōspectūs, m.	sight	33 contrā (1) (+ acc) 33 contrā (2)
7	cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus	catch sight of	contrahō, contrahere, contrāxī, contractus
34	cōspicor, cōspicārī, cōspicātūs sum	catch sight of	draw together, bring together, assemble
	cōnstat, cōstārē, cōnstitut		supercilia contrahere
	satis cōnstat	be agreed	draw eyebrows together, frown
28	cōstituō, cōstituere, cōnstitūtūs	decide; set up, place	contrārius, contrāria, contrārium
	cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdīnīs, f.	custom; companionship	contumēlia, contumēliae, f.
40	cōnsul, cōnsulis, m.	consul (highest elected official of Roman government)	conturbō, conturbāre, conturbāvī, conturbātūs
	cōnsulārīs, cōnsulārīs, m.	ex-consul	contus, confī, m. convalēscō, convalēscere, convalūfī
30	cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsulū, cōnsultus	consult, take thought for; give consideration to	11 conveniō, convenire, convēnī
8	cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptus	eat, destroy	32 convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus
	cōnsurgō, cōnsurgere, cōnsurrēxī	jump up	sē convertere convertor, convertī, conversus sum
43	contemnō, contemnere, contemp̄sī, contemptus	reject, despise	convīvālis, convīvālis, convīvāle
			convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātūs
			for dining call together

	coorior, coorīrī, coortus sum	<i>break out, arise, rise</i>	cūncetus, cūncta, cūncatum cupiditās, cupiditās, f.
38	cōpiae, cōpīrātūm, f.pl.	<i>troops, forces</i>	44 cupīdō, cupīdīnīs, f. Cupīdō, Cupīdīnīs, m.
4	coquō, coquere, coxī, coctus	<i>cook</i>	cupidus, cupida, cupidum
1	coquus, coquī, m.	<i>cook</i>	9 cupīō, cupere, cupīvī
28	corpus, corporis, n.	<i>body</i>	4 cūr?
	corripiō, corripere, corriputī, corruptus	<i>seize, scold</i>	23 cūra, cūrae, f. cūrae esse
14	cotidiē	<i>every day</i>	be a matter of
33	crās	<i>tomorrow</i>	concern
11	crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī (+ DAT)	<i>trust, believe, have</i>	supervisor;
	crēdulus, crēduila, crēdulum	<i>faith in</i>	superintendent
	cremō, cremārē, cremāvī, cremātūs	<i>trust, believe, have</i>	senate-house
	cremātūs	<i>cremate, burn, destroy</i>	take care of; care for;
	creō, creārē, creāvī, creātūs	<i>by fire</i>	supervise
44	crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus	<i>make, create</i>	steps must be taken
	crētūs	<i>grow</i>	run, go, fly
40	crīmen, crīminis, n. crīnēs, crīnum, m.pl.	<i>charge</i>	course, flight
20	crūdēlīs, crūdēlīs, crūdēlē	<i>hair</i>	turn one's course
	crūdēlīter	<i>cruel</i>	around
	crux, crucī, f.	<i>cruelly</i>	
	cruci affigere	<i>cross</i>	
		<i>nail to a cross,</i>	
		<i>crucify</i>	
6	cubiculum, cubiculī, n.	<i>bedroom</i>	dā, dabō see dō
	cubitō, cubitāre, cubitāvī	<i>lie down, rest</i>	damnātiō, damnātiōnis, f.
	cuiuscumque see quīcumque		damnō, damnāre,
	culīna, culīnae, f.		damnāvī, damnātūs
	culmen, culminis, n.		damnōsūs, damnōsā,
45	culpa, culpae, f.	<i>blame</i>	damnōsūm
	illīus culpā	<i>through his/her fault,</i>	ruinous, fatal
		<i>thanks to him/her</i>	
35	culpō, culpārē, culpāvī, culpātūs	<i>blame</i>	11 dē (+ ABL)
24	cum (1)	<i>when, since, because,</i>	from, down from;
		<i>although</i>	about, over
7	cum (2) (+ ABL)	<i>with</i>	goddess
	mēcum	<i>with me</i>	ove; ought, should, must
	cumba, cumbae, f.		weaken, exhaust,
	cūnctor, cūnctārī, cūnctātūs sum		cripple
		<i>boat</i>	fall down
		<i>delay, hesitate</i>	

14	dēcōrūs, dēcōra, dēcōrum	<i>right, proper</i>	dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposū, dēdepositus	<i>put down, take off, give up, abandon</i>
	dēcurrō, dēcurrere, dēcurrī	<i>run down</i>	dēprehendō, dēprehendere, dēprehendī,	
	dēcus, decoris, n.	<i>ornament</i>	dēprehēnsus	<i>discover</i>
	dēdecus, dēdecoris, n.	<i>disgrace</i>	dēprendō = dēprehendō	
	dēfī see dō		dērīdeō, dērīdere, dērīsī,	
	dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductus	<i>escort, lead away</i>	dērīsus	<i>mock, make fun of</i>
	dēeram see dēsum		dēripō, dēripere, dēripū, dēreptus	<i>tear down</i>
29	dēfēndō, dēfēdere, dēfēndī, dēfēnsus	<i>defend</i>	33 dēscēndō, dēscēdere, dēscēndī	<i>go down, come down</i>
	dēfēnsiō, dēfēnsiōnis, f.	<i>defense</i>	24 dēsērō, dēsērere, dēsērū, dēsērtus	<i>desert</i>
	dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī	<i>fail, die away</i>	dēsēriū, dēsēridērū, n.	<i>loss, longing</i>
	dēfigō, dēfigere, dēfixī, dēfixus	<i>fix</i>	dēsiliō, dēsiliſre, dēsiliū	<i>jump down</i>
	dēfixiō, dēfixiōnis, f.	<i>curse</i>	dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsīī	<i>end, cease</i>
	dēflectō, dēflectere, dēflexī	<i>turn aside, turn off the road</i>	dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstītū	<i>stop</i>
	dēfōrmis, dēfōrmis, dēfōrme	<i>ugly, inelegant</i>	dēspēratīō, dēspēratīōnis, f.	<i>despair</i>
	dēfūncū, dēfūncūta,		20 dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī	<i>despair, give up</i>
	dēfūncūtum	<i>dead</i>	dēstīnatū, dēstīnatā, dēstīnatūm	<i>determined</i>
	dēhīscō, dēhīscere	<i>gape open</i>	dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrīnxī, dēstrīctus	<i>draw out, draw (a sword), unsheathe</i>
	dēiectū, dēiecta, dēiectum	<i>disappointed, downcast</i>	dēstrūō, dēstruere, dēstrūxī, dēstrūctus	
	dein = deinde		dēsum, dēesse, dēfūī	
16	deinde	<i>then</i>	dētīneō, dētinēre, dētinūf,	
	dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī, dēlectātūs	<i>delight, please</i>	dētentus	<i>detain, keep</i>
14	dēlēō, dēlērē, dēlēvī, dēlētūs	<i>destroy</i>	dētrahō, dētrahere, dētrāxī, dētractus	<i>pull down, demolish</i>
	dēliciāe, dēliciārum, f.pl.	<i>darling</i>	dēturbō, dēturbāre, dēturbāvī, dēturbātus	<i>be lacking, be missing, be unavailable</i>
	dēligō, dēligārē, dēligāvī, dēligātūs	<i>bind, tie, tie up, moor</i>		
	dēmānō, dēmānāre, dēmānāvī	<i>flow down</i>	dētīneō, dētinēre, dētinūf,	
	dēmissū, dēmissa, dēmissum	<i>low</i>	dētentus	
30	dēmittō, dēmittere, dēmīsī, dēmissus	<i>let down, lower</i>	dētrahō, dētrahere, dētrāxī, dētractus	<i>pull down, take off</i>
40	dēmūm	<i>at last</i>	dēturbō, dēturbāre, dēturbāvī, dēturbātus	
40	tum dēmūm	<i>then at last, only then</i>	14 deus, dēi, m. dī īnferī	<i>push, send flying god</i>
20	dēnīque	<i>at last, finally</i>	dī mānēs	<i>gods of the underworld</i>
	dēns, dentis, m.	<i>tooth, tusk</i>	dēvorō, dēvorāre, dēvorāvī, dēvorātus	<i>the spirits of the dead</i>
	dēnsūs, dēnsa, dēnsūm	<i>thick</i>		<i>devour, eat up</i>

dēvōeō, dēvōvēre,		39	discrīmen, discrīminis, n.	boundary, dividing line, distance; crisis; distinction
dēvōvī, dēvōtus	curse			
dexter, dextra, dextrum	right, on the right			
8 dextra, dextrae, f.	right hand			
dī see deus				
3 dicō, dicere, dīxī, dictus	say			
causam dicere	plead a case			
dictus, dicta, dictum	appointed			
male dicere	insult			
mīrābile dictū	strange to say			
sacrāmentum dīcere	take the military oath			
dictō, dictāre,				
dictāvī, dictātus				
didicī <i>see</i> discō	dictate			
9 diēs, diēt, m.f.	day			
diēs festus, diēt festū, m.	festival, holiday			
posterō (diē)	tomorrow			
differō, differre,				
distulī, distūtus				
4 diffīcilis, diffīcilis,	postpone, put off			
diffīcile	difficult, obstinate			
diffidō, diffidere,				
diffusus sum (+ DAT)	distrust			
17 dignus, digna,				
dignum (+ ABL)	worthy, appropriate			
4 diligenter	carefully			
diligentia, diligenteria, f.	industry, hard work			
diligō, diligere, dilēxi	be fond of			
dīlūvium, dīlūvī, n.	flood	17	diū	for a long time
dīmittō, dīmittere,			diūtius	any longer
dīmisi, dīmissus	send away, dismiss,	41	dīversus, dīversa,	
dīrigō, dirigere, dīrēxi,	turn, direct		dīversum	
dīrectus		30	dives, dives, dives, gen.	
19 dīrūs, dīra, dīrum	steer		dīvitīs	
dīs see deus	dreadful, awful		dīvidō, dīvidere,	
8 discēdō, discēdere,			dīvīsi, dīvīsus	
discessī	depart, leave	30	dīvitiae, dīvitīarūm, f.pl.	
discernō, discernere,			dīvōrtīum, dīvōrtī, n.	
discrēvī, discrētus	distinguish	37	dīvīs, dīvī, m.	
6 discipulus, discipulī, m.	disciple, follower,	9	dīxī <i>see</i> dicō	
	student	26	dō, dare, dēdī, datus	
7 disco, disere, didicī	learn		doceō, docēre,	
discordia, discordiae, f.	strife	28	docūi, doctus	
			doleō, dolēre, dolūi	
			grieve, be sad	

29	dolor, dolōris, m.	pain; grief	21	efficiō, effūcere,	carry out, accomplish
14	domina, dominae, f.	lady (<i>of the house</i>), mistress		effēcī, effectus	bring it about that,
	master (<i>of the house</i>), owner			efficere ut	see to it that
2	dominus, dominī, m.	home		effigiēs, effigiēt̄, f.	image, statue
20	domus, domūs, f.	at home		efflagitiō, efflagitāre,	
	domī			efflagitāvī	
	domum Hateriū	to Haterius' house		effringō, effringere,	
	domum redire	return home		effrēgī, effrāctus	break down
	domum reñērē	return home	16	effugiō, effugere, effūgī	escape
48	dōnec	until	32	effundō, effundere,	
	dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātūs			effūdī, effūsus	pour out, overflow
	give, present			ēgī see agō	
14	dōnum, dōnī, n.	present, gift	4	ego, meī	I, me
2	dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī	sleep, sleep through		est mihi	I have
37	dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī	hesitate, doubt, be doubtful		mēcum	with me
	nōn dubitō quīn	I do not doubt that	34	ēgredior, ēgredī,	in my place
	dubium, dubiī, n.	doubt		ēgressus sum	go out
	dubius, dubia, dubium	uncertain, doubtful		ēgregius, ēgregia, ēgregium	excellent, outstanding, remarkable
	ducem <i>see</i> dux		4	ēheu!	alas! oh dear!
8	dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus uxōrem dūcere	lead; consider; extend take as a wife, marry	33	ēiciō, ēicere, ēicēi,	
	dulce	sweetly		ēiectus	throw out
	dulcis, dulcis, dulce	sweet, pleasurable		ēidem see idem	
34	dum	while, until, so long as, provided that		ēlabor, ēlabī, ēlapsus sum	escape
	dumtaxat	not exceeding		ēlātūs <i>see</i> efferō	
12, 20, 28	duo, duae, duo	two		ēlegāns, ēlegāns,	
21	dūrus, dūra, dūrum	harsh, hard		ēlegāns, gen. ēlegantis	tasteful, elegant
31	dux, ducis, m.	leader	22	ēlicio, ēlicere, ēlicū,	
	dūxī see dūcō			ēlicitus	lure, entice
	e			ēligō, ēlīgere, ēlēgī,	
4	ē, ex (+ ABL) eandem <i>see</i> idem	from, out of		ēlēctus	choose, decide
3	ecce!	see! look!	23	ēnīm	project
43	efferō, effere, extulī, ēlātūs	bring out, carry out, carry away, bury		ēnīs, ēnīs, m.	
	ēlātūs, ēlāta, ēlātūm	thrilled, excited, carried away		ēnumerō, ēnumerāre,	
				ēnumerāvī, ēnumerātūs	count
			11	ēō, īre, īī	
				obviam īre (+ DAT)	there, to that place
				ēōdem, cōsdēm <i>see</i> idem	go
					meet, go to meet

Ephesius, Ephesia, Ephesium	of Ephesus	examīnātūs, examīnātā,	
epigrama, epigrammatīs, n.		examīnātūm	unconscious
13 epistula, epistulæ, f.	letter	examīnātīs, examīnātīs,	
epulæ, epulārūm, f. pl.	feast, banquet	exardeō, exardē, exarsī	out of one's mind
24 eques, equitīs, m.	horseman; man of equestrian rank	33 excipiō, excipere, excēpī,	blaze up
equidem	indeed	exceptus	
equitō, equitāre, equitāvī	ride (a horse)	13 excitō, excitāre, excitāvī,	receive, take over
15 equus, equī, m.	horse	excitātūs	
ērādō, ērādere, ērāsī, ērāsus	erase	10 exclāmō, exclāmāre,	
eram <i>see</i> sum		exclāmāvī	
39 ergō	therefore	excōgitō, excōgitāre,	
38 ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus	snatch, tear, rescue, snatch away	excōgitāvī, excōgitātūs	
errō, errāre, errāvī	make a mistake; wander	excruciō, excruciare,	torture, torment
	make a big mistake	excruciāvī, excruiciātūs	
	longē errāre	excussus	
ērubēscō, ērubēscere,	blush	exemplūm, exemplī, n.	
ērubuī			
ērudīō, ērudīre, ērudīī,			
ērudītūs	teach	pertinērē ad exemplūm	
ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī	break away, break out	3 exēdō, exērē, exīī	
est <i>see</i> sum		exequiae, exequiārūm, f. pl.	
3 et	and; indeed	exerceō, exercērē, exercūī,	
33 et ... et	both ... and	exercitus	
15 etiam	even, also		
	nōn modo ... sed etiam	not only ... but also	
	Etruscus, Etruscī, m.	37 exercitus, exercitūs, m.	
	etsī	ēxigō, exigere, exēgī,	
	euntēm <i>see</i> eō	ēxāctūs	
48 ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī	escape	ēxilium, exilīī, n.	
ēvānēscō, ēvānēscere,		40 exīstīmō, exīstīmāre,	
ēvānūlī		ēxīstīmāvī, exīstīmātūs	
ēveniō, ēvenīre, ēvēnī	vanish, die away	exit <i>see</i> exēdō	
ēvertō, ēvertere, ēvertī,	occur	exitūm, exitūī, n.	
ēversus		expediō, expedire,	
ēvolō, ēvolāre, ēvolāvī	overturn	expeditī, expeditūs	
ēvolvō, ēvolvēre,	fly out	sēsē expedire	
ēvolvī, ēvolūtūs			
ēvomō, ēvomere,	unroll, open	expingō, expingere,	
ēvomūlī, ēvomitus		expīnxī, expīctus	
4 ex, ī (+ ABL)	spit out, spew out from, out of	explēō, explērē,	
		explēvī, explētūs	

25	explicō, explicāre, explicāvī, explicātus explorātor, explorātōris, m. expōnō, expōnere, exposūl, expositus exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus sum expatiōr, expatiārī, expatiātus sum 3 expectō, expectāre, expectātī, expectatōs extinguō, extingue, extinxī, extinctus extrūō, extruere, extrūxī, extructus exultō, exultāre, exultātī	explain scout, spy unload; set out, explain; expose carry out extend, spread out wait for extinguish, put out, destroy build exult, be triumphant, get excited entrails stretch out frighten away outside drag out, pull out, take out farthest, final, last the edge of the stage	imperium facere ō factum male! quid faciam? factiō, factiōnis, f. factum, facti, n. factus see faciō, fiō facultas, facultatis, f. facundē fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus fidem fallere falsum, falsi, n. falsus, falsa, falsum fāma, fāmæ, f. familia, familiae, f. familiāris, familiāris, m. familiāritās, familiāritatis, f. farreus, farrea, farreum fās, n. Fästī, Fästōrum, m.pl. fauce 11 faveō, favēre, fāvī (+ DAT) favor, favōris, m. fax, facis, f. febricula, febriculae, f. febris, febris, f. fēcī see faciō fēcunditās, fēcunditatis, f. fēcundus, fēcunda, fēcundum fēlēs, fēlis, f. fēlīciter! 44 fēlix, fēlix, fēlix, gen. fēlicitis 5 fēmina, fēminae, f. fenestra, fenestrae, f. feriō, ferīre 9 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus 6 ferōciter	charge, make an attack oh dreadfully done! oh awful deed! what am I to do? organized group deed, achievement opportunity fluently, eloquently deceive, escape notice of, slip by break one's word lie, forgery false, untrue, dishonest rumor; reputation household, household servants close friend, relation, relative intimacy made from grain (that which is morally) right, proper the list of the consuls by hunger favor, support favor torch slight fever fever fertility fertile, rich cat good luck!
	f			
17	faber, fabrī, m.	craftsman, carpenter, workman, fireman		
5	fābula, fābulae, f. fābulōsū, fābulōsa, fābulōsum facēs see fax faciēs, faciēt, f.	play, story		
8	facile	legendary, famous		
17	facilis, facilis, facile facinus, facinoris, n.	face easily		
7	faciō, facere, fēcī, factus	easy crime make, do		
			lucky, happy woman window strike bring, carry; say fiercely	

8	ferōx, ferōx, ferōx, gen. ferōcis	fierce, ferocious	19	fluō, fluere, flūxi fluēns, fluēns, fluēns, gen. fluentis	flow
	ferrātus, ferrāta, ferrātum	tipped with iron		fluēns, gen. fluentis	dripping, streaming
	ferreus, ferrea, ferreum	iron, made of iron		foedus, foeda, foedium	fool, horrible,
	ferrum, ferrī, n.	iron, sword, weapon			shameful
13	fessus, fessa, fessum	tired	21	fōns, fontis, m.	fountain, spring,
6	festinō, festināre, festināvī	hurry		forās	source
	fēstus, fēsta, fēstum	festival, holiday			out of the house,
	fiam <i>see</i> fīō				outside, outdoors
14	fictus <i>see</i> fīngō				
	fidēlis, fidēlis, fidēle	faithful, loyal, reliable, trustworthy	fore = fūtūrum esse (future infinitive of sum)		
	fidēliter	faithfully, loyally, reliably	fores, forium, f.pl.	door	
26	fidēs, fidēi, f.	loyalty, trustworthiness, sense of responsibility for goodness sake!	fōrma, fōrmæ, f.	beauty, shape	
	medius fidius!		formidō, formidinīs, f.	fear, terror	
43	fidus, fidā, fidum	loyal, trustworthy	formidolōsus, formidolōsā, formidolōsum	alarming	
	fīgō, figere, fīxī, fīxus	fix, fasten, pierce	fors	perhaps	
	fīgūra, fīgūræ, f.	figure, shape	18 fortasse	perhaps	
1	filia, filiae, f.	daughter	19 forte	by chance	
1	filius, filiū, m.	son	6 fortis, fortis, forte	brave	
	fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fīctus	pretend, invent, forge	12 fortiter	bravely	
36	fīnis, fīnis, m.	end	fortuita, fortuitōrum, n.pl.	accidents	
37	fīō, fierī, factus sum	be made, be done, become, occur, happen	fōrtūna, fōrtūnae, f.	fortune, luck	
	firmē	firmly	fōrtūnātus, fōrtūnāta, fōrtūnātum	lucky	
	firmō, firmāre, firmāvī, firmātus	strengthen, establish	forum, forī, n.	forum, business center	
	firmus, firma, firmum	firm	fossa, fossae, f.	ditch	
	fistula, fistulæ, f.	pipe	39 fragor, fragōris, m.	crash	
12	flamma, flammæ, f.	flame	34 frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus	break	
	flammeum, flammeī, n.	veil	10 frāter, frātris, m.	brother	
	flāvus, flāva, flāvum	yellow, golden	frāternus, frāterna, frāternum	of a brother, fraternal	
	flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus	bend, turn	fremitus, fremitūs, m.	noise, din	
45	fleo, flērē, flēvī	weep (for)	frēna, frēnōrum, n.pl.	reins	
	flētus, flētūs, m.	weeping, tears	fretum, fretī, n.	water, sea	
	flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī	flourish	frīgidus, frīgida, frīgidum	cold	
	actāte flōrēre	be in the prime of life	frondēns, frondēns, frondēns, gen. frondentis	leafy	
16	flōs, flōris, m.	flower	frōns, frontis, f.	forehead, outward	
47	flūctus, flūctūs, m.	wave		appearance	
24	flūmen, flūminis, n.	river	31 frūmentum, frūmentī, n.	grain	
			fruor, frūtī, frūctus sum (+ ABL.)	enjoy	

12	frūstrā	<i>in vain</i>	Germānī, Germānōrum, m.pl.	<i>Germans</i>
	fūdī see fundō			
33	fuga, fugae, f.	<i>escape, flight</i>	Germānia, Germāniae, f.	<i>Germany</i>
12	fugiō, fugere, fūgī	<i>run away, flee (from)</i>	Germānus, Germāna,	
	fugitīvus, fugitīvī, m.	<i>fugitive, runaway</i>	Germānūm	<i>German</i>
	fūi see sum		23 gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus	<i>wear; achieve, manage; carry on</i>
	fulciō, fulcīre, fūlī, fultus	<i>prop up, wedge</i>	26 bellum gerere	<i>wage war, campaign</i>
	fuleō, fulgēre, fūlī	<i>shine, shine out, glitter, flash</i>	sē gerere	<i>behave, conduct oneself</i>
	fulgor, fulguris, m.			
	fulmen, fulminis, n.	<i>lightning</i>	Gerūsia, Gerūsiae, f.	<i>the Gerusia (club for wealthy, elderly men)</i>
	fulvus, fulva, fulvum	<i>thunderbolt</i>	gestiō, gesfire, gestūvī	<i>become restless</i>
	fūmus, fūmī, m.	<i>tawny, light brown</i>	gladiōtor, gladiōtōris, m.	<i>gladiator</i>
22	fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus	<i>smoke</i>	8 gladiōs, gladiō, m.	<i>sword</i>
12	fundus, fundī, m.		41 glōria, glōriæ, f.	<i>glory</i>
	fūnus, fūneris, n.	<i>pour</i>	glōriōsūs, glōriōsa,	<i>boastful</i>
6	fūr, fūris, m.	<i>farm</i>	gnātūs = nātūs	<i>graceful</i>
	fūrēns, fūrēns,	<i>funeral, funeral</i>	gracilis, gracilis, gracile	<i>step, position</i>
	fūrēns, gen. furentis	<i>procession</i>	gradus, gradūs, m.	<i>go forward step by step</i>
	fūrōr, furoris, m.	<i>thief</i>	addere gradum	<i>grass</i>
	fūrtum, fūrtī, n.	<i>furious, in a rage, distraught</i>	grāmen, grāminis, n.	<i>thanks</i>
	fūstis, fūstis, m.	<i>madness, frenzy</i>	grātiāe, grātiārūm, f.pl.	<i>thank, give thanks</i>
	futūrus, futūra, futūrum	<i>club, stick</i>	19 grātiās agere	<i>do favors</i>
	futūrus see sum	<i>future</i>	grātificōr, grātificārī,	<i>congratulate</i>

g

27	gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum	<i>be pleased, rejoice, be delighted</i>	38 grātūs, grātā, grātūm	<i>acceptable, pleasing</i>
34	gaudium, gaudiī, n.	<i>joy</i>	21 gravis, gravis, grave	<i>heavy, serious, severe</i>
	gelō, gelāre, gelāvī, gelātus	<i>freeze</i>	17 graviter	<i>heavily, soundly, seriously</i>
	geminus, gemina, geminum	<i>twin, the two, twofold, double</i>	gravī, gravāre, gravāvī	<i>load, weigh down</i>
28	gemitus, gemitūs, m.	<i>groan</i>	gremiū, gremiī, n.	<i>lap</i>
	gemma, gemmae, f.	<i>jewel, gem</i>	gubernāculūm,	<i>helm, steering oar</i>
	gena, genae, f.	<i>cheek</i>	gubernāculī, n.	<i>whirlpool, swirling water</i>
	gener, generī, m.	<i>son-in-law</i>	gurges, gurgitis, m.	
30	gēns, gentis, f.	<i>family, tribe, race, people</i>	4 habeō, habēre, habuī,	
42	genū, genūs, n.		habitus	<i>have, regard, consider</i>
39	genus, generis, n.	<i>race, kind, offspring</i>	38 prō certō habēre	<i>know for certain</i>
	genus mortāle	<i>the human race</i>		

h

*have, regard, consider
know for certain*

10	habitō, habitāre, habitāvī	<i>live</i>	1 hortus, hortī, m.	<i>garden</i>
	haereō, haerēre, haesī	<i>stick, cling; be fixed</i>	9 hospes, hospitīs, m.	<i>guest, host</i>
	haesitō, haesitāre, haesitāvī	<i>hesitate</i>	22 hostis, hostis, m.f.	<i>enemy</i>
	hama, hamae, f.	<i>firebucket</i>	17 hūc	<i>here, to this place</i>
	harundō, harundinis, f.	<i>reed, rod, shaft</i>	hūc ... illūc	<i>this way ... that way, one way ... another way, here and there, up and down</i>
19	hasta, hastae, f.	<i>diviner, soothsayer</i>		
34	haud	<i>spear</i>		
31	haudquāquam	<i>not at all</i>	humilis, humilis,	<i>low-born, of low class</i>
	haustus, haustūs, m.	<i>drinking, drinking-</i>	humile, humile,	<i>ground</i>
		<i>place</i>	humus, humī, f.	
	Helicē, Helicēs, f.	<i>Big Bear</i>	24 humī	<i>on the ground</i>
		<i>(constellation)</i>	Hymēn, Hymenīs, m.	<i>Hymen (god of weddings)</i>
	hercle!	<i>by Hercules!</i>		
	hērēs, hērēdis, m.f.	<i>heir</i>	Hymenaeus,	
7	heri	<i>yesterday</i>	Hymenaeī, m.	<i>Hymen (god of weddings)</i>
	hetaeria, hetaeriae, f.	<i>political club</i>		
	heu! = ēheu!			
	Hibernī, Hibernōrum, m.pl.	<i>Irish</i>		
	Hibernia, Hiberniae, f.	<i>Ireland</i>		
	hibernus, hiberna,			
	hībernum			
33	hīc	<i>wintry, of winter</i>	12 iaceō, iacēre, iacuī	<i>lie, rest</i>
8	hic, haec, hoc	<i>here</i>	23 iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus	<i>throw</i>
	hī ... aliī		22 iactō, iactāre, iactāvī,	
	hic ... ille		iactātus	<i>throw, hurl, bring up now</i>
			12 iam	<i>no longer now however; as things are now</i>
			nec iam	<i>door</i>
			nunc iam	<i>there, then, in those days</i>
	hiems, hiemis, f.	<i>winter</i>	3 iānuā, iānuae, f.	
39	hinc	<i>from here; then, next</i>	18 ibī	<i>blow</i>
	Hispānia, Hispāniae, f.	<i>Spain</i>	ibō see eō	<i>the same</i>
5	hodiē	<i>today</i>	ictus, ictūs, m.	<i>the same ... as for a common purpose, for the same purpose</i>
9	homō, hominiis, m.	<i>person, man</i>	31 idem, eadem, idem	<i>repeatedly</i>
	homunculus,		idem ... ac	<i>for this reason</i>
	homunculī, m.		in idem	<i>for the reason that, because</i>
23	honor, honōris, m.	<i>little man, pip-squeak</i>	31 identidem	<i>therefore, and so</i>
	honōrō, honōrāre,	<i>honor, official position</i>	ideō	<i>not knowing, unaware</i>
	honōrāvī, honōrātūs		ideō ... quod	<i>lazy, cowardly</i>
21	hōra, hōrae, f.	<i>honor</i>	horrrifying	<i>fire, lightning, heat of the sun</i>
	horrendus, horrenda,	<i>hour</i>		
	horrendum			
	horrēscō, horrēscere,			
	horruī			
34	hortor, hortārī,	<i>shudder</i>		
	hortātūs sum	<i>encourage, urge</i>		

38	ignōrō, ignōrāre, ignōrāvī	<i>not know (about)</i>	16	imperātor, imperātōris, m.	<i>emperor</i>
32	ignōscō, ignōscere,			imperfectus, imperfecta,	
	ignōvī (+ DAT)	<i>forgive</i>		imperfectum	<i>unfinished</i>
	ignōtū, ignōta, ignōtūm	<i>unknown</i>	10	imperium, imperiī, n.	<i>power, empire</i>
	īlēcō, īlicis, f.	<i>oak tree</i>	27	imperō, imperāre,	
	īlia, īlium, n.pl.	<i>groin</i>		imperāvī (+ DAT)	<i>order, command</i>
	illācō	<i>by that way</i>		impetrō, impetrāre,	
9	ille, illa, illud	<i>that, he, she</i>		impetrāvī	<i>obtain</i>
	hic ... ille	<i>this one ... that one,</i>		impetus, impetūs, m.	<i>attack</i>
		<i>one man ...</i>		impetum facere	<i>charge, make an attack</i>
		<i>another man</i>			
	nē illud deī sinant!	<i>heaven forbid!</i>		implicō, implicāre,	
	illīcō	<i>there, in that place</i>		implicāvī, implicātus	<i>implicate, involve</i>
19	illūcō	<i>there, to that place</i>		impōnō, impōnere,	
	hūc ... illūcō	<i>this way ... that way,</i>		imposūi, impositus	<i>impose, put into, put onto</i>
		<i>one way ...</i>		impotēns, impotēns,	
		<i>another way,</i>		impotēns, gen.	
		<i>here and there,</i>		impotentis	<i>helpless, powerless</i>
		<i>up and down</i>		improbus, improba,	
	illūcēscō, illūcēscere, illūxī	<i>dawn, grow bright</i>		improbūm	<i>wicked, relentless</i>
	illūstrīs, illūstrīs, illūstre	<i>bright</i>		imprōvīsus, imprōvīsa,	
	imāgō, imāginis, f.	<i>image, picture, bust,</i>		imprōvīsum	<i>unexpected, unforeseen</i>
		<i>death mask;</i>		imprōdenter	<i>stupidly, foolishly</i>
		<i>reflection</i>		impulī, impulsus see impellō	
	imber, imbris, m.	<i>rain, storm-cloud</i>	īmus, īma, īmum	īmūs, īmūs, īmūm	<i>lowest, bottom</i>
	imitor, imitārī,		1 in (1) (+ ACC)	īaliud	<i>into, onto</i>
	imitātūs sum				<i>for any other purpose</i>
	immēnsus, immēnsa,			īidem	<i>for a common purpose, for the same purpose</i>
	immēnsūm	<i>vast</i>		īmentēm venīre	<i>occur, come to mind</i>
	immīneō, immīnēre,			īperpetūm	<i>forever</i>
	immīnūi (+ DAT)	<i>hang over</i>		īanimō volvere	<i>wonder, turn over in the mind</i>
	immītīs, immītīs, immītē	<i>cruel</i>		īprimīs	<i>in the first place, in particular</i>
	immortālis, immortālis,			īproximō	<i>nearby</i>
	immortālē	<i>immortal</i>	40	īnānīs, īnānīs, īnānē	<i>empty, meaningless</i>
23	immōtūs, immōtā,			īncēdō, īncēdere, īcessī	<i>march, stride</i>
	immōtūm	<i>still, motionless</i>		īcēdūm, īcēdīi, n.	<i>fire, blaze</i>
15	impēdō, impēdre,			īcēndō, īcēdere,	
	impēdīvī, impēditūs	<i>delay, hinder</i>		īcēndī, īcēnsūs	
	impellō, impellere,				<i>burn, set fire to; enflame, torment</i>
	impulī, impulsus	<i>push, force</i>			
	impēndūm, impēndīt, n.	<i>expense, expenditure</i>			
	impēndō, impēndere,				
	impēndī, impēnsus	<i>spend, make use of</i>			
	impēnsē	<i>strongly, violently</i>			

	incertus, incerta,			dī īferī	
	incertum			īfestus, īfesta, īfestum	<i>hostile, dangerous</i>
	incidō, incide,			īgemīnō, īgemīnare,	
	incidīt, incīsus			īgemīnāvī, īgemīnātūs	<i>redouble character, inclination, talent, idea</i>
22	incipīō, incipere,			īgenīnum, īgenīrī, n.	
	incēpī, incēptus				
	incētō, incītare, incītāvī,			7 ingēns, ingēns, ingēns,	
	incītātūs			gen. ingēntis	<i>huge</i>
	inclīnō, inclīnāre,			īgorīdī, īgorīdī,	
	inclīnāvī, inclīnātūs			īgressus sum	<i>enter</i>
	inclūdō, inclūdere,			īhorrēscō, īhorrēscere,	
	inclūsī, inclūsus			īhorrūi	<i>shudder</i>
	īcohō, īcohāre,			īnimītēs, īnimītī, m.	<i>enemy</i>
	īcohāvī, īcohātūs			īnīquus, īnīqua, īnīquum	<i>unfair</i>
48	īcolumis, īcolumis,			īnītūm, īnītī, n.	<i>beginning</i>
	īcolumē			īnītrīa, īnītrīae, f.	<i>injustice, injury</i>
	īcurrō, īcurrere,			īnīstē	<i>unfairly</i>
	īcurrī			īnīstūs, īnīsta, īnīstūm	<i>unjust</i>
35	īnde			īnlātūs see īferō	
				īnlēctūs, īnlēcta, īnlēctum	<i>unread</i>
				īnnītōr, īnnītī, īnnītūs sum	<i>lean on, lean, rest</i>
				īnnōcēns, īnnōcēns,	
				īnnōcēns, gen. īnnōcētis	<i>innocent</i>
				īnnōcēntia, īnnōcēntiae, f.	<i>innocence</i>
43	īnopīa, īnopīae, f.			īnopīa, īnopīae, f.	<i>shortage, scarcity, poverty</i>
	īndulgeō, īndulgērē,				
	īndulsi (+ DAT)			īnīquētūs, īnīquēta,	
	īnēdia, īnediae, f.			īnīquētūm	
	īnēptō, īnēptīre			īnīquit	
	īnēptus, īnēpta, īnēptūm			īnīquam	<i>I said</i>
	īneram see īnsum			īnīquis	<i>you say</i>
	īnertia, īnertiae, f.			īnsānūs, īnsāna, īnsānūm	<i>insane, crazy</i>
	īnfāns, īnfāntī, m.			īnīscribō, īnīscribere,	
21	īnfēlīx, īnfēlīx, īnfēlīx,			īnīscripīsī, īnīscripītūs	<i>write, inscribe</i>
	gen. īnfēlīcīs			īnīsidē, īnīsidārūm, f.pl.	<i>trap, ambush</i>
	īnēfērīe, īnēfērārūm, f.pl.			īnīspīcō, īnīspīcēre,	
	īnēfērīor, īnēfērīor,			īnīspēxī, īnīspectūs	<i>look at, inspect, examine, search</i>
	īnēfērīus				
20	īnēfērō, īnēfērē, īntūlī,			īnīstīgō, īnīstīgārē,	
	īnlātūs			īnīstīgāvī, īnīstīgātūs	
				īnīstītuō, īnīstītuere,	
				īnīstītūl, īnīstītūtūs	
				īnīstō, īnīstārē, īnīstīfī	
				īnēfērūs, īnēfēra, īnēfērūm	<i>urge on</i>

īnstrūmentum, īnstrūmentū, n.	<i>equipment</i>	īvidus, īvida, īvidum īnvītō, īnvītāre, īnvītāvī, īnvītātus	<i>envious</i>
26 īnstrō, īnstruere, īnstrūxt̄, īnstrūctus	<i>draw up, set up, equip, fit (with wings)</i> <i>draw oneself up</i>	īnvītūs, īnvīta, īnvītūm īnvolvō, īnvolve, īnvolvī, īnvolutūs	<i>invite</i> <i>unwilling, reluctant</i>
17 īnsula, īnsulae, f.	<i>island; apartment building</i>	īō!	<i>envelop, swallow up hurrah!</i>
īnsum, īnseſſe, īnfūſſe	<i>be in, be inside</i>	īocōsum, īocōſī, n.	<i>moment of fun, moment of pleasure</i>
7 īntellegō, īntelligere, īntellēxi, īntellēctus	<i>understand</i>	Iovīs see Iuppīter	
6 ītentē ītentus, ītentā, ītentum	<i>intently</i>	14 ipse, ipsa, ipsum	<i>himself, herself, itself; master, mistress</i>
16 inter (+ ACC) inter sē	<i>intent</i> <i>among, during</i> <i>among themselves, with each other</i>	28 īra, īrae, f. īräscor, īräscī, īrätūs sum (+ ABL)	<i>anger</i> <i>become angry with angry</i>
24 īterēa ītereō, īterfīre, īteriī, īteritus	<i>meanwhile</i>	3 īrätās, īräta, īrätūm īre see ēō	
13 īterfīciō, īterfīcere, īterfēci, īterfectus	<i>wear away, wear out</i>	irrigō, irrigāre, irrigāvī, irrigātūs	<i>water</i>
īterim	<i>kill</i>	irrumpō, irrumperē, irrūpī	<i>burst in, burst into</i>
īterior, īterior, īterius	<i>meanwhile</i>	is, ea, id	<i>he, she, it; that</i>
īterpellō, īterpellāre, īterpellāvī	<i>inner</i>	id quod	<i>what</i>
īterrogō, īterrogāre, īterrogāvī, īterrogātūs	<i>interrupt</i>	14 iste, ista, istud it see ēō	<i>that</i>
īntrā (+ ACC)	<i>question</i>	16 ita	<i>in this way</i>
īntremō, ītremere, ītremūi	<i>inside, during</i>	sīcut ... ita	<i>just as ... so</i>
2 ītrō, ītrāre, ītrāvī	<i>shake</i>	13 ita vērō	<i>yes</i>
īntuli <i>see īferō</i>	<i>enter</i>	Ītālia, ītāliae, f.	<i>Italy</i>
īnultus, īulta, īnultum	<i>unavenged</i>	17 itaque	<i>and so</i>
īvalēscō, īvalēscere, īvaluī	<i>become strong</i>	19 iter, itineris, n. iter agere	<i>journey, progress make one's way, travel</i>
10 īveniō, īvenīre, īvēnī, īventus	<i>find</i>	9 iterum nōn iterum	<i>again never again</i>
īvestīgō, īvestīgāre, īvestīgāvī, īvestīgātūs	<i>investigate</i>	21 iubēō, iubēre, iussī, iussus	<i>order</i>
īvidēō, īvidēre, īvidī (+ DAT)	<i>envy, be jealous of, begradue, cast an evil eye</i>	iūcundus, iūcunda, iūcundum	<i>pleasant, agreeable, delightful</i>
40 īvidia, īvidiae, f.	<i>jealousy, envy, unpopularity</i>	4 iūdex, iūdicis, m. iūdicūm, iūdicī, n.	<i>judge</i>
		46 iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātūs	<i>judgment</i>
		iūnctus, iūncta, iūnctum	<i>judge</i> <i>side by side</i>

38	iungō, iungere, iūnūxī, iūnctus	<i>join</i>	lacertus, lacertū, m.	arm, muscle
	iūnō, iūnōnis, f.	<i>Juno</i> (goddess of marriage)	22 lachrima, lacrimae, f.	tear
	Iūnōnius, Iūnōnia, Iūnōniūm	<i>sacred to Juno</i>	7 lacrimō, lacrimāre, lacrimāvī	weep, cry
	Iuppiter, Iovis, m.	<i>Jupiter</i> (god of the sky, greatest of Roman gods)	lacus, lacūs, m.	lake
	iūrgium, iūrgīi, n.	<i>argument, dispute, quarrel</i>	laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus	harm
	iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī	<i>swear</i>	2 laetus, laeta, laetum	happy
	iūs, iūris, n.	<i>right, privilege, law</i>	laevus, laeva, laevum	left
	iussī <i>see iubeō</i>		laevā parte	on the left hand
27	iussūm, iussū, n. iussū Imperātōris	<i>order, instruction at the emperor's order</i>	lagōna, lagōnae, f.	bottle
	iūstus, iūsta, iūstum iūstius erat	<i>proper, right, fair it would have been fairer, more proper</i>	langueō, langueře	feel weak, feel sick
	iuvēnus, iuvēntī, m.	<i>bullock, young bull</i>	lāniger, lānigerī, m.f.	woolly one, lamb
	iuvēnīlis, iuvēnīlis, iuvēnīle	<i>youthful</i>	46 lapis, lapidīs, m.	stone
5	iuvēnīs, iuvēnīs, m.	<i>young man</i>	lassō, lassāre, lassāvī, lassātūs	tire, weary
39	iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtūs	<i>help, assist, please</i>	lātē	widely
43	iuxtā (+ ACC)	<i>next to</i>	latebrae, latebrārum, f.pl.	hiding-place
	k		25 lateō, latēre, latuī	lie hidden
	Kal. = Kalendās		Lafīnus, Lafīna, Lafīnum	Latin
	Kalendae,		latrō, latrōnis, m.	robber
	Kalendārum, f.pl.		lātrō, lātrāre, lātrāvī	bark
	l		48 latus, lateris, n.	side, flank
	Kalends, first day of each month		2 laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātūs	praise
	L. = Lūcius		47 laus, laudis, f.	praise, fame
	labellum, labellī, n.		lavō, lavāre	
32	labor, labōris, m.	<i>lip</i>	(sometimes lavare), lāvī, lautus	
47	lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum	<i>work, task</i>	lectīca, lectīcae, f.	wash, bath
1	lāborō, labōrāre, labōrāvī lacerō, lacerāre, lacerāvī, lacerātūs	<i>fall, glide; pass by, slide by</i>	15 lectūs, lectī, m.	sedan-chair
		<i>work</i>	26 lēgātūs, lēgātī, m. lēgem <i>see lēx</i>	couch, bed
			26 legiō, legiōnis, f.	commander, governor
		<i>beat, tear, tear apart</i>	lēgō, lēgāre, lēgāvī, lēgātūs	legion
			11 legō, legerē, lēgī, lēctus	bequeath
			lēnīrē, lēnīvī, lēnītūs	read; choose, conscript
			lēnīter	soothe, calm down
			15 lentē	gently
			lentus, lenta, lenthūm	slowly
			lēnunculus, lēnunculī, m.	supple, pliant
			3 leō, leōnis, m.	small boat
				lion

40	levis, levis, leve	<i>light, slight, trivial, changeable, inconsistent, worthless</i>	longus, longa, longum	<i>long</i>
38	lēx, lēgis, f.	<i>raise, lift up law</i>	34 loquor, loquī, locūtus sum	<i>speak</i>
18	libellus, libellī, m.	<i>little book</i>	lūctor, lūctārī, lūctātus sum	<i>struggle</i>
10	libenter	<i>gladly</i>	41 lūdō, lūdere, lūstī, lūsus	<i>play</i>
11	liber, libri, m.	<i>book</i>	33 lūdus, lūdī, m.	<i>game</i>
29	liberalis, liberālis, liberale	<i>generous, liberal</i>	42 lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxi	<i>lament, mourn</i>
20	liberō, liberare, liberāvī, liberatus	<i>children</i>	46 lūmen, lūminis, n.	<i>light</i>
32	libertās, libertātis, f.	<i>free, set free</i>	lūmina, lūminum, n.pl.	<i>eyes</i>
6	libertus, libertī, m.	<i>freedom</i>	20 lūna, lūnae, f.	<i>moon</i>
	libertus Augustī	<i>freedman, ex-slave</i>	lupus, lupī, m.	<i>wolf</i>
	librō, librāre, librāvī, libratus	<i>imperial freedman</i>	lūscus, lūsca, lūscum	<i>one-eyed</i>
	librum see liber		lūsus, lūsūs, m.	<i>play, games</i>
	libum, libī, n.		29 lūx, lūcis, f.	<i>light, daylight</i>
44	licet, licere, licuit	<i>balance</i>		m
44	mīhi licet	<i>cake</i>	M. = Marcus	
	licet	<i>be allowed</i>	M'. = Mānius	
	I am allowed		Macedonia,	
	although		Macedoniacē, f.	<i>Macedonia</i>
38	līmen, līminis, n.	<i>threshold, doorway</i>	māchīnāmentū, māchīnāmentī, n.	<i>machine, contraption</i>
	līmes, līmitis, m.	<i>course</i>	madēscō,	
	lingua, linguae, f.	<i>tongue, language</i>	madēscere, madūī	<i>become wet</i>
	līnum, līnī, n.	<i>thread</i>	madidus,	
	liqueō, liqueōre, liquī	<i>flow</i>	madida, madidum	<i>soaked through</i>
	liquidus, liquida,	<i>liquid</i>	magister, magistrī, m.	<i>master, foreman</i>
	liquidum		43 magistrātūs,	<i>public official</i>
	liquō, liquāre, liquāvī,		magistrātūs, m.	
	liquātus	<i>strain</i>	magnificus, magnifica,	
	liquor, liquōris, m.	<i>water</i>	magnificum	<i>splendid, magnificent</i>
	lītī, lītīs, f.	<i>court case</i>	30 magnopere	<i>greatly</i>
39	litterae, litterārum, f.pl.	<i>letter</i>	35 magis	<i>more</i>
	(correspondence),		24 maximē	<i>very greatly, very much, most of all</i>
	letters, literature			
15	lītūs, lītōris, n.	<i>seashore, shore</i>	3 magnus, magna, magnum	<i>big, large, great</i>
19	locus, locī, m.	<i>place; occasion, reason</i>	maiōr, maiōr, maius	<i>bigger, larger; greater</i>
	meī locō	<i>in my place</i>	17 maximus, maxima,	
	locus nātālis,		maximum	
	locī nātālis, m.			<i>very big, very large, very great, greatest</i>
42	longē	<i>place of birth, native land</i>	Pontifex Maximus	<i>Chief Priest</i>
	longē errāre	<i>far, a long way</i>	35 male	<i>badly, unfavorably</i>
		<i>make a big mistake</i>		

m

male dīcere	<i>insult</i>	mē see ego	<i>ointment, medicine, drug</i>
ō factum male!	<i>oh dreadfully done!</i>	medicāmentum,	<i>medicine</i>
vōbīs male sit	<i>oh awful deed!</i>	medicāmentī, n.	<i>doctor</i>
malignus, maligna,	<i>curses on you</i>	medicīna, medicīnae, f.	<i>consider</i>
malignum		medicus, medici, m.	<i>middle</i>
29 mālō, mālle, mālūtī	<i>prefer</i>	meditor, meditārī,	<i>for goodness sake!</i>
malum, malī, n.	<i>misfortune, evil, tragedy</i>	meditātus sum	
28 malus, mala, malum	<i>evil, bad</i>	medius, media, medium	
20 pessimus, pessima,	<i>very bad, worst</i>	medius fidius!	
pessimum		meī see ego	
23 mandātūm, mandātī, n.	<i>instruction, order</i>	mel, mellis, n.	<i>honey</i>
28 mandō, mandāre,		melior see bonus	
mandāvī, mandātūs	<i>order, entrust, hand over</i>	mellitus, mellita,	
		mellitum	<i>sweet as honey</i>
19 mānē	<i>in the morning</i>	mēmīnī, meminisse	<i>remember</i>
9 manēō, manēre, mānsī	<i>remain, stay</i>	memor, memor, memor,	
mānēs, māniūm, m.pl.	<i>departed spirit</i>	gen. memoris	<i>remembering, mindful of memory</i>
dī mānēs	<i>the spirits of the dead</i>	memoria, memoriae, f.	
manifestus, manifesta,		mendāx, mendāx,	<i>lying, deceitful mind</i>
manifestum		mendāx, gen. mendācis	
mānō, mānāre, mānāvī	<i>flow, be wet</i>	mēns, mentis, f.	
multum mānāns	<i>drenched</i>	in mentem venīre	
18, 27 manus, manūs, f.	<i>hand; band; control</i>	32 mēnsa, mēnsae, f.	<i>table</i>
	<i>(legal term in a marriage)</i>	39 mēnsis, mēnsis, m.	<i>month</i>
	<i>in manum convenīre</i>	mēnsor, mēnsōris, m.	<i>surveyor</i>
	<i>pass into the hands of</i>	mēnsūra, mēnsūrae, f.	<i>measurement</i>
	<i>manus ultima</i>	mentior, mentīrī,	
15 mare, maris, n.	<i>final touch</i>	mentītus sum	<i>lie, tell a lie</i>
margarītū, margarītī, n.		2 mercātor, mercātōris, m.	<i>merchant</i>
marīfīmus, marīfīma,		41 mērēō, mērēre, mērūfī	<i>deserve</i>
marīfītūm		mergō, mergere, mersī,	
14 marītūs, marītī, m.	<i>sea</i>	mersum	<i>submerge, drown</i>
marmor, marmorīs, n.	<i>pearl</i>	meridiēs, meridiētī, m.	<i>noon</i>
massa, massae, f.		meritus, merita, meritum	<i>deserved, well-deserved</i>
1 mātēr, mātrīs, f.	<i>husband</i>	mēta, mētāe, f.	<i>turning point</i>
mātrīmōnīum,	<i>marble</i>	metallūm, metallī, n.	<i>a mine</i>
mātrīmōnītī, n.		48 metūō, metuere, metūfī	<i>be afraid, fear</i>
mātrōna, mātrōnae, f.	<i>block</i>	28 metus, metūs, m.	<i>fear</i>
maximē see magnopere	<i>mother</i>	5 meūs, mea, meūm	<i>my, mine</i>
maximus see magnus	<i>marriage</i>	mī Lupe	<i>my dear Lupus</i>
		mī Secunde	<i>my dear Secundus</i>

mī = mihi		mōlēs, mōlis, f.	<i>the building, the city</i>
mihi <i>see</i> ego		molestus, molesta,	<i>troublesome</i>
18 miles, mīlitēs, m.	soldier	molestūm	
mīlitō, mīlitāre, mīlitāvī	be a soldier	mollīō, mollīre,	
28 mīlle	a thousand	mollīvī, mollītūs	<i>soothe, soften</i>
28 mīlia, mīlium, n.pl.	thousands	42 mōllis, mōllis, molle	<i>soft, gentle</i>
minaē, minārum, f.pl.	threats	22 moneō, monēre,	
11 minimē	no, least, very little	monūfī, monitūs	<i>warn, advise</i>
minimus <i>see</i> parvus		monitus, monitūs, m.	<i>warning, advice</i>
minister, ministri, m.	servant, agent	12 mōns, montis, m.	<i>mountain</i>
minor <i>see</i> parvus		mōns Palātinus	<i>the Palatine hill</i>
40 minor, minārī,		summus mōns	<i>the top of the mountain</i>
minātus sum (+ DAT)	threaten	47 mōra, mōrae, f.	<i>delay</i>
minus <i>see</i> paulum		21 morbus, morbī, m.	<i>illness</i>
12 mīrabilis, mīrabilis, mīrabilē	marvelous, strange, wonderful	mordēō, mordēre,	
mīrabilē dictū	strange to say	momordī, morsus	<i>bite</i>
36 mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum	admire, wonder at extraordinary	34 morior, morī,	
mīrus, mīra, mīrum		mōrtuus sum	<i>die</i>
misellus, misella, misellum	wretched little	morere!	<i>die!</i>
15 miser, misera, miserum	miserable, wretched, sad	mōrtuus, mortua,	
misericors, misericors, misericors, gen.	tender-hearted, full of pity	mōrtuum	<i>dead</i>
misericordis		35 moror, morārī,	
12 mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus	send	mōrātus sum	<i>delay</i>
mōderātiō, moderātiōnis, f.	moderation, caution	20 mōrs, mortis, f.	<i>death</i>
modicus, modica, modicum	ordinary, little	mōrēm obīre	<i>die</i>
34 modo	just, now, only, just now	mōrēm sibi cōncēscere	<i>commit suicide</i>
45 modo ... modo	now ... now, sometimes ... sometimes	mōrēs, mōrsūs, m.	
nōn modo ... sed etiam	not only ... but also	mōrtālis, mortālis, mortālē	<i>bite, fangs</i>
23 modus, modī, m.	manner, way, kind	genus mortālē	<i>mortal</i>
22 quō modō?	how? in what way?	mōrtuus see morior	<i>the human race</i>
moechus, moechī, m.	lover, adulterer	mōs, mōris, m.	
moenia, moenium, n.pl.	city walls; city	mōtūs, mōtūs, m.	<i>custom</i>
		33 moveō, movēre, mōvī,	<i>movement</i>
		mōtūs	<i>move, influence</i>
		9 mox	<i>moved, moving</i>
		45 mulier, mulieris, f.	<i>soon</i>
		multitūdō,	<i>woman</i>
		35 multō	<i>crowd</i>
		multum	<i>much</i>
		multum mānāns	<i>much</i>
			<i>drenched</i>

5 multus, multa, multum	<i>much</i>	nātus <i>see</i> nāscor	
5 multī	<i>many</i>	30 nātūs, nātī, m.	<i>son</i>
plūrēs, plūrēs, plūrā	<i>many, several</i>	naufragiūm, naufragī, n.	<i>shipwreck</i>
19 plūrimī, plūrimae,		15 nauta, nautae, m.	<i>sailor</i>
plūrima		nauticus, nautica,	<i>made by the sailors</i>
plūrimus, plūrima,		nauticūm	<i>voyage</i>
plūrīnum		nāvīgātīō, nāvīgātōnis, f.	<i>sail</i>
21 plūs, plūris, n.	<i>more</i>	16 nāvīgō, nāvīgāre, nāvīgāvī	<i>ship</i>
quid multa?	<i>in brief, in short</i>	3 nāvīs, nāvis, f.	<i>that ... not, so that ...</i>
quid plūra?	<i>why say more?</i>	31, 36 nē	<i>not, in order that ... not</i>
mūniō, mūnīre,	<i>protect, immunize;</i>		<i>in case anything, that nothing</i>
mūnīvī, mūnītūs	<i>build</i>	48 nē quid	<i>not even</i>
48 mūnus, mūneris, n.	<i>gift</i>		<i>in case anyone, that nobody</i>
murmur, murmuris, n.	<i>roar, rumble</i>	32 nē ... quidem	<i>mist</i>
11 mūrūs, mūrī, m.	<i>wall</i>	48 nē quis	<i>and not, nor</i>
mūs, mūris, m.f.	<i>mouse</i>		<i>no longer</i>
musca, muscae, f.	<i>fly</i>	32 nec	<i>neither ... nor</i>
mūsicūs, mūsicī, m.	<i>musician</i>		<i>necessary</i>
mūtābilis, mūtābilis,		nebula, nebulae, f.	<i>necessary</i>
mūtābile	<i>changeable, contradictory</i>		<i>need, necessity</i>
40 mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī,	<i>change</i>	necessāriū, necessāria,	
mūtātūs		necessārium	
vestem mūtāre	<i>put on mourning clothes</i>	14 necesse	
mūtūs, mūta, mūtūm	<i>silent</i>	necessitās, necessitātis, f.	
	n	7 necō, necāre, necāvī,	<i>kill</i>
18 nam	<i>for</i>	necātūs	<i>(that which is divinely) forbidden</i>
nārrātiō, nārrātiōnis, f.	<i>narration</i>	nefas, n.	
7 nārrō, nārrāre,		neglegēns, neglegēns,	
nārrātū, nārrātūs		neglegēns, gen.	
34 nāscor, nāscī, nātūs sum	<i>tell, relate</i>	neglegēntis	<i>careless</i>
nātū maximus	<i>be born</i>	31 neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī,	
quīndēcim annōs nātūs		neglectus	<i>neglect</i>
nat <i>see</i> nō		neglegēntia, neglegēntiae, f.	<i>carelessness</i>
nātālis, nātālis, nātāle		43 negō, negāre, negāvī,	
locus nātālis,		negātūs	<i>deny, say that ... not</i>
		17 negōtīum, negōtī, n.	<i>business</i>
		negōtīum agere	<i>do business, work</i>
natō, natāre, natāvī	<i>place of birth, native land</i>	18 nēmō	<i>no one, nobody</i>
nātāra, nātārae, f.	<i>swim</i>	Neptūnus, Neptūnī, m.	<i>Neptune (god of the sea)</i>
	<i>nature</i>	42 neque	<i>and not, nor</i>

24	neque ... neque nēquām	neither ... nor in vain	nōnumquam nōrat = nōverat	sometimes
25	nescio, nescire, nescītī nēve nex, necis, f. nī = nisi Nīcomēdēnsēs, Nicomēdēnsium, m.pl. Nīcomēdā, Nicomēdīae, f. nīdus, nīdī, m.	not know and that ... not slaughter, murder	10 nōs nōscitō, nōscitāre, nōscitāvī nōsse = nōvisse	we, us recognize
36	niger, nigra, nigrum 7 nihil	black nothing	11 noster, nostra, nostrum nōtitia, nōtitiae, f.	our notice
30	nihil cūrō nihil opus est nihilominus nimbus, nimbī, m.	I don't care there is no need nevertheless rain cloud, rain	26 nōtūs, nōta, nōtūm Notus, Notī, m.	known, well-known, famous South wind I know
23	nimium	too much	19 nōvī novātus	change, revolutionize new
33	nisi	except, unless	13 nōvus, nova, novum 22 nox, noctis, f.	night, darkness
13	nītō, nītī, nīxus sum nīveus, nīvea, nīveum nīx, nīvis, f. nō, nāre, nāvī	lean snow-white snow swim	38 nōbō, nōbere, nūpsī (+ DAT)	cloud marry bare nonsense, foolish talk not any, no, not at all surely ... not?
30	nōbilis, nōbilis, nōbile nōbīs see nōs	noble, of noble birth	26 num (2) numerō, numerāre, numerāvī, numerātus	whether count number
27	noceō, nocēre, nocuī (+ DAT) nocte see nox	hurt	33 numerus, numerī, m. numerī, numerōrum, m.pl.	military units; (astrological) calculations
13	nōlō, nōlle, nōluī nōlī, nōlite nōllem	not want, refuse do not, don't I would not want	17 numquam 11 nunc	never now
25	nōmen, nōminis, n. nōmīn, nōmīnāre, nōmīnāvī, nōmīnātus	name	nunc iam	now however, as things are now
3	nōn	name, mention by name	10 nūntīō, nūntīare, nūntīāvī, nūntīātus	announce
41	nōn iterum	not again	8 nūntīus, nūntī, m.	messenger, message, news
16	nōn sī	not even if	21 nūper	recently
21	nōn tantum	not only	nūptīae, nūptīārum, f.pl.	wedding, marriage
41	nōndum	not yet	nūptīālis, nūptīālis,	wedding, marriage
16	nōnne?	surely?	nūptīāle	wedding, marriage
21	nōnnūlli, nōnnūllae, nōnnūlla	some, several	tabulae nūptīālēs	marriage contract, marriage tablets

35	nūptūrūs see nūbō nusquam	Nymphae, Nymphārum, f.pl.	somewhere	obtīnēō, obtinēre, obtinū, obtentus
37	Nymphs (minor goddesses of the woods and mountains)	obdūrō, obdūrāre, obdūrāvī	nowhere	obtulī see offerō
40	obeō, obře, obī mortem obře	obeō, obře, obī mortem obře	be firm meet, go to meet die	obviam eō, obviam īre, obviam ī (+ DAT)
37	obēsus, obēsa, obēsum obiciō, obicere, obiēcī, obiectus	obēsus, obēsa, obēsum obiciō, obicere, obiēcī, obiectus	fat	obvius, obvia, obvium
37	oblātūs see offerō oblidō, oblídere, oblīsī, oblīsus	oblātūs see offerō oblidō, oblídere, oblīsī, oblīsus	present, put in the way of, expose to	occāsiō, occāsiōnis, f.
37	oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum	oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum	crush	occīdī, occidere, occīdī
37	obscūrus, obscūra, obscūrum	obscūrus, obscūra, obscūrum	forget	occupātūs, occupātā, occupātūm
37	observō, observāre, observāvī, observātus	observō, observāre, observāvī, observātus	dark, gloomy	occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātūs
18	obstīnātē obstinātus, obstinātā, obstinātūm	obstīnātē obstinātus, obstinātā, obstinātūm	notice, observe	ocellus, ocellī, m.
18	obstipēscō, obstipēscere, obstipuī	obstipēscō, obstipēscere, obstipuī	stubbornly	Octōber, Octōbris, Octōbre
18	obstō, obstāre, obstītī (+ DAT)	obstō, obstāre, obstītī (+ DAT)	stubborn	Octōgintā
18	obstringō, obstringere, obstrīnxī, obstrictus	obstringō, obstringere, obstrīnxī, obstrictus	gape in amazement	odī, oculī, m.
6	obstruō, obstruere, obstrūxī, obstrūctus	obstruō, obstruere, obstrūxī, obstrūctus	obstruct, block the way	odī, odīsse
30	obstupefacī, obstupefacere, obstupefēcī, obstupefactus	obstupefacī, obstupefacere, obstupefēcī, obstupefactus	block the way through	odiōsas, odiōsa, odiōsum
7	obterō, obterere, obtrīvī, obtrītus	obterō, obterere, obtrīvī, obtrītus	amaze, stun	odiōsum
6	obtrīvī, obtrītus	obtrīvī, obtrītus	trample to death	odōrātūs, odōrāta, odōrātūm
6	olīm	olīm	offendō, offendere, offēndī, offēnsus	offēndī esse
30	omnīnō	omnīnō	offēndī, offēnsus	offēndī, offēnsus
7	omnis, omnis, omne	omnis, omnis, omne	offīcīum, officī, n.	offēndī, offēnsus
7	omnia	omnia	offīcīum agere	offēndī, offēnsus
7	opera, operae, f.	opera, operae, f.	omittō, omittere, omīsī, omīssus	omittō, omittere, omīsī, omīssus
7	tuā operā	tuā operā	omittō, omittere, omīsī, omīssus	abandon
7	operīō, operīre, operū, operūtus	operīō, operīre, operū, operūtus	completely	completely
7	operūtus	operūtus	all, every	all, every
7	operūtus	operūtus	all, everything	all, everything
7	operūtus	operūtus	work, attention	work, attention
7	operūtus	operūtus	by your doing,	by your doing,
7	operūtus	operūtus	because of you	because of you

	operis <i>see</i> opus
28	opēs, opum, f.pl.
	money, wealth; means, power
	opifex, opificis, m. inventor, craftsman
	oportet, oportere, oportuit nōs oportet
21	oppidum, oppidi, n. town
	oppōnō, oppōnere, opposū, oppositus
32	opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressus
24	oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus
	optimē <i>see</i> bene
	optimus <i>see</i> bonus
47	optō, optāre, optāvī, optatus
30	opus, operis, n. work, construction, building
	nihil opus est there is no need
41	opus est (+ abl.)海岸
	ōra, ōrae, f. speech
	ōratiō, ōratiōnis, f. speaker (in court), pleader
45	orbis, orbis, m. globe
45	orbis terrārum world
	orbitās, orbitātis, f. childlessness
	orbus, orba, orbum bereaved, orphaned
	Orcus, Orcī, m. the underworld, Hell
	ōrdō, ōrdinis, m. row, line
	Ōrīōn, Ōrīonis, m. Orion, the Hunter (constellation)
38	orior, ōrīrī, ortus sum rise, rise up, arise
23	ōrnō, ūrnāre, ūrnāvī, ūrnātus decorate
	ōrnātus, ūrnāta, ūrnātum decorated, elaborately furnished
31	ōrō, ūrāre, ūrāvī beg
	ōs, ūris, n. face, mouth
	os, ossis, n. bone
	ōsculum, ūsculī, n. kiss

9	ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus
32	ōtiōsūs, ūtiōsa, ūtiōsum
45	ōtium, ūtī, n. Ovidiānus, Ovidiāna, Ovidiānum
	ovis, ovis, f. of Ovid sheep
	P. = Pūblius
	pācēm <i>see</i> pāx
	pacīscor, pacīscī, pactus sum
	pācōd, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātus
12	paene
	paenitentia, paenitentiae, f. Palātinus, Palātīna, Palātinum
	mōns Palātinus pallēscō, pallēscere, palluī pallidus, pallida,
	palma, palmae, f. pantomīmus, pantomīmī, m.
	pār, pār, pār, gen. paris parātus, parāta, parātum
22	parcō, parcere, pepercī (+ dat)
	parēns, parentis, m.f. parentēs, parentum, m.f.pl.
23	pārēō, pārēre, pārūf (+ dat)
	pariēs, parietis, m. pariō, parere, peperī, partus
	pariter
7	parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus

P

18	part, partis, f. laevā parte
47	parum too little, not ... enough
6	parvus, parva, parvum minor, minor, minus, gen. minōris
22	minimus, minima, minimum
	passer, passeris, m.
24	passus, passa, passum passus <i>see</i> patior pāstor, pāstōris, m.
24	patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactus pātē, pātēre, pātū
1	pater, patris, m. patientia, patientiae, f.
34	patior, patī, passus sum
37	patria, patriae, f. patrius, patria, patrium patrō, patrāre,
	patrāvī, patrātus patrōnus, patrōnī, m.
17	paučī, paucae, pauca
44	paulātīm paulīsper
37	paulō
46	paulum
46	minus
32	pauper, pauper, pauper, gen. pauperis
	paveō, pavēre, pāvī
30	pavor, pavōris, m.
10	pāx, pācis, f. peccō, peccāre, peccāvī
48	pectus, pectoris, n.
4	pecūnia, pecūniae, f.
41	pedem <i>see</i> pēs peditēs, pedūtum, m.pl. pelagus, pelagī, n.
	foot soldiers, infantry sea
	part on the left hand
	too little, not ... enough
	small
	very little, least
	sparrow
	loose, disheveled
	shepherd
	reveal
	lie open
	father
	patience
	suffer, endure, allow
	country, homeland of the father
	accomplish, commit
	patron, defender, advocate
	few, a few
	gradually
	for a short time
	a little
	a little, slightly, to a slight extent
	less
	poor
	dread, fear
	panic
	peace
	do wrong, be to blame, be at fault
	chest, breast, heart
	money, sum of money
	perpetuum
	in perpetuum
	persevērō, persevērāre, persevērāvī
	perpetua, perpetua, perpetuum
	perseverāre, persistēre, persistī
	persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsī (+ dat)
	perterritus, perterrita, perterritum

pertinācia, pertinācias, f.	obstinacy, determination	4 poēta, poētae, m. pollex, pollicis, m.	poet thumb
pertineō, pertinēre, pertinū	concern	38 pollicitor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum	promise procession
pertinēre ad exemplum	involve a precedent	47 pondus, ponderis, n.	weight
37 perturbō, perturbāre, perturbāvī, perturbātus	disturb, alarm	16 pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus	put, place, put up
17 pervenīo, pervenīre, pervenī	reach, arrive at	2 pontifex, pontificis, m. Pontifex Maximus	priest Chief Priest
8 pēs, pedis, m. pessimus <i>see</i> malus	foot, paw	29 populus, populi, m.	people
5, 18 petō, petere, petīvī, petitus	head for; attack; seek, beg for; ask for	8 porta, portae, f.	gate
phōca, phōcae, f.	seal	3 portō, portāre, portāvī, portatus	herald, announcer
48 pietās, pietatis, f.	duty, piety, family feeling (respect for (1) the gods, (2) homeland, (3) family)	10 portus, portū, m. 19 poscō, possere, poposcī positus <i>see</i> pōnō	harbor, port demand, ask for carry
pinguis, pinguis, pingue	plump	43 possidē, possidēre, possēdī, possessus	possess
pīnus, pīni, f.	pine tree, boat (made of pine wood)	13 possum, posse, potuī	can, be able
pīpiō, pīpiāre, pīpiāvī	chirp, peep	9 post (+ ACC)	after, behind
piscis, piscis, m. pius, pia, pium	fish	18 posteā	afterwards
11 placeō, placēre, placuī (+ DAT)	good, pious, respectful to the gods	18 posterus, postera, posterum	next
placidus, placida, placidum	please, suit	6 postquam	after, when
plānus, plāna, plānum	calm, peaceful level, flat	postrēmō	finally, lastly
5 plaudoō, plaudere, plausi, plausus	applaud, clap	postrēmus, postrēma, postrēnum	last
plastrum, plastrī, n. plausus, plausūs, m.	wagon, cart	16 postridē	(on) the next day
21 plēnus, plēna, plēnum plērique, plēraeque,	applause	8 postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus	demand
plūma, plūmae, f.	full	posuī <i>see</i> pōnō	
plumbum, plumbī, n.	most, the majority	potēns, potēns, potēns, gen. potentis	powerful
plūra, plūrēs, plūs <i>see</i> multus	feather	33 potestās, potestatis, f.	power
plūrimī <i>see</i> multus	lead	in potestātem redigere	bring under the control
25 poena, poenae, f.	punishment	potis, potis, potē qui potis est?	possible how is that possible? how can that be?
		potuī <i>see</i> possum	
		prae (+ ABL)	instead of, rather
			than; compared with

26 praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus	provide	48 premō, premere, pressī, pressus	push, press
27 praeceps, praeceps, praeceps, gen. praeceptis	headlong, rash	pretiōsus, pretiōsa, pretiōsum	expensive, precious
praeceptum, praeceptī, n.	instruction	pretiōtū, pretiōtū, n.	price
praecepiō, praecepere, praecepī, praeceptus	instruct, order; take beforehand, receive in advance	prēces adhibēre	offer prayers
praecepitō, praecepitāre, praecepitāvī	hurl	prīdiē	the day before
praecepitē	especially	prīmō	at first
praeccō, praeconīs, m.	herald, announcer	prīmūm	first, for the first time
praecurrō, praecurrere, praeacurrī	go on ahead, run ahead	cum prīmūm	as soon as
praedīum, praedī, n.	estate, property	11 prīmūs, prīma, prīmūm	first
praefectus, praefectī, m.	commander, governor (of an equestrian province)	amīcī prīcipis	friends of the emperor (the emperor's council)
praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus	put in charge	prīcipiātūs, prīcipiātūs, m.	principate, reign
27 praeūmī, praeūmī, n.	prize, reward, profit	prīcipiā, prīcipiādūm, n.pl.	headquarters
praeēns, praeēns, praeēns, gen. praeēntis	present, ready especially	prior, prior, prius	first, in front, earlier
36 praeēstīm	show, display	prīscus, prīscā, prīscūm	ancient
praeēstō, praeēstāre, praeēstītū	praeēsum, praeēsse, praeēfū (+ DAT)	29 prius	earlier, before now, first
praeēsum, praeēsse, praeēfū (+ DAT)	be in charge of	34 priusquam	before, until
praeēsumō, praeēmēre, praeēūmpī, praeēūmpītū	take in advance	prīvātūs, prīvātā, prīvātūm	private
36 præter (+ ACC)	except	18 prō (+ ABL)	in front of, for, in
prætereā	besides	38 prō certō habēre	return for, as, instead of, in
prætereō, præterēre, præterī	pass by, go past	40 probō, probāre, probāvī, probātūs	accordance with
prætōriānus, prætōriāna, prætōriānum	prætorian (belonging to emperor's bodyguard)	proclū	know for certain
34 prævaleō, prævalēre, prævaluī	prevail, be uppermost	prōcurrō, prōcurrere, prōcurrī	prove, examine (e.g. at time of enrollment), approve, recommend, make acceptable
prætūm, prātī, n.	meadow	prōdēsse see prōsum	advance, proceed
34 præcor, præcārī, præcātūs sum	pray (to), plead, plead for	prōdītōr, prōdītōris, m.	far off, from afar
			project
			betrayer, informer

40	prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus	betray	prōsequor, prōsequī, prōsecūtus sum	follow, escort
	prōdūcō, prōducere, prōdūxī, prōductus	bring forward, bring out	prōsilō, prōsilire, prōsiluī	leap forward, jump
37	proelium, proelī, n.	battle	prōsum, prōdesse, prōfūī (+ DAT)	benefit quid prōderit?
34	proficīscor, proficīscī, prefectus sum	set out	prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtēxi, prōtēctus	protect
	profiteor, profitērī, professus sum	declare	prōtēndō, prōtēdere, prōtēndī, prōtentus	thrust forward
	prōgeniēs, prōgeniēī, f.	descendant	prōtinus	immediately
34	prōgredior, prōgrediī, prōgressus sum	advance, proceed	27 prōximus, proxima, proximum	province
38	prohibēō, prohibēre, prohibūī, prohibitus	prevent	in proximō	nearest, next to, very close, last nearby
	prōiciō, prōicere, prōiectī, prōiectus	cast (as an offering)	prūdēns, prūdēns, prūdēns, gen. prūdentis	shrewd, intelligent, sensible
	prōlēs, prōlis, f.	offspring, brood	prūdenter	prudently, sensibly
	prōmissum, prōmissī, n.	promise	Prūsēns, Prūsēniūm, m.pl.	people of Prusa
11	prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmisī, prōmissus	promise	pūblicō, pūblicāre, pūblicāvī, pūblicātum	confiscate
	prōmptum	quick	pūblicus, pūblica, pūblicum	public
	prōmunturium,		pudīcīta, pudīcītae, f.	chastity, virtue, purity
	prōmunturī, n.	promontory	pudīcūs, pudīca, pudīcum	chaste, virtuous
	prōnūntiō, prōnūtiāre, prōnūntiāvī,		5 puella, puellae, f.	girl
	prōnūntiātus	proclaim, preach, announce, pronounce	8 puer, puerī, m.	boy
			8 pugnō, pugnāe, f.	fight
			9 pugnō, pugnārē, pugnāvī	fight
	prōnūs, prōna, prōnum	easy	9 pulcher, pulchra, pulchrūm	beautiful
7	prope (+ ACC)	near	pulchritūdō,	
	properō, properāre, properāvī	hurry	6 pulsō, pulsāre, pulsāvī, pulsātus	beauty
	propinquus, propinquī, m.	relative	pūmex, pūmicis, m.	
	prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposūī, prōpositus	propose, put forward	pūmiliō, pūmiliōnis, m.	
	prōpositum, prōpositū, n.	intention, resolution	16 pūnīō, pūnīre, pūnīvī, pūnītus	hit, knock on, whack, punch
	proprius, propria, proprium	right, proper; one's own, that belongs to one	puppis, puppis, f.	cliff, volcanic stone
43	propter (+ ACC)	because of	pūriter	dwarf
	propterā	for that reason		
	prōra, prōrae, f.	prow		
				punish
				stern, poop
				decently, with clean water

37	pūrus, pūra, pūrum puto, putāre, putāvī	pure, clean, spotless think	questus, questūs, m.	lamentation, cry of grief
	Q. = Quīntus	where	15 quī, quae, quod id quod quod sī	who, which, some what but if
	quā	quadrātus, quadrāta, quadrātūm	15 quī? quae? quod? quī potis est?	which? what? how? how is that possible? how can that be?
	quadrātūm	quadriga, quadrigae, f.	33 quia	because
	quadriga	quaedam see quīdam	quicquam see quisquam	
4	quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus	search for, look for	42 quīcumque, quaecumque, quodecumque	whoever, whatever, any whatever
	quaesō	I beg, i.e. please		
27	quālis, quālis, quāle	what sort of; just like		
14	quam (1) tam ... quam	how	quid? see quis?	
10	quam (2) quam celerrīmē	as ... as	quid see quis	
14	quamquam	than	32 quīdam, quaedam, quoddam	one, a certain
	quamvis	as quickly as possible	35 quidem	indeed
35	quandō?	although, however	32 nē ... quidem	not even
	quandoquidem	although, however	quidquid see quisquis	rest
22	quantus, quanta, quantum	when?	quiēs, quiētis, f.	quiet, peaceful
	quantum	seeing that, since	quiētus, quiēta, quiētum	
	quantum est	how big	quiēlibet, quelibet, quodlibet	
30	quārē?	as, as much as	anyone at all, anything at all	
	quārē	as much as there is	but that, whereby not	
	quārtūs, quārta, quārtūm	why?	fifteen	
34	quasi	and so	48 quīndecim	
	quassō, quassārē, quassāvī, quassātus	fourth	20, 28 quīnqāgīntā	
	quater	as if, like	20, 28 quīnque	
	quatiō, quatere, quassī, quassus	shake violently	4 quis? quid?	
20, 28	quattuor	four times	quid agis?	who? what?
48	quattuordecim	shake, flap		how are you? how are you doing?
14	-que	four		what am I to do?
	-que ... -que	fourteen		in brief, in short
	quendam see quīdam	and		why say more?
	querēla, querēlae, f.	both ... and		what good will it do?
38	queror, querī, questus sum	complaint	quis, quid	anyone, anything
		lament, complain	48 nē quid	in case anything, that nothing
		about	nē quis	in case anyone, that anyone, that nobody

41	sī quid	if anything	rēctē	rightly, properly
41	sī quis	if anyone	rēctor, rēctōris, m.	helmsman
28, 45	quisquam, quicquam or quidquam	anyone, anything	recumbō, recumbere,	
48	quisque, queaque, quodque usque quāque	each one, everyone on every possible occasion	18 recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus	lie down, recline refuse
46	quisquis, quidquid or quicquid	whoever, whatever, whatever possible whatever is happening	4 reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus	give back, restore, make be restored to one's senses, be restored to oneself
18	quō?	where? where to?	15 redeō, redire, rediī	return, go back, come back
22	quō modō?	how? in what way?	redigō, redigere, redēgī,	
6	quod ideō quod	because for the reason that, because	redāctus	bring bring under the control
	quōdām see quīdam		in potestātem redigere	
	quodcumque see quīcumque			
17	quondam	one day, once, some time ago, sometimes	26 referō, referre, retulī, relātus	bring back, carry, deliver, tell, report make a difference
	quoniām	since	rēfert, rēferre, rētulit	
2	quoque	also, too	33 reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectus	repair
	quōsdam see quīdam		33 rēgīna, rēgīnae, f.	queen
26	quot?	how many?	regiō, regiōnis, f.	region
35	quotiēns	whenever	rēgis see rēx	
R				
	rapidus, rapida, rapidum	rushing, racing, blazing, consuming	38 regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus 34 regredior, regredi,	rule, guide, advise go back, return
31	rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum	seize, grab	regressus sum relēgō, relēgāre, relēgāvī, relēgātus	
	rārus, rāra, rārum	occasional	20 relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus	exile
	ratīō, ratīōnis, f.	reason; accounting; procedure, manner accounts	reliquiae, reliquiārum, f.pl.	leave
	ratīōnēs, ratīōnum, f.pl.		46 reliquus, reliqua, reliquum relūcēscō, relūcēscere, relīxi	remains remaining, the rest
	ratis, ratis, f.	boat	rem see rēs	become light again
	rē see rēs		remaneō, remanēre, remānsi	
	rebellō, rebellāre, rebellāvī	rebel, revolt	remedium, remedī, n.	stay behind, remain
	rēbus see rēs		rēmigium, rēmigī, n.	cure
	recitatīō, recitatīōnis, f.	recital, public reading	rēmigō, rēmigāre, rēmigāvī	oars, wings
36	recitō, recitāre, recitāvī, recitātus	recite, read out	remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissus	row send back

rēmus, rēmī, m.	oar	rēspūblica, rēspūblicae, f.	republic
renīdeō, renīdere	grin, smirk, smile	restituō, restituere,	
renovō, renovāre,		restituī, restitūtus	restore
renovāvī, renovātus		resūmō, resūmēre,	
repellō, repellere,		resūmpsī, resūmptus	pick up again
repulfi, repulsus	repel, push back, rebuff	retineō, retinēre, retinūf,	
repulsus, repulsa, repulsum	repelled, taken aback suddenly	retentus	keep, hold back
43 repente		rettulī see referō	
42 reperiō, reperire, repperī, repertus	find	reus, reī, m.	defendant, accused (of)
repetō, repetere, repetīvī, repetītus	seek again, repeat, claim	9 revenīō, revenīre, revēnī	come back, return
reprehendō, reprehendere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus	blame, criticize	revertor, revertī,	
repudiō, repudiāre, repudiāvī, repudiātus		reversus sum	turn back, return
46 requirō, requirere, requisīvī, requisitus	divorce, reject	37 revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātus	recall, call back, recover, make (someone) go back
	ask, seek, search for, go looking for	revomō, revomere	vomit up
6 rēs, reī, f.	thing, business	14 rēx, rēgis, m.	king
33 rēvērā	in fact, truly, really	rēxi see regō	
rem administrāre	manage the task	rhētor, rhētoris, m.	teacher
rem cōgitāre	consider the problem	rīdeō, rīdere, rīsī	laugh, smile
rem narrāre	tell the story	rīdiculus, rīdicula, rīdiculum	ridiculous, silly
32 rēs adversae	misfortune	rīpa, rīpae, f.	river bank
resēcō, resēcāre, resēcuī, resēctus		rīsus, rīsūs, m.	smile
residō, residēre, resēdī	cut back, prune	rīte	properly
17 resistō, resistere, restītū (+ DAT)	sit down	rīvus, rīvī, m.	stream
resonō, resonāre, resonāvī	resist	7 rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus	ask
resorbēō, resorbēre	resound	rogus, rogī, m.	pyre
respectō, respectāre, respectāvī	suck back	Rōma, Rōmae, f.	Rome
respiciō, respicere, respexī		Rōmānī, Rōmānorūm, m.pl.	Romans
respīrō, respīrāre, respīrāvī	look towards, count on	Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum	Roman
	look at, look upon,	rōstrum, rōstrī, n.	prow
	look back, look up	rubeō, rubēre	be red
	recover one's breath,	ruīna, ruīnae, f.	collapse
	get one's breath back	rūmor, rūmōris, m.	rumor
3 respondeō, respondēre, respondī		rūmōrēs, rūmōrum, m.pl.	gossip, rumors
responsūm, responsī, n.	reply	rūptus	break, split, burst, rupture; upset
	answer	13 ruō, ruere, ruī	rush, charge

rūpēs, rūpis, f.	rock, crag, cliff
25 rūrsus	again; on the other hand
35 rūs, rūris, n. rūrī	country, countryside in the country
rūsticus, rūstica, rūsticum villa rūstica	country, in the country, of a country man house in the country
S	
Sabinus, Sabīnī, m.	Sabine
21 sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred
15 sacerdōs, sacerdōtis, m.f. sacerdōtium, sacerdōtī, n. sacrāmentum, sacrāmentī, n.	priest, priestess priesthood
8 saepe	oath
26 saevus, saeva, saevum	offering, sacrifice
47 sagitta, sagittae, f. salsus, salsa, salsum	arrow
saltō, saltāre, saltāvī salubris, salubris, salubre	salty
29 saltūs, saltūtis, f.	dance
salūtem dicere	comfortable
2 salūtō, salūtāre, salutāvī, salutātus	safety, health;
3 salvē! salvēte!	greetings
8 sanguis, sanguinis, m. sānō, sānāre, sānāvī, sānātus	send good wishes
4 satis	heal, cure, treat
saxum, saxī, n. scaena, scaenae, f.	be wise
extremā scaena	enough
scapha, scaphae, f.	ii is generally agreed
scelerātus, scelerāta, scelerātum	rock
stage, scene	stage, scene
the edge of the stage	small boat
wicked	wicked
	25 scelestus, scelesta, scelestum
	29 scelus, sceleris, n. scilicet
	31 scindō, scindere, scidi, scissus
	23 scio, scīre, scīvī scopulus, scopulī, m.
	6 scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptus
	sculptor, sculptoris, m. scurrilis, scurrilis,
	13 sē
	inter sē
	sēcum
	secrētūs, sēcrēta, sēcrētum
	sector, sectārī, sectātus sum
	secundus, secunda, secundum
	secūris, secūris, f.
	37 sēcūrus, sēcūra, sēcūrum secūtus see sequor
	4 sed
	1 sedeō, sedēre, sēdī sēdō, sēdāre, sēdāvī, sēdātus
	seges, segetis, f.
	sēgnis, sēgnis, sēgne sēiunctus, sēiuncta,
	sēiunctum
	sella, sellae, f.
	semel
	10 semper
	11 senātor, senātōris, m. senātus, senātūs, m.
	cognitō senātūs
	5 senex, senis, m.
	trial by the senate
	old man

senīlis, senīlis, senīle	old	signō, signāre, signāvī, signātus
senior, senior, senius	older, elderly	4 signum, signī, n.
sēnsus, sēnsūs, m.	feeling, sense	sign, seal sign, seal, signal; military service
sententia, sententiae, f.	opinion, sentence	silence be silent
12 sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus	feel, notice	silentium, silentī, n. sileō, silēre, silū
42 sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī, sepultus	bury	8 silva, silvae, f. sim see sum
20, 28 septem	seven	40 similis, similis, simile (+ DAT)
septimus, septima, septimum	seventh	similar simplex, simplex, simplex, gen. simplicis
28 septuāgitā	seventy	35 simul
sepulcrum, sepulcrī, n.	tomb	at the same time, as
sepultūra, sepultūrae, f.	burial	soon as
sepultus, sepultī, m.	one who is buried	as soon as
34 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	follow	pretense, playacting
serēnus, serēna, serēnum	calm, clear	pretend
sermō, sermōnis, m.	conversation	without
sērō	late, after a long time	allow
10 servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus	save, look after	fire pump
1 servus, servī, m.	slave	stop, halt
sēsē = sē		be thirsty
sēstertius, sēstertiī, m.	sesterce (coin)	thirst
seu ... seu	whether ... or; if ... or	companion, partner
sevērē	if	companion, partner
sevēritās, sevēritātis, f.	severely	sun, day
sevērus, sevēra, sevērum	strictness, severity	be accustomed
20, 28 sex	severe, strict	common, usual
26 sī	six	lonely place,
nōn sī	not even if	wilderness
quod sī	but if	solemn, traditional
41 sī quid	if anything	solemnly
41 sī quis	if anyone	worry; incite, entice
sibi see sē		
28 sic	thus, in this way, in the same way	
siccus, sicca, siccum	dry, thirsty	
20 sicut	like	
sīcut ... ita	just as ... so	
42 sīdus, sīderis, n.	star	
significō, significāre, significāvī, significātus	mean, indicate	
46 somnus, somnī, m.		
34 sonitus, sonitūs, m.		

sonō, sonāre, sonuī	<i>sound</i>	44 studeō, studēre, studuī	<i>study</i>
sordidus, sordida, sordidum	<i>dirty</i>	39 studiū, studiī, n.	<i>enthusiasm; study</i>
30 soror, sorōris, f. sors, sortis, f.	<i>sister</i>	11 stułtus, stułta, stułtum	<i>stupid, foolish</i>
39 spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus	<i>lot, fate, one's lot</i>	40 suādeō, suādere, suāsī (+ DAT)	<i>advise, suggest</i>
spatiōsus, spatiōsa, spatiōsum	<i>scatter, spread</i>	25 suāvis, suāvis, suāve	<i>sweet</i>
47 spatium, spatī, n. spē see spēs	<i>huge</i>	suāviter sub (1) (+ ACC)	<i>sweetly</i>
45 speciēs, speciēt, f.	<i>appearance</i>	27 sub (2) (+ ABL)	<i>under, to the depths of</i>
8 spectāculum, spectāculi, n.	<i>show, spectacle</i>	subeō, subīre, subīt	<i>under, beneath</i>
spectātor, spectātōris, m.	<i>spectator</i>		<i>approach, come up,</i>
5 spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātūs	<i>look at, watch</i>		<i>take over</i>
29 spernō, spernere, sprēvī, sprētus	<i>despise, reject, ignore</i>	subinde	<i>regularly</i>
31 spērō, spērāre, spērāvī	<i>hope, expect</i>	6 subitō	<i>suddenly</i>
28 spēs, spēi, f.	<i>hope</i>	subitus, subita, subitum	<i>sudden</i>
splendidus, splendida, splendidum	<i>splendid, impressive</i>	sublevō, sublevāre, sublevāvī, sublevātus	<i>remove, relieve</i>
spoliō, spoliāre, spoliāvī, spoliātus		subridēō, subridēre, subriſī	<i>smile, smirk</i>
sportula, sportulae, f.		subsellium, subsellī, n.	<i>bench (for prisoner in</i>
			<i>court)</i>
spūmō, spūmāre, spūmāvī st!	<i>foam</i>	subsistō, subsistere, substiſī	<i>halt, stop, stay;</i>
stābam see stō	<i>ssh! hush!</i>		<i>encounter, face</i>
stabulum, stabulī, n.		suburgeō, suburgēre	<i>drive up close</i>
8 statim		32 subveniō, subvenīre, subvenīt (+ DAT)	<i>help, come to help</i>
statua, statuae, f.		successus, successūs, m.	<i>success</i>
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus		sufficiēns, sufficiēns, sufficiēns, gen. sufficiēns	<i>enough, sufficient</i>
46 sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātūs	<i>set up, establish, build; decide</i>	sulcō, sulcāre, sulcāvī	<i>plow through</i>
39 stilus, stilī, m. stīva, stīvae, f.	<i>lay low, knock over</i>	suī see sē	
5 stō, stāre, stētī strēnuē	<i>pen, stylus</i>	1 sum, esse, fuī	<i>be</i>
streptius, strepitūs, m.	<i>plow handle</i>	est mihi	<i>I have</i>
stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus	<i>stand, lie at anchor</i>	summa, summae, f.	<i>full responsibility,</i>
	<i>hard, energetically</i>	summersī, summersus	<i>supreme command</i>
	<i>noise, din</i>	16 summus, summa, summum	<i>sink, dip</i>
		summus mōns	<i>highest, greatest, top</i>
			<i>the top of the</i>
		sūmp̄tuōsus, sūmp̄tuōsa, sūmp̄tuōsum	<i>mountain</i>
		suōpte = suō	<i>expensive, lavish,</i>
		superbē	<i>costly</i>
		31 superbus, superba, superbūm	<i>arrogantly</i>
			<i>arrogant, proud</i>
	<i>draw, unsheathe</i>		

supercilia, superciliōrum, n.pl.	<i>eyebrows</i>	tābēscō, tābēscere, tābuī	<i>melt</i>
supercilia contrahere	<i>draw eyebrows</i>	tablīnum, tablīnī, n.	<i>study</i>
	<i>together, frown</i>	tabula, tabulae, f.	<i>tablet, writing tablet</i>
		tabulae nūptiālēs	<i>marriage contract,</i>
superior, superior, superius	<i>higher, further</i>		<i>marriage tablets</i>
	<i>upstream</i>	10 taceō, tacēre, tacuī	<i>be silent, be quiet</i>
		tacē!	<i>shut up! be quiet!</i>
6 superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus	<i>overcome, overpower;</i>	7 tacitē	<i>quietly, silently</i>
	<i>surpass</i>	27 tacitus, tacita, tacitum	<i>quiet, silent, in silence</i>
superpōnō, superpōnere, superposū, superpositūs	<i>place on</i>	23 tālis, tāli, tāle	<i>such</i>
superstes, superstītis, m.	<i>survivor</i>	20 tam	<i>so</i>
supersum, supersesse, superfuī	<i>survive, remain, be</i>		<i>as ... as</i>
	<i>left; be excessive</i>	7 tamen	<i>however</i>
suppliciter	<i>like a suppliant,</i>		<i>as, like</i>
	<i>humbly</i>	12 tandem	<i>at last</i>
supplicium, supplicīt, n.	<i>punishment, penalty</i>	36 tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus	<i>touch, move</i>
	<i>supplicium ultimum</i>	tāntum	<i>only</i>
supprimō, supprimere,	<i>staunch, stop the</i>	nōn tantum	<i>not only</i>
	<i>flow of</i>	27 tantus, tanta, tantum	<i>so great, such a great</i>
supprēmā, supprēma, suprēnum	<i>over, on top of</i>	tāndi esse	<i>be worth</i>
3 surgō, surgere, surrēxī	<i>last</i>	tantum	<i>so much, such a</i>
	<i>get up, rise, grow up,</i>		<i>great number</i>
	<i>be built up</i>	tardē	<i>late, slowly</i>
suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus	<i>undertake, take on</i>	tardus, tarda, tardum	<i>late</i>
suspiciō, suspicīōnis, f.	<i>suspicion</i>	taurus, taūrī, m.	<i>bull</i>
suspiciōsus, suspicīōsa, suspicīōsum		tē see tū	
34 suspicor, suspicārī, suspicātūs sum	<i>suspicious</i>	46 tēctūm, tēctī, n.	<i>ceiling, roof, building</i>
		45 tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus	<i>cover</i>
sustulī see tollō		44 tellūs, tellūris, f.	<i>land, earth</i>
susurrō, susurrāre, susurrāvī		37 tempestās, tempestātīs, f.	<i>storm, weather</i>
10 suus, sua, suum	<i>whisper, mumble</i>	12 templū, templī, n.	<i>temple</i>
	<i>his, her; their; his</i>	20 temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātūs	<i>try, put to the test,</i>
	<i>own</i>		<i>meddle with</i>
	suī, suōrum, m.pl.	31 tempus, temporis, n.	<i>time</i>
		tendō, tendere, tetendī,	
		tentus	<i>stretch out</i>
		tenebrae, tenebrārum, f.pl.	<i>darkness</i>
		tenebrīcōsus, tenebrīcōsa,	
		tenebrīcōsum	<i>dark, shadowy</i>
		15 teneō, tenēre, tenuī,	
		tentus	<i>hold, keep to, hold on</i>
			<i>to, occupy,</i>
			<i>possess, be upon</i>
			<i>tender, helpless</i>

t

T. = Titus

3 taberna, tabernae, f.

store, shop, inn

tener, tenera, tenerum

45	tenuis, tenuis, tenuie tenuō, tenuāre, tenuāvī, tenūtus	thin, subtle, shallow thin out back	torqueō, torquēre, torsī, tortus torus, torī, m.	torture, twist couch so many
12	terra, terae, f.	ground, land	19 tot	so many
45	orbis terrārum	world	8 tōtūs, tōta, tōtūm	the same number whole
7	terreō, terrēre, terrū, territus	frighten	tractō, tractāre, tractāvī, tractātus	tractō, tractāre, handle, touch
	terrestris, terrestris, terreste	on land	9 trādō, trādere, trādīt, trādītus	hand over
	terribilis, terribilis, terrible	terrible	13 trāhō, trahere, trāxī, tractus	drag, draw on, urge on, draw, derive; claim
	terror, terrōris, m.	terror		calm weather
	testācēum opus,	brickwork	37 trānīlūm, trānīllī, n.	across
	testāmēntū, n.		24 trānsēdō, trānsfīre, trānsīlī,	trānsitus
	testimōniū, n.	evidence		trānsfērō, trānsfērē,
	testis, testis, m.f.	witness		trānstūlī, trānslātūs
	testor, testārī, testatus sum	call to witness, swear by, take an oath on		trānsfīgō, trānsfigēre,
	tētē = tē		48 trecentī, trecentā, trecentā	trānsfīxī, trānsfixūs
	tetigī see tangō			pierce, stab
	theātrūm, theātrī, n.	theater		three hundred
	thermae, thermārum, f.pl.	baths		tremō, tremere, tremū
	Tiberis, Tiberis, m.	Tiber river		tremor, tremōris, m.
	tibi see tū			tremulus, tremula,
	tibīa, tibiae, f.	pipe		tremulum
	Tiburs, Tiburtis, m.	man from Tibur	12, 20, 38 tēs, tēs, tria	quivering
12	timō, timēre, timū	be afraid, fear		three
	timidē	fearfully		as many as three,
	timidus, timida, timidum	fearful, frightened		three entire
30	timor, timōris, m.	fear		
	tintinō, tintināre, tintināvī	ring	tribūnūs, tribūnī, m.	tribune (high-ranking officer)
	tūrō, tūrōnis, m.	recruit	tribūō, tribuere, tribū,	
	toga, togae, f.	toga	tribūtūs	grant, allot, assign
16	tollō, tollere, sustullī, sublātus	raise, lift up, hold up; remove, do away with	tricliniūm, triclinī, n.	dining room
	tōnsor, tōnsōris, m.	barber	tridēns, tridentis, m.	trident
	torpēdō, torpēre	be paralyzed	triērarchus, triērarchī, m.	naval captain
			20, 28 trīgīntā	thirty
			24 trīstīs, trīstīs, trīste	sad
			triumphus, triumphī, m.	triumph
			trūdīs, trūdīs, f.	celebrate a triumph
			trudīs, trudīs, f.	pole
			4 tū, tūfī	you (singular)
			tuba, tubae, f.	trumpet
			tuērī, tuērī, tuitus sum	watch over, protect

	tūlī see ferō		ūnā	with him, together
6	tum	then	ūnā cum (+ ABL)	together with
40	tum dēmūm	then at last, only then	unda, undae, f.	wave
			unde	from where
			ūndīque	on all sides
			ūnicus, ūnica, ūnicum	one and only
			(mātrōna) ūnvīra, (mātrōnae) ūnvīrae, f.	woman who has had one husband
			12, 20, 38 ūnūs, ūna, ūnum	one, a single
			urbānūs, urbāna, urbānum	chic, fashionable, refined; city-dweller, man from Rome
			urbs, urbis, f.	city
			urgeō, urgēre	pursue, press upon
			ūrō, ūrēre, ussī, ustus	burn
			usquam	anywhere
			usque (1)	continually
			usque adhūc	until now, up to this time
			usque alter	yet another
			usque quāque	on every possible occasion
5, 14	ubi	where, when		
		ubicumque		
29	ubīque	wherever		
		everywhere	usque (2) (+ ACC)	as far as
43	ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum	avvenge, take revenge on, take vengeance	ūsus, ūsūs, m.	use
		any	ūsūi esse	be of use
		elm tree	ūsus see ūtor	
39	ūllus, ūlla, ūllum	as, like, as soon as, when	28 ut (1)	
	ulmus, ulmī, f.		26 ut (2)	that, so that, in order that
26	ultimus, ultima, ultimum	farthest, last, final, at the edge	44 uteque, utraque,	each, both, each of two both groups of people
		manus ultima	utrumque	womb
		supplicium ultimum	utriquē	usefulness
		ultiō, ultiōnis, f.	uterus, uterī, m.	
46	ultrā	revenge	ūtīlitas, ūtīlatis, f.	
	ululātūs, ululātūs, m.	further, beyond	40 ūtor, ūtfī	use
	Umber, Umbrī, m.	shriek	ūsus sum (+ ABL)	whether
	umbra, umbrae, f.	Umbrian	33 utrum	whether ... or
	umerus, umerī, m.	shadow, ghost	35 utrum ... an	wife
	ūmidus, ūmida, ūmidum	shoulder	10 uxor, uxōris, f.	take as a wife, marry
23	umquam	rainy, stormy	uxōrem dūcere	
		ever		

V

vacō, vacāre, vacāvī	be unoccupied
vacuus, vacua, vacuum	empty
vadūm, vadī, n.	water
vae tē!	alas for you!
vāgitūs, vāgitūs, m.	wailing, crying
vagor, vagārī,	
vagātūs sum	
vagus, vaga, vagum	spread, go around, wander
7 valdē	wandering
11 valē	very much, very
avē atque valē	good-bye, farewell
valedicō, valedicere,	hail and farewell
valedixī	
valeō, valēre, valuī	
37 validus, valida, validum	
varius, varia, varium	
vāstus, vāsta, vāstum	
-ve	
10 vehementer	
vehiculum, vehiculī, n.	
31 vehō, vehere, vēxī, vectus	
vehor, vehī, vectus sum	
34 vel	
48 vel ... vel	
velim, vellem see volō	
48 velut	
vēna, vēnae, f.	like
vēnālicius, vēnāliciū, m.	vein
6 vēndō, vēndere, vēndidi,	slave dealer
vēnditus	
23 venēnum, venētī, n.	sell
venia, veniae, f.	poison
5 veniō, venīre, vēnī	mercy
in mentem venīre	come, come forward
vēnor, vēnārī,	occur, come to mind
vēnātus sum	
venter, ventris, m.	hunt
ventitō, ventitāre,	stomach, womb
vēnitāvī	often go, go repeatedly

28 ventus, ventī, m.	wind
Venus, Veneris, f.	Venus (goddess of love)
venustus, venusta,	
venustum	
22 verbum, verbī, n.	tender-hearted, loving word
vērē	truly
38 vereor, verērī, veritus sum	be afraid, fear
vēritās, vēritātis, f.	truth
38 vērō	indeed, but indeed
versipellis, versipellis, m.	werewolf
versus, versiū, m.	verse, line of poetry
vertex, verticis, m.	top, peak
16 vertō, vertere, vertī, versus	turn
sē vertere	turn around
24 vērum, vērī, n.	truth
33 vērus, vēra, vērum	true, real
33 rē vērā	in fact, truly, really
vespillō, vespillōnis, m.	undertaker
Vestālis, Vestālis, Vestāle	Vestal, belonging to Vesta (goddess of the hearth)
strong	
different, various	
great, large, enormous	
or	
violently; loudly	29 vester, vestra, vestrum
carriage	34 vestimenta,
carry	vestimentōrum, n.pl.
be carried (e.g. by horse or ship), travel	vestis, vestis, f.
or; even	vestem mūtāre
either ... or	36 vetus, vetus,
	vetus, gen. veteris
	vetus, vētūs, vētūtās, f.
	19 vexō, vexāre, vexāvī,
	vexātus
	vexātus, vexāta, vexātum
	1 via, viæ, f.
	viātor, viātōris, m.
	vicārius, vicāriū, m.
	vicīnia, vicīniae, f.
	vicīnus, vicīnī, m.
	victima, victimae, f.
	victor, victōris, m.
	victōria, victōriæ, f.
	victus see vincō

3 videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus	see; see to it
40 videor, vidērī, vīsus sum	seem
vigilō, vigilāre, vigilāvī	stay awake, keep watch
20, 28 vīgintī	twenty
vīlicus, vīlicī, m.	overseer, manager
41 vīlis, vīlis, vīle	cheap
vīlla, vīllae, f.	villa, (large) house
31 vincō, vincēre, vīncī, vīnctus	bind, tie up
15 vincō, vincere, vīci, victus	conquer, win, be victorious, outweigh
44 vinculum, vincūlī, n.	fastening, chain
vīndicō, vindicāre, vīndicātūs	avenge; protect
3 vīnum, vīni, n.	wine
vīolentia, violentiae, f.	violence
vīpera, vīperae, f.	viper
11 vir, virī, m.	man, husband
38 virgō, virginis, f.	virgin, unmarried woman
viridis, viridis, viride	green
22 virtūs, virtūtis, f.	courage, virtue
48 vīs, vis, f.	force, violence
47 vīrēs, vīrium, f.pl.	forces, strength
vīs see volō	
vīsitō, vīsitāre, vīsitāvī, vīsitātūs	visit
vīsē, vīsēre, vīsī	come to visit
3 vīsus see videō	
13 vita, vitae, f.	life
41 vitium, vitī, n.	sin, fault, failure, vice, weakness
22 vitō, vitāre, vitāvī, vitātūs	avoid
6 vituperō, vituperāre, vituperāvī, vituperātūs	find fault with, curse, criticize
19 vīvō, vīvere, vīxī	live, be alive
29 vīvus, vīva, vīvum	alive, living
19 vīx	hardly, scarcely, with difficulty
vōbīs see vōs	
vōcēm see vōx	
4 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātūs	call
volātūs, volātūs, m.	flying, flight
13 volō, velle, voluī	want
bene velle	like, be friendly
velim	I would like
volō, volāre, volāvī	fly
volucrē, volucrīs, f.	winged, swift bird
voluntāriūs, voluntāriī, m.	volunteer
31 volvō, volvere, volvī, volvūtūs	turn, turn over, set rolling, turn to billows, send rolling upwards wonder, turn over in the mind
vōmer, vōmeris, m.	plowshare
10 vōs	you (plural)
vōtūm, vōtī, n.	vow
vōx, vōcis, f.	voice; word
vulgō, vulgāre, vulgāvī, vulgātūs	make known, make common
vulgus, vulgī, n.	the ordinary man, common man
13 vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātūs	wound, injure wound
20 vulnus, vulneris, n.	
13 vult see volō	
31 vultus, vultūs, m.	expression, face

BLANK PAGE

Index of cultural topics

- Achilles 230
adultery 43, 95, 201–202
aedile 43–44
Aeneas 138, 162–163, 219–220
Aesop 124–125
Africa 116, 162, 220
Agricola 42, 45, 117–121
Agrippina 235–236, 241, 252
amici principis 42–43, 94, 252
Anchises, father of Aeneas 220
Ara Pacis 29
archaeology 5
Argiletum 78
art, Roman influence on 180–183
Asia (Roman province) 100, 116, 167
Athens 62, 166–167, 220
Atticus 78
augur 44–45
Augustus, emperor 25, 62, 78, 132, 138, 146–147, 161, 249–250, 253
authors 25–27, 63, 78–80, 145–147, 215–217
auxiliaries (auxilia) 118, 250
basilica (court site) 96
birthrate (in Rome) 62
Bithynia 44, 46, 99–100, 116–121, 250
board games 98
books, copying of 25, 27, 78, 217
 physical appearance of 21, 27, 215
 selling of 27, 78, 217
brickwork 37, 81, 107
Britain 45, 116–117, 218
Burrus 236, 252
Caelius 200–203
Caligula, emperor 253
Calpurnia, wife of Pliny 63
Carthage 96, 138, 162, 220
Catullus 126, 147, 186, 197, 200, 203
centumviri, court of 95
children 61–62, 65, 79, 96, 120, 160, 252
Cicero 63, 78, 95–96, 201–203, 216
citizenship, rights of 95, 118–119
civil disputes 95, 251
Claudius, emperor 26, 147, 236, 253
clients 96
Clodia (= Lesbia) 200–203
Clodius, brother of Clodia 200–202
concrete 37, 81
consilium (emperor's council) 42–43, 252
consul 43–45, 117, 249–250
country villas 1, 9–14, 44
courts of law 12, 44, 62–63, 95–97, 118–119
 fairness of 96–97
Crete 116, 138, 166–167, 181, 220
curator 44–45
cursus honorum 43–45, 95, 117
Dacia 116–117
Daedalus 165, 169, 173, 181–182
Dido 138, 162–163
dignitas 78, 217
divorce 61, 160–162
Domitia 70, 94
Domitian, emperor 18, 26, 31, 36–37, 42–44, 61, 70, 78–80, 82, 94–97, 145, 147, 249
education 65, 79, 120, 216
Egypt 116–117
election bribery 95
elections 62
emperor 42–43, 78, 95, 100, 116–120, 236, 249–253, and *passim*
 epic poetry 138, 203, 217, 230
 epitaphs 63–64, 148, 154, 156, 216
equestrians 42, 117
farming 5, 7, 12–13
fishing 12, 184
forgery 95
freedmen 25, 64, 124, 132, 252
Gaul 43, 116, 119
governor (legatus) 45, 117, 249–250
 appointment of 117, 250
 duties and powers of 118–120
 misconduct of 95, 251
Greece 100, 116, 167, 181, 220, 230
Greeks 79, 146, 203, 215, 217, 230–233
Hadrian, emperor 9, 252
Homer 231–234
Horace 78–79, 132, 147, 203
hunting 11–12
Icarus 166, 170, 173, 175, 180–183
imagery 146
Italy 100, 116, 126, 132, 138, 163
iuridicus 119
Jesus Christ 21, 117
Jews 117–119
Judea 116–118
judges 95, 118

Julius Caesar 147, 154, 197, 249
jurors 96–97, 202
Juvenal 26, 162

lares 61
laudatio 154
Laurentum, Pliny's villa at 9–11, 16, 215
laws, Roman 43, 60–62, 78, 97, 118–119, 160, 250, 252
lawyers 95–97
legions, Roman 44–45, 104, 108, 117–118, 250
leisure 9–12, 215
Lesbia 186, 200, 203
letters 1, 10–13, 63, 100, 120, 215–218, 251
libraries 27
lyric poetry 145, 203, 217

Maeccenas 78–79, 132
magistrate 95, 97, 249
mandata 119
manes 154
Mantua 138
marriage 47, 50, 60–64, 149, 160–163
Marital 12, 25–26, 78, 92, 96, 126, 145, 147
matronae univirae 61, 162–163
Minos 166
murder 95, 200, 202, 252–253
Muses 25, 123
mythology 146, 166, 181–182

Nero, emperor 150, 235–236, 244, 250, 252
Nerva, emperor 252

oratory 12, 79, 92, 95–97, 145, 216–217

Ovid 78–79, 85, 89, 96, 136–137, 147, 166, 181–182

palaces 18, 36–37, 80–82
paternfamilias 60, 65
patrons 25, 27, 78–79, 132

Paul the apostle 118–119

Petronius 150

Phaedrus 124, 147, 150

pirates 118

Plautus 78

plebs 44–45, 250

Pliny the Elder 206, 215

Pliny the Younger 9–13, 25–26, 43–46, 63, 79, 96–97, 100, 117–120, 126, 147, 206, 215–217, 250

poetry 80, 145–147, 182, 203, 230–233

Pompeii 5, 12, 14, 62, 93, 145, 173, 181, 211

Pompey 147, 154

Pontifex Maximus (chief priest) 250

Pontius Pilatus (Pilate) 117

Pontus 100, 116, 121

praefectus 44–45, 117

praetor 43–45, 95, 117–118

praetorian guard 42, 236, 243, 252–253

proconsul 117
provincial government, see Roman empire
publishing trade 25, 27, 217
Pudicitia 162

quaestiones 95
quaestor 44–45
Quintilian 79, 96–97, 145
reading aloud 12, 21, 25, 80
recitationes 16, 25–27, 63, 78
rhetor 79, 95, 145
Rome 9, 13, 18, 27, 36–37, 42, 44–46, 62, 78, 80–82, 94, 97, 249–250
Roman empire
 attitude of provincials towards 120–121
 extent of 100, 116–117, 215, 252
 government of provinces in 42–45, 116–121, 249–253
romanization 120
Russia 100
Salvius 95, 119
Saturnalia 11
Scotland 100, 118–121
senate 12, 43–44, 94–95, 116–117, 249–251
senate-house (curia) 83
senators 29, 42–43, 62, 83, 95, 117
Seneca 26, 236
Sicily 116–117, 201, 220
slaves 10–11, 25–26, 62, 78, 120, 124, 216–217, 252
Spain 116, 129, 249
Subura 78
Suetonius 249–250
Tacitus 26, 120–121, 206, 236, 249, 252, 254
taxation 120
tenant farmers 5, 7, 13
Tiberius, emperor 236
Tibur (Tivoli) 9
Trajan, emperor 26, 43, 100, 104, 109, 116–120, 122, 250, 252
treason 95, 97
tribunes 44–45, 117–118
Troy 220, 230
Turkey 100
Twelve Tables 97, 160
Venusia 132
Virgil 25, 78, 123, 132, 138, 147, 162, 220, 230
Verona 126
Vespasian, emperor 79–80, 94
viginativus 44–45
voting tablets (in court) 95
water pump 113
writing materials 11, 28, 215

Index of grammatical and literary topics

ablative case 157, 225, 259, 274, 287–290, 299

 ablative absolute 289–290

 of gerund 157, 200

 without a preposition in poetry 225

accusative case 6, 157, 287, 294–296, 299

 of gerund 157, 299

adjectives 7, 22–23, 74–75, 142, 146, 260–262, 264, 307

 comparison of 262

adverbs 263

 comparison of 263

alliteration 301

allusion 132, 146, 301

anaphora 301

antecedent

 see relative pronouns

antithesis 146

apostrophe 301

assonance 301

asyndeton 301

caesura 305

capiō

 indicative 280–281, 284

 subjunctive 282, 285

 see also gerund, gerundive, imperative, infinitive, participles

cases of the noun 287–288

 see ablative, accusative, dative, genitive, locative, nominative, vocative

chiasmus 302

compounds 59

conditional clauses

 see conditional sentences

conditional sentences 130–131, 212, 298

 with indicative 130, 298

 with nisi 131, 298

 with subjunctive 131, 212, 298

connotation 146, 301

cum clauses 114, 291

dactylic foot 304

dactylic hexameter 304–305

dative case 199, 287–290, 307

deliberative questions 240, 293

direct statement 6, 34, 39, 51, 57, 88

dum 171, 292

 (while) with historical present 171, 292

 (until) with the subjunctive 292

ego 264

elegiac couplet 145, 305

elision 305–306

ellipsis 176–177, 214, 301

ēō

 indicative 280–281

 subjunctive 282

 see also imperative, infinitive, participles

epic simile 301

epistolary tense 18

euphemism 301

fearing clauses 70, 291

ferō

 indicative 280–281, 284

 subjunctive 282, 285

 see also gerund, gerundive, imperative, infinitive, participles

fiō 134–135, 286

figurative language 301

frequentatives 40

genitive case 157, 287–288, 299

 of gerund 157, 299

gerund 105, 157, 275, 279, 283, 299

 ablative of 157, 299

 genitive of 157, 299

 with ad (purpose) 105, 157, 299

gerundive 91, 105, 275, 279, 283, 299–300

 ablative of 299

 genitive of 299

 of obligation 300

 with ad (purpose) 91, 105, 299

hendecasyllabic meter 306

hendiadys 301

hic 265

historical infinitive 244

historical present 171, 292

hyperbole 302

idem 266

ille 265

imperative 190, 274, 279, 283

inceptives 92

indirect command 291, 297

indirect question 159, 291, 297
 see also indirect speech

indirect speech 159, 291, 297

 position of verb of speaking, asking, etc. 159, 291, 295
 subordinate clauses in 297

indirect statement 6, 34, 39, 51, 57, 88, 159, 294–297
 with forms of **negō** 295

 with future active infinitive 51, 295

 without leading verb (in a series) 296

 with perfect active infinitive 34, 294

 with perfect passive infinitive 39, 294

 with present active infinitive 6, 294

 with present passive infinitive 57, 294

 with **sē** 295

see also indirect speech

infinitive 6, 13, 45, 49, 51, 57, 275, 279, 283–284, 286, 294–296

 deponent future 279

 deponent perfect 279

 deponent present 13, 279

 future active 51, 275, 295

 historical 244

 irregular future 283

 irregular perfect 283

 irregular present 284, 286

 perfect active 45, 275, 294

 perfect passive 49, 275, 294

 present active 6, 275, 294

 present passive 57, 275, 294

ipse 265

is 266

juxtaposition 302

litotes 302

locative case 288

metaphor 301

metonymy 302

nominative case 259, 275, 287

nouns 7, 22–23, 74–76, 142, 146, 228, 258–259, 264, 289–290, 307
 plural with singular meaning 228

onomatopoeia 302

oxymoron 302

paradox 302

parallelism 146, 302

participles 39, 51, 119, 274, 279, 283–284, 289–290
 as nouns 289

 deponent future 279

 deponent perfect 279

 deponent present 279

 future 51, 274

 perfect passive 39, 119, 274, 284

 present 274, 283

 uses of 289–290

personification 301

poetic plural 265

polysyndeton 302

possum

 indicative 280–281

 subjunctive 27, 282

see also infinitive, participles

prepositions 22–23, 225, 307

priusquam 292

pronouns 194–195, 264–267, 289–290, 307

see also **ego**, **hic**, **idem**, **ille**, **ipse**, **is**, **qui**, **quidam**, **sē**, **tū**

purpose clauses 291

qui (relative pronoun) 194–195, 266–267

quidam 267

result clauses 291

rhetorical question 302

scansion 304–306

separation, verbal 302

simile 301

sē 264, 295

spondaic foot 304

subjunctive of the verb 19, 53, 88, 110, 114, 131, 190,

 210, 240, 272–273, 278, 282, 285–286,
 291–293, 297–298

 deliberative 293

 hortatory 190, 293

 imperfect 19, 153, 272–273, 278, 282, 285–286,
 298

 in subordinate clauses in indirect speech 297

 jussive 190, 293

 perfect 53, 246, 272–273, 278, 282, 285

 pluperfect 19, 210, 272–273, 278, 282, 285, 298

 present 19, 53, 110, 272–273, 278, 282, 285–286,
 298

 with **dum** (*until*) 292

 with **priusquam** (*before*) 292

see also conditional sentences; **cum** clauses;
 fearing clauses; indirect commands; indirect
 questions; purpose clauses; result clauses

sum

 indicative 280–281

 omission of forms of 214

 subjunctive 282

see also gerund, gerundive, infinitive

syllables 303–306

synchysis 302

syncope 180

synecdoche 302

tmesis 302

transferred epithet 302

trochaic foot 304

tū 264

verbs, deponent 153, 210, 246, 276–279, 308

 indicative 276–277

 subjunctive 153, 278

see also gerund, gerundive, imperative, infinitive,
 participles

verbs, irregular 280–286

see also **capiō**, **eō**, **ferō**, **fiō**, **possum**, **sum**, **volō**

verbs, regular 19, 76, 268–275, 307–308

 indicative active 268–269

 indicative passive 270–271

 subjunctive 19, 272–273

see also gerund, gerundive, imperative, infinitive,
 participles

vivid particularization 302

volō

 indicative 280–281

 subjunctive 27, 282

see also infinitive, participles

word combinations 23

word order 22–23, 74–75, 142, 146, 302

word stress 304

Time chart

Date	Writing in Latin	Rome and Italy	World history	World culture	Date
BC c.800		Etruscans in central Italy, c.800	Babylonian/Sumerian civilizations		BC c. 3000
753		Rome founded (traditional date) 753	Pharaohs in Egypt		c. 3000–332
c.500	Lapis Niger, Roman Forum	Kings expelled and Republic begins, 509	Indo-European migrations	Maize cultivation, American SW	c. 2000
450	Duodecim Tabulae	Battle of Lake Regillus, 496	Hammurabi's Legal Code, c. 1750	Epic of Gilgamesh	post 2000
c.289 ff.	Roman coinage	Comitia Centuriata exist, 5th C	Minoan civilization at its height, c. 1500	Rig-Veda verses (Hinduism) collected	c. 1500
c.210	Livius Andronicus plays, <i>Odyssey</i> tr.	Gauls capture Rome, 390	Israelite exodus from Egypt	Development of Hinduism	c. 1450
d. 184	Plautus, comedies	Rome controls Italy/Punic Wars, 300–200	Israel and Judah split, c. 922	Phoenician alphabet adapted by Greeks	c. 1000–800
239–169	Ennius, epic: <i>Annales</i>	Hannibal crosses the Alps, c.218	Kush/Meroe kingdom expands	<i>Iliad</i> and <i>Odyssey</i>	c. 800
c.160	Cato, <i>De Agri Cultura</i>	Rome expands outside Italy, 200–100	Solon, Athenian lawgiver, 594	First Olympic Games	776
c.160	Terence, comedies	Gracchi and agrarian reforms, 133	Buddha		c. 563–483
106–43	Cicero, speeches and essays	Marius reorganizes the army, 107 ff.	Confucius		551–479
c.94–55	Lucretius, <i>De Rerum Natura</i>	Pompey defeats Mithridates, 66	Persia invades Egypt and Greece, c. 525–400	Golden Age of Greece	500–400
1st C	Vitruvius, <i>De Architectura</i>	Julius Caesar assassinated, 44	Death of Socrates		399
c.84–54	Catullus, poems	Augustus becomes emperor, 27	Conquests of Alexander the Great	Museum founded in Alexandria	335–323
70–19	Virgil, <i>Elegies, Georgics, Aeneid</i>	Rhine and Danube, Roman frontiers, 9	Great Wall of China built		290
65–8	Horace, <i>Odes, Epodes, Satires</i>	Tiberius becomes emperor, AD 14	Judas Maccabaeus regains Jerusalem	Feast of Hanukkah inaugurated	c. 221
c.59–AD 17	Livy, <i>Ab Urbe Condita Libri</i>	Nero emperor, 54–68	Julius Caesar in Gaul, 58	Adena Serpent Mound, Ohio	165
43–AD 17	Ovid, elegies, <i>Metamorphoses</i>	Great fire at Rome/Christians blamed, 64	Cleopatra commits suicide	Canal locks exist in China	2nd C
d. 50	Phaedrus, <i>Fables</i>	Vespasian emperor, 69–79	Herod rebuilds the Temple, Jerusalem	Glassblowing begins in Sidon	50
AD 1–65	Seneca, essays and tragedies	Colosseum begun, c.72	Roman boundary at Danube, 15		post 50
1st C	Petronius, <i>Satyricon</i>	Titus emperor, 79–81	Britain becomes a Roman province, 43	Birth of Jesus	30
23–79	Pliny, <i>Naturalis Historia</i>	Vesuvius erupts, 79	Sack of Jerusalem and the Temple	Crucifixion of Jesus	c. 20
40–104	Martial, epigrams	Domitian emperor, 81–96	Roman control extends to Scotland	St Peter in Rome	c. 4
c.100	Suetonius, <i>De Vita Caesorum</i>	Trajan emperor, 98–117		St Paul's missionary journeys	AD c. 29
40–100	Quintilian, <i>Institutio Oratoria</i>	Hadrian emperor, 117–138		Camel introduced into the Sahara	42–67
50–127	Juvenal, satires	Septimius Severus dies in Britain, 211			45–67
c.56–115	Tacitus, Agricola, <i>Annales</i>	Constantine tolerates Christianity, 313			1st C
61–112	Pliny, <i>Epistulae</i>	Empire divided into East and West, 364			70
c.160	Apuleius, <i>Metamorphoses</i> (novel)	Alaric the Goth sacks Rome, 410			77–85
160–240	Tertullian, <i>De Anima</i>	Last Roman emperor deposed, 476	Roman empire at its greatest extent	Paper invented in China	c. 100
c.385	Jerome, <i>Vulgata</i> (Bible in Latin)		Hadrian's Wall in Britain	Construction at Teotihuacán begins	c. 100
c.400	Augustine, <i>De Civitate Dei</i>		"High Kings" of Ireland		98–117
d. 524	Boethius, <i>De Consolatione Philosophiae</i>		Byzantium renamed Constantinople, 300	Golden Age of Guptan civilization, India	122–127
534	Codex Justinianus (laws)		Byzantine empire expands	Last ancient Olympic Games	c. 200–1022
					c. 320–540
					393
					518

Date	Writing in Latin	Rome and Italy	World history	World culture	Date
c. 600	Isidore of Seville, encyclopedia	Gregory the Great, pope, 590–604	Charlemagne crowned, 800	Birth of Muhammad	570
673–735	Venerable Bede, <i>Historia Ecclesiastica</i>	Period of turmoil in Italy, 800–1100	Vikings reach America, c. 1000	Arabs adopt Indian numerals	c. 771
9th/10th C	<i>Waltharius</i> , epic, resistance to Attila	Republic of St Mark, Venice, 850	Norman invasion of England, 1066	<i>1001 Nights</i> collected in Iraq	ante 942
c. 960	Hrosvitha, religious plays b. on Terence		First Crusade, 1096	<i>Tale of Genji</i> , Japan	1010
11th C	Bayeux Tapestry (Norman Conquest)		Magna Carta, 1215	Ife-Benin art, Nigeria	1100–1600
c. 1137	Abelard & Heloise, <i>Historia Calamitatum</i>		Genghis Khan (1162–1227)	Classic Pueblo Cliff dwellings	1050–1300
13th C	<i>Carmina Burana</i> , songs and plays	Independent government in Rome, 1143–1455	Mali empire expands, 1235	Al-Idrisi, Arab geographer	1100–1166
1225–1274		Marco Polo travels to the East, 1271–1295	Joan of Arc dies, 1431	Arabs use black (gun) powder in a gun	1304
13th C	Thomas Aquinas, <i>Summa Theologica</i>	Dante, poet (1265–1321)	Inca empire expands, 1438	Chaucer's <i>Canterbury Tales</i>	ante 1400
1304–1374	Thomas of Celano, <i>Dies Irae</i> , song	Renaissance begins in Italy, c. 1400	Turks capture Constantinople, 1453	Gutenberg Bible printed	1456
c. 1505	Petrarch, epic, <i>Africa</i> and <i>Epistulae</i>	Botticelli, painter (1445–1510)	Moors driven from Spain, 1492	Building at Zimbabwe	c. 15th C–1750
c. 1511	Amerigo Vespucci, <i>Mundus Novus</i>	Leonardo da Vinci (1451–1519)	Columbus arrives in America, 1492	Vasco da Gama sails to India	1497–1498
1516	Erasmus, <i>Moriae Encomium</i>	Titian, painter (1489–1576)	Cortez conquers Mexico	Martin Luther writes <i>95 Theses</i>	1517
1525	Thomas More, <i>Utopia</i>	Rebuilding of St Peter's begins, 1506	Mogul dynasty established	Magellan names Pacific Ocean	1519–1522
	Zwingli, <i>De Vera et Falsa Religione</i>	Michelangelo starts Sistine Chapel ceiling, 1508	French settlements in Canada, 1534	Copernicus publishes heliocentric theory	1543
1543	Vesalius, <i>De Humani Corporis Fabrica</i>	Rome sacked by German/Spanish troops, 1527	Turks defeated, Battle of Lepanto, 1571	Shakespeare	1564–1616
1543	Copernicus, <i>De Revolutionibus ...</i>	Spain controls much of Italy, 1530–1796	Burmese empire at a peak	Muskets first used in Japan	c. 1580
1573	T. Brahe, <i>De Nova Stella</i> (in Cassiopeia)	Fontana rediscovers Pompeii, 1594	Continuing Dutch activity in the East	Cervantes publishes <i>Don Quixote</i>	1605
1609	J. Kepler, <i>Astronomia Nova</i>	Galileo invents the telescope, 1610	Pilgrims land at Plymouth Rock, 1620	Taj Mahal begun	1632
1610	Galileo, <i>Sidereus Nuncius</i>	Bernini, architect and sculptor (1598–1680)	Manchu dynasty, China, 1644–1912	Palace of Versailles begun	1661
1620	Francis Bacon, <i>Novum Organum</i>		Peter the Great rules Russia, 1682–1725	Newton discovers the Law of Gravity	1682
1625	H. Grotius, <i>De Iure Belli et Pacis</i>		Industrial Revolution begins, c. 1760	J. S. Bach, composer	1685–1750
1628	Harvey, <i>De Motu Cordis et Sanguinis</i>		US Declaration of Independence	Mozart, composer	c. 1760
1596–1650	Descartes, <i>Cogito ergo sum</i>		French Revolution begins	Quakers refuse to own slaves	1776
1608–1674	Milton, poems		Napoleon defeated at Waterloo	Washington, US President	1789
17th C	Hobbes, Locke, Spinoza, philosophers		Mexico becomes a republic, 1824	Bolivar continues struggle, S. America	1815
1664	DuCreux, <i>Historiae Canadensis libri X</i>		American Civil War, 1861–1865	S. B. Anthony, women's rights advocate	1820–1906
1687	Newton, <i>Principia Mathematica</i>		Serfdom abolished in Russia, 1861	Communist manifesto	1848
1753	Linnaeus, <i>Species Plantarum</i>		Lincoln's <i>Emancipation Proclamation</i>		1861
1739–1798	Galvani, <i>De Viribus Electritatis in Motu Animalium</i>		Canada becomes a Dominion		1863
1745–1827	Volta, <i>De Vi Attractiva Ignis</i>		Cetewayo, king of the Zulus, 1872	French Impressionism begins	1867
1835	F. Glass, <i>Georgii Washingtonii ... vita</i>			Mahatma Gandhi	1869–1948
	G. Manley Hopkins, poems		First World War, 1914–1918	Edison invents phonograph	1877
1844–1889			Bolshevik Revolution in Russia, 1918	First modern Olympic Games	1896
			Second World War	Model T Ford constructed	1909
			United Nations Charter	Bohr theory of the atom	1913
				US Constitution gives women the vote	1920
					1939–1945
					1945

BLANK PAGE